



## Ultimate Getting Started with French Box Set

Lessons 1 to 55

1-55



## Introduction to French

Lessons 1 - 25

1-25

## Introduction

---

This is Innovative Language Learning.

Go to [InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks](https://www.innovativelanguage.com/audiobooks) to get the lesson notes for this course, and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.

This Audiobook will take you through the basics of French with Basic Bootcamp, All About, and Pronunciation lessons.

The five Basic Bootcamp lessons each center on a practical, real-life conversation. At the beginning of the lesson, we'll introduce the background of the conversation. Then, you'll hear the conversation two times: one time at natural native speed, and one time with English translation. After the conversation, you'll learn carefully selected vocabulary and key grammar concepts. Next, you'll hear the conversation one time at natural native speed. Finally, practice what you have learned with the review track. In the review track, a native speaker will say a word or phrase from the dialogue, wait three seconds, and then give you the English translation. Say the word aloud during the pause. Halfway through the review track, the order will be reversed. The English translation will be provided first, followed by a three-second pause, and then the word or phrase from the dialogue. Repeat the words and phrases you hear in the review track aloud to practice pronunciation and reinforce what you have learned.

In the fifteen All About lessons, you'll learn all about French and France. Our native teachers and language experts will explain everything you need to know to get started in French, including how to understand the writing system, grammar, pronunciation, cultural background, tradition, society, and more -- all in a fun and educational format!

The five Pronunciation lessons take you step-by-step through the most basic skill in any language: how to pronounce words and sentences like a native speaker. You'll go from basic concepts to advanced tips and will soon sound like you've been speaking French your entire life.

Before starting the lessons, go to [InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks](https://www.innovativelanguage.com/audiobooks) to get the lesson notes for this course, and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.



## Basic Bootcamp S1

Self Introduction and Basic Greetings in Formal French

# 1

Formal French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	2
Cultural Insight	6

## Formal French

---

Réceptionniste	Bonjour, Madame. Je m'appelle Maxime.
Mme Lefebvre	Enchantée, Monsieur. Je m'appelle Madame Lefebvre Camille.
Réceptionniste	Enchanté Madame.

## English

---

Receptionist	Hello, madam. I'm Maxime.
Mrs. Lefebvre	Nice to meet you, sir. I'm Mrs. Camille Lefebvre.
Receptionist	Nice to meet you, Madam.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
bonjour	hello	noun	masculine
madame	madam	noun	
je m'appelle	My name is, I'm called	phrase	
Enchanté(e).	Pleased / Nice to meet you.	adjective	Enchantée (feminine)

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

---

<i>Bonjour Monsieur.</i>	"Hello, sir."
<i>Bonjour Madame.</i>	"Hello, ma'am."
<i>Bonjour Madame.</i>	"Hello, ma'am."
<i>Je m'appelle Nicolas.</i>	"My name is Nicolas."
<i>Elle est enchantée de vous voir.</i>	"She is pleased to see you."
<i>Il est enchanté de vous rencontrer.</i>	"He is pleased to meet you."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson is Self-Introduction and Basic Greetings in Formal French**

***Bonjour, Madame.*****"Hello, Ma'am."**

---

Bienvenu(e) ("Welcome") to the French language basics. Introducing oneself is inevitable in any situation and is rather easy! Let's start with the word *bonjour*!

***Bonjour ("Hello")***

---

For a more classical and frequent greeting, use *bonjour*, meaning "hello." Its literal meaning is "good day."

You can use *bonjour* anytime during the day in any circumstances. If you are speaking to a friend, an elderly person, or an unknown person in an informal or formal situation, use *bonjour*. It the safest and most respectable way of greeting a person while in France or another French-speaking country.

If the evening is falling and night is soon to come, use *bonsoir*, meaning "good evening." Like *bonjour*, *bonsoir* is the most common way to greet someone in a safe manner. The only difference is that you can use *bonsoir* for farewells as well at the end of the day.

Note that a title can follow both *bonjour* and *bonsoir* to be a bit more proper, as with *bienvenu*.

**For Example:****Daytime**

1. *Bonjour monsieur.*  
"Hello, sir."
2. *Bonjour madame.*  
"Hello, ma'am."

**Evening**

1. *Bonsoir monsieur.*  
"Hello, sir." or "Good evening, sir."
2. *Bonsoir madame.*  
"Hello, ma'am."  
"Good evening, ma'am."

**Greeting During the Day**

<b>French</b>	<b>French Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Bonjour</i>	Bon-juhrr	"Hello"
<i>Bonjour monsieur</i>	Bon-juhrr muh-si-hoe	"Hello, sir"
<i>Bonjour madame</i>	Bon-juhrr ma-dam	"Hello, ma'am"

**Greeting or Farewell in the Evening or at Night**

<b>French</b>	<b>French Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Bonsoir</i>	Bon-su-ahrr	"Hello/goodbye"
<i>Bonsoir monsieur</i>	Bon-su-ahrr Muh-si-hoe	"Hello/goodbye sir"
<i>Bonsoir madame</i>	Bon-su-ahrr Ma-dam	"Hello/goodbye ma'am"

**Stating a Name**

---

After you're formally greeted in your hotel, someone will certainly ask you about your identity.

In many other situations, social or otherwise, to get to know someone or introduce yourself, you will ask or hear the most frequent question: "What is your name?"

**To answer it, use:**

1. the personal pronoun *je*, meaning "I" in English, and
2. the verb *s'appeler* conjugated at the correct form

**Conjugating the Verb *s'appeler* ("to be called")**

---

The verb *s'appeler* means "to be called" and we translate it with the verb "to be" in English when stating a name, as shown in the dialogue translation. The infinitive verb *s'appeler* ends with the letters *-er*, telling us it is:

1. a regular verb and
2. a verb from the first verb group

Its particularity is the presence at its infinitive form of the letter *-s* followed by an apostrophe. This tells us that this verb (as other with the same feature) is a "reflexive verb," which is also called in French *verbes pronominaux*.

The letter *-s* apostrophe is the reflexive part of the verb. Its function is to refer the information following the verb *s'appeler*-in other words, a name, back to the subject of the sentence.

When conjugating a reflexive verb, you should follow two steps. You need to change the letter *-s* apostrophe and the verb form according to the subject of the sentence, and therefore, the personal pronoun you use.

### Changing the Reflexive Part of the Verb *s'appeler*

In the sentence *Je m'appelle Maxime*, the personal pronoun is *je*, which belongs to the first person singular. As the verb *s'appeler* is a "reflexive verb" or *verbe pronominal*, the letter *-s* needs to change to the letter *-m* followed by the apostrophe.

You will have *m'appeler*.

Be aware that you only change the letter *-m* if the information following the verb *s'appeler* belongs to the person speaking it. If not, if you hear *je t'appelle Laurent*, it would mean "I call you Laurent" (instead of Mrs. Dubois, for example). In other words, the name stated needs to be the one of the person stating it, as in *Je m'appelle Madame Lefebvre Camille*. "I'm Mrs. Camille Lefebvre."

### Changing the Ending of the Verb *s'appeler*

To change the ending of the verb form *m'appeler* previously mentioned, eliminate the letters *-er*. You'll end up with: *m'appel*.

Then, to have the correct spelling for this verb, remember to add an extra letter *-l* to all the forms except for the first and second person plural. You'll have now: *m'appell*.

Finally, as for any verb ending in *-er* at the infinitive form, add the ending *-e* corresponding to the first person singular. You will have the final conjugated form: *m'appelle*.

Of course, to get the final sentence, add in front of it the personal pronoun *je* and after it your name: *Je m'appelle*.

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
---------------	------------------



<i>Je m'appelle Marie.</i>	"My name is Mary."
<i>Je m'appelle Madame Dupont.</i>	"My name is Mrs. Dupont."
<i>Je m'appelle Madame Dupont Marie.</i>	"My name is Mrs. Mary Dupont."

## Cultural Insight

---

### Most and Least Popular Given First Names

---

For boys, according to the French magazine *Femme Actuelle*, first names sounding foreign are in regression. They used to be popular, possibly because the names of characters appearing in Hollywood's broadcasted soap operas are dubbed in French. The least popular are Liam and Aaron, as well as Matthieu and Jean, two biblical first names. Another one losing popularity is Loïc, which is short for Alexandre or Alex.

However, the most popular first names in 2008 and 2009, for both boys and girls, will be short ones such as Tom, Zoé, or the traditional Paul and Marie. Another trend is first names ending in the letter *-o* for boys, such as Enzo, Hugo, Léo, Théo, or Mathéo, and *-a* for girls, such as Emma, Clara, and Léa, which are the three most popular names. Some other ever-classic first names are Alexandre, Raphaël, and Gabriel for boys and Marie, Inès, and Camille for girls.

A very popular book is published every mid-September for parents-to-be called *L'Officiel des Prénoms* (*Official First Names*). It is the yearly reference for first names, listing twelve thousand of them with their etymologies and discussing trends in names.



## Basic Bootcamp S1

Basic French Simple Phrases With Verb être ("to be")

2

French	2
English	2
Informal French	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	7

## French

---

Patricia            Bonjour, je suis Patricia. Je suis belge.  
Lionel             Bonjour, je suis Lionel. Je suis américain.

## English

---

Patricia            Hello, I am Patricia. I am Belgian.  
Lionel             Hello, I am Lionel. I am American.

## Informal French

---

Patricia            Bonjour. Je m'appelle Patricia. Je suis française.  
Lionel             Bonjour. Je m'appelle Lionel. Je suis luxembourgeois.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
je / j'	I	personal pronoun	
suis	am (conjugated form of être)	verb	
belge	Belgian	adjective	both
américain/e	American	adjective	male/female

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

---

<i>Je vais bien.</i>	"I am well."
<i>Je suis pour l'équipe rouge.</i>	"I'm for the red team."
<i>Je suis dans le jardin.</i>	"I am in the yard."
<i>Je suis né en juin.</i>	"I was born in June."
<i>Je mange des moules frites dans un restaurant belge.</i>	"I am eating mussels with fries in a Belgian restaurant."
<i>Tu sais, je suis américain !</i>	"You know, I'm American!"

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Basic French Simple Phrases With the Verb *être* ("to be")**

*Je suis belge.*

**"I am Belgian."**

---

Stating who you are and where you are from is a standard conversation starter anywhere you might be in your native country or a foreign one.

While in France or another French-speaking country, you should use the verb *être* to speak of your nationality, give your name, and define your personality. The verb *être* is the equivalent of the verb "to be" in English. This is one of the most common French verbs used to describe states, feelings, location, identity, origin, and much more. To use it properly, you must incorporate it in a phrase.

### Understanding the Construction of a Simple Phrase

---

#### A - Its word order

To build a simple phrase, you need to use three elements.

1. The subject, which is a person, a thing, or a place performing the action or receiving it.
2. The verb, which is the action of the sentence.
3. The object, which is also called the complement.

In French, the word order of a simple phrase is always subject, verb, then complement.

#### B - Subject and Verbs

For example, in the sentences below, the subjects and verbs are highlighted.

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Subject</b>	<b>Verb</b>
1 - Marie mange une pomme.	"Marie eats an apple."	Marie	mange
2 - La ville grandit avec rapidité.	"The city grows with rapidity."	ville	grandit
3 - L'arbre est tombé par terre.	"The tree has fallen on the floor."	arbre	est tombé

1. In the first sentence, Marie is performing the action of eating. *Marie* is the subject and *mange* ("eats") is the verb.
2. In the second sentence, the city receives the action of growing. *Ville* ("the city") is the subject, and the verb is *grandit* ("grows"), which is the action of the phrase.
3. In the last sentence, the tree is victim of its weight and fell. Therefore, *arbre*, meaning "tree," is the subject of the verb *est tombé*, which means "has fallen."

### C - Complement

The object is appropriately called the complement in French and indicates the object of the verb or a circumstance, as in the examples below.

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Complement</b>
1 - Marie mange une pomme.	"Marie eats an apple."	une pomme
2 - La ville grandit avec rapidité.	"The city grows with rapidity."	avec rapidité
3 - L'arbre est tombé par terre.	"The tree has fallen on the floor."	par terre

The complement can designate some thing, such as the apple in the first sentence; a way the action is happening or done, as in the second example; or a place, as in the third sentence.

**Note:** With the verb *être*, the complement is in fact called an "attribute," or *un attribut* in French.

### **The Verb *être* in a Simple Phrase**

## A - Word order

To build a sentence with the verb *être*, you must follow the word order of a simple sentence, which consists of:

**Subject + verb *être* + *attribut*.**

*L'attribut* or "complement" in English is mainly associated with the verb *être* and describes

### 1. a state of the subject as in

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>Je suis triste.</i>	"I'm sad."
<i>Je suis fatigué.</i>	"I'm tired."
<i>Je suis excité.</i>	"I'm excited."
<i>Je suis en bonne santé.</i>	"I'm in good health."

### 2. a quality or nature of the subject

1. *Je suis français.*  
"I'm French."

*L'attribut* can be an adjective, such as *triste* ("sad") or *français* ("French"), as in the examples above.

It can also be many other words, such as:

### 3. a noun to tell about:

Noun Type	<i>French</i>	"English"
a profession	<i>Je suis étudiant.</i>	"I am a student."
a place	<i>Je suis au centre-ville. Je suis au travail.</i>	"I am downtown." "I am at work."
a trait	<i>Je suis un clown.</i>	"I am a clown."
a quality	<i>Je suis une experte.</i>	"I am an expert."

Note: Some other verbs have *un attribut*, including the verb *s'appeler*, such as in the dialogue phrase *Je m'appelle Patricia* ("I'm Patricia.").

## B - Conjugation of *être*

The verb *être* is irregular; however, it is very common and used extremely frequently in the French language. We use it not only to state information about a thing or person, but also in other tenses. For this reason, mastering it is important, as it will affect your French further in your studies.

To talk of nationality about yourselves or someone else, use first the appropriate noun and verb form:

<b>Talking...</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
About yourself	<i>je suis</i>	"I am"
To your interlocutor	<i>tu es</i>	"you are"
About a man	<i>il est</i>	"he is"
About a woman	<i>elle est</i>	"she is"
About you and someone else	<i>nous sommes</i>	"we are"
About a person formally or a group of people	<i>vous êtes</i>	"you are"
About men or men and women	<i>ils sont</i>	"they are"
About women	<i>elles sont</i>	"they are"

## Tell About Your Nationality/Origin

Then add any of the appropriate nationalities, which you will find in the table below:

<b>"English"</b>	<b>French Masculine</b>	<b>French Feminine</b>
"French"	<i>français</i>	<i>française</i>
"American"	<i>américain</i>	<i>américaine</i>
"British"	<i>anglais</i>	<i>anglaise</i>
"Australian"	<i>australien</i>	<i>australienne</i>
"Indian"	<i>indien</i>	<i>indienne</i>
"Belgian"	<i>belge</i>	<i>belge</i>
"Spanish"	<i>espagnol</i>	<i>espagnole</i>
"Portuguese"	<i>portugais</i>	<i>portugaise</i>

"Brazilian"	<i>brésilien</i>	<i>brésilienne</i>
"Swiss"	<i>suisse</i>	<i>suisse</i>
"German"	<i>allemand</i>	<i>allemande</i>
"Moroccan"	<i>marocain</i>	<i>marocaine</i>
"Italian"	<i>italien</i>	<i>italienne</i>
"Mexican"	<i>mexicain</i>	<i>mexicaine</i>
"Cuban"	<i>cubain</i>	<i>cubaine</i>
"Canada"	<i>canadien</i>	<i>canadienne</i>
"Russian"	<i>russe</i>	<i>russe</i>
"Japanese"	<i>japonais</i>	<i>japonaise</i>
"Chinese"	<i>chinois</i>	<i>chinoise</i>
"Korean"	<i>coréen</i>	<i>coréenne</i>

For example, if you want to say that your friend Bob is German, you would say either

1. *Bob est allemand.*  
"Bob is German."
2. *Il est allemand.*  
"He is German."



## Cultural Insight

---





## Basic Bootcamp S1

### Useful Phrases for Learning French

3

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	9

## French

---

- A Madame, comment vous dites a fork en français ?  
 B Une fourchette.  
 A Vous pouvez répéter ? Lentement, s'il vous plaît ?  
 B U-ne fourchette.  
 A Vous pouvez le noter, s'il vous plaît?

## English

---

- A Madam, how do you say "a fork" in French?  
 B "Une fourchette."  
 A Can you repeat? Slowly, please?  
 B "U-ne fourchette."  
 A Please write it down.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
comment	how	adverb	
une fourchette	a fork	noun	female
s'il vous plaît	please (formal)	expression	
vous pouvez	you can (formal)	verb (second person plural of <i>pouvoir</i> )	
noter	to write down, to note, to notice	verb	
le (pronoun)	it, him	pronoun	masculine

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

---

- Comment ils vont ?* "How are they?"  
*Comment tu t'appelles ?* "What is your name?"  
*Tu as une serviette en papier et une fourchette ?* "Do you have a paper napkin and a fork?"  
*Vous pouvez me donner un café, s'il vous plaît ?* "Can you give me a coffee, please?"  
*Vous pouvez écouter des chansons en français.* "You can listen to French songs."

*Les notes de Gabriel ce trimestre scolaire étaient assez bonnes.* "Gabriel's grade for his school trimester were quite good."  
*L'arbre est beau. Jean le regarde.* "The tree is beautiful. Jean is looking at it."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Useful Phrases for Learning French.**

*Madame, comment vous dites a fork en français ?*

"Madam, how do you say 'a fork' in French?"

---

While learning a language, you should always use it whenever possible. This will allow you to engage yourself and acquire the correct habits right away while being immersed as much as possible in the language you are learning.

To immerse yourself in French from day one, you should learn some basic phrases so you can use them immediately. Getting in the correct habit of using standard phrases, their correct pronunciation, and their usage will greatly affect your French studies later on. Getting the right habits right away will help you avoid repeating mistakes and avoid picking up bad habits that are difficult to get rid of once you're anchored in your routine while using French.

How can you learn French while using French? In several ways, which we'll show you below.

When trying to acquire new vocabulary, a recurrent question from everyone from newbie to advanced

levels is:

1. *Comment vous dites...en français ?*

"How do you say...in French?"

This question is intended for a person you might not know well or one you wish to show respect to or to keep at a distance. By using the personal pronoun *vous*, the question is part of the formal French language register. We use *vous* here as a formal "you" addressing a single person. *Vous* can also refer to a group of people.

2. *Comment tu dis...en français ?*

"How do you say...in French?"

By replacing *vous* (the formal "you") with *tu* (the informal "you"), the question becomes informal, and you should only use it with people you know and are familiar with: your family, friends, or people you feel comfortable with. No rules are set, you just have to feel out the situation.

3. *Comment on dit...en français ?*

"How do you say...in French?"

When using the personal pronoun *on*, the question becomes colloquial French, a language register called "familiar French" that we use daily among the people we know well. In this context, we use the pronoun *on* to refer to "people" in general.

We can also use *on* when the speaker refers to himself and other person(s). In other words, it means "we."

In all three versions, we use the verb *dire* ("to say") conjugated at "the present tense," called in French *le présent de l'indicatif*.

### Language Focus

---

After asking how to say a word, you might be curious about how to spell it. In this case, choose one of the following questions according to the situation you are in:

<b>Situation</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
Asking for a specific word:	<i>Comment s'épèle ... ?</i>	"How do you spell...?"
	<i>Comment s'écrit ... ?</i>	"How do you write...?"
The word was mentioned previously	<i>Comment ça s'épèle ?</i>	"How do you spell it?"
	<i>Comment ça s'écrit ?</i>	"How do you write it?"

*Vous pouvez répéter? Lentement, s'il vous plaît.*

"Can you repeat? Slowly, please."

---

After asking how to say a word, you may have difficulty understanding it. We are here to rescue you with another practical phrase that asks for your interlocutor to repeat what he or she just said. Here are several ways you can ask that question, depending on the formality required:

1. *Vous pouvez répéter?*

"Can you repeat?"

To make your request more pleasant, I'll suggest adding the magic words *s'il vous plaît*. You can also combine the two elements and make one question using

2. *Vous pouvez répéter lentement, s'il vous plaît?*

"Can you repeat slowly, please?"

or even to emphasize your request to slow the speed, add the word *plus*, as in

3. *Vous pouvez répéter plus lentement, s'il vous plaît?*

"Can you repeat more slowly, please?"

6 In these three options, the personal pronoun *vous* tells us the question is in formal French. The following element of the question is the conjugated auxiliary verb *pouvez* from the infinitive verb *pouvoir*, followed by the verb *répéter*, meaning "to repeat," to ask in a polite way to repeat the word.

4. *Tu peux répéter ?*

"Can you repeat?"

By using *tu*, the informal "you," we address the other person in an informal way. We can modify this sentence, much like the ones above, with the following formulations:

5. *Tu peux répéter lentement, s'il vous plaît?*

"Can you repeat slowly, please?"


6. *Tu peux répéter plus lentement, s'il vous plaît?*

"Can you repeat more slowly, please?"

### Language Tip

---

Note that when two verbs follow each other in a question or statement, the second one is always at the infinitive form.



### For Example:

1. *Vous pouvez répéter ?*

"Can you repeat?"

2. *Tu peux répéter ?*

"Can you repeat?"

***Veillez le notez.***

**"Write it down."**

**OR**

***Vous pouvez le noter?***

**"Can you write it down?"**

---

To memorize a word, you should review it a minimum of seven times. In other words, when you discover a new word, you need to use it seven times.

You could reuse it in a vocabulary exercise, mention it in a conversation, write it in a letter or a sentence, look for it while reading a text, or try any other uses you might imagine. The more you think of it, the better the chance you'll memorize it at a faster pace.

People often suggest that you write down a new word to help you record it in your gray matter. Some people prefer to speak it, while others are more visual. Find the best method for you.

### For Example:

1. *Veillez le noter.*  
"Please write it down."

Follow that advice to the letter. In this polite but direct request, the verb *vouloir* is conjugated at the imperative form. Because the verb form *veillez* is conjugated at the second person plural corresponding to the personal pronoun *vous*, this request is formulated in formal and polite French.

The word *le* replaces the word we previously gave you in French, which is *une fourchette*. Finally, the infinitive verb *noter* means "to take note."

You can also say *Vous pouvez le noter ?* This means "Can you write it down?"



## Cultural Insight

---

### How to Address Your French Teacher

---

When in a classroom, adult students usually refer to their teacher using *monsieur* for a man, meaning "sir," or *madame* for a woman, which is the equivalent of the English "Mrs." If the teacher prefers that you call him or her something else, the teacher will certainly introduce herself or himself the first day and let you know how to address him or her. For example, if the teacher is unmarried, she may ask you to call her *mademoiselle*. The professor may also ask you to call him by his or her first name if the setting, group, or conditions may allow it, such as a French course taken during vacation time or an exchange program, for example, when the atmosphere is usually more relaxed.

9

For younger students, such as children in primary or secondary schools, pupils refer to their teacher as *maitre* for male instructors or *maitresse* for female teachers, which is a common practice in all schools of France.



## Basic Bootcamp S1

Counting from 1-20

4

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	6

## French

---

Agnès	Un, deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix.
Someone	Onze, douze, treize, quatorze, quinze, seize.
Agnès	dix-sept, dix-huit, dix-neuf et vingt!

## English

---

Agnès	One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten.
Agnès	Eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen.
Agnès	seventeen, eighteen, nineteen and twenty!

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
un	one		
deux	two	adjective	
trois	three	adjective	
quatre	four	adjective	
cinq	five	adjective	
six	six	adjective	
sept	seven	adjective	
huit	eight	adjective	
neuf	nine	adjective	
dix	ten	adjective	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

---

<i>J'ai un euro.</i>	"I have one euro."
<i>J'ai deux frères.</i>	"I have two brothers."
<i>Il a trois ans.</i>	"He is three years old."
<i>Quatre euros pour une baguette? C'est cher!</i>	"Four euros for a baguette? That's expensive!"
<i>J'ai cinq voitures !</i>	"I have five cars!"
<i>Je voudrais six croissants.</i>	"I'd like six croissants."
<i>Il y a six dés dans le jeu du Yahtzee.</i>	"There are six dice in the Yahtzee game."

*La gourmandise est un des sept pêchés capitaux.* "Gluttony is one of the seven sins."  
*Il est huit heures, c'est l'heure de partir au travail.* "It is eight o'clock; it is time to go to work."  
*Allez dans la salle numéro neuf.* "Go to room number nine."  
*J'ai dix ans.* "I am ten years old."  
*Ça fait dix euros. C'est notre offre de la semaine !* "It costs ten euros. It is our offer of the week!"

## Grammar Points

---

### **The Focus of This Lesson Is Counting**

*Un, deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix.*

"One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten."

---

Numbers surround our daily lives. They help us function and run our lives. The applications of numbers today are as various as where we find them. In France, we use the ten-digit system with the cardinal numbers below.

### **From Zero to Nine**

---

<b>Number</b>	<b>French</b>
0	<i>zéro</i>
1	<i>un</i>
2	<i>deux</i>
3	<i>trois</i>
4	<i>quatre</i>
5	<i>cing</i>
6	<i>six</i>
7	<i>sept</i>
8	<i>huit</i>
9	<i>neuf</i>

### **From Ten to Nineteen**

4

---

Now that you know the numbers from one to ten in French, it is time to provide you with additional tips!

Once you master the numbers from one to ten, you will use some of them in the series below. However, be aware this series of numbers is quite particular, as most numbers don't follow a pattern. Consult the hints described below to make your first experience counting from ten to nineteen easier!

<b>Number</b>	<b>French</b>
10	<i>dix</i>
11	<i>onze</i>
12	<i>douze</i>
13	<i>treize</i>
14	<i>quatorze</i>
15	<i>quinze</i>
16	<i>seize</i>
17	<i>dix-sept</i>
18	<i>dix-huit</i>
19	<i>dix-neuf</i>

As you can see by looking at the numbers in bold in the table above, when counting from ten to sixteen, no recurrent pattern appears. This is why learning French numbers may seem overwhelming at first.

But we can facilitate learning the numbers if we break down the series of numbers into two groups.

### 1. **From eleven to sixteen**

These numbers have no common denominator and no real logic. What's the secret to mastering them? Well, just learn them...

### 2. **Ten and from seventeen to nineteen**

These numbers have something in common, which will help you memorize them. They all contain the word *dix*, meaning "ten," making their memorization easy so long as you properly learned the numbers from zero to nine!

So to remember how to say a number from seventeen to nineteen, use *dix* ("ten") and add the French word for the second digit. Let's say you want to say the number eighteen. Take the word *dix* and add the French word for eight, *huit*. You'll have *dix* + *huit*, which is properly written as *dix* hyphen *huit* (*dix-huit*).

## Cultural Insight

---





## Basic Bootcamp S1

Counting from 20 - 100

5

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	2
Cultural Insight	11



## French

---

A Vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, soixante-dix, quatre-vingt, quatre-vingt-dix, et cent!

## English

---

A Twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty, ninety, and a hundred!

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
vingt	twenty		
trente	thirty		
quarante	forty		
cinquante	fifty	adjective	
quatre-vingt	eighty		

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

---

*Il y a cinquante bougies sur le gâteau.*

"There are fifty candles on the cake."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Counting From Twenty to One Hundred**

*Vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, soixante-dix, quatre-vingt, quatre-vingt-dix, cent !*

**"Twenty, twenty-five, fifty, sixty-two, seventy-six, eighty-four, one hundred!"**

By combining the ten digits from zero to nine, we can write many other numbers, such as twenty-three

or fifty-two, for example. Then we must say each of these numbers, and that's where it becomes a bit more complicated in French. However, we'll share some tips and tricks so you'll have the easiest time possible memorizing them!

To learn, pronounce, and count in French from twenty to one hundred, follow the method presented to you below to avoid headaches and painful memorization! We've designed this strategy to make counting in French easy by first introducing you to the series of numbers by tens.

### Numbers by Tens

First, refer to the table below for each series of ten to know how to pronounce the first digit of a two or more digit number.

Make sure to refer to the Language Note below to learn the particularities of the numbers seventy, eighty, and ninety and find out why they are in bold.

<b>Number</b>	<b>French</b>
"twenty" (20)	<i>vingt</i>
"thirty" (30)	<i>trente</i>
"forty" (40)	<i>quarante</i>
"fifty" (50)	<i>cinquante</i>
"sixty" (60)	<i>soixante</i>
<b>"seventy" (70)</b>	<b><i>soixante-dix</i></b>
<b>"eighty" (80)</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt</i></b>
<b>"ninety" (90)</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-dix</i></b>
"one hundred" (100)	<i>cent</i>


## Language Note

---

You've probably noticed the numbers seventy, eighty, and ninety in bold. This is to grab your attention on how we say them in French. They will probably seem quite weird and difficult to your foreign prospective.

However, if you remember the tips below, they will help you memorize these three difficult numbers.

### For the number seventy:

- 
1. 70 is equal to  $60 + 10$
  2. 60 is *soixante* in French, and 10 is *dix*
  3. Therefore, 70 in French is *soixante-dix*

### For the number eighty:

1. 80 is equal to  $4 \times 20$
2. 4 is *quatre* in French, and 20 is *vingt*
3. So 80 in French is *quatre-vingt*

### For the number ninety:

1. 90 is equal to  $4 \times 20 + 10$
2. 4 in French is *quatre*, 20 is *vingt*, and 10 is *dix*
3. So 90 in French is *quatre-vingt-dix*

For all these numbers and the ones that are composed with more than one word that are under one hundred, make sure to not forget the hyphens between the written numbers.

### From Twenty to Sixty

Once you know how to say the first digit of any number of two or more digits, observe the table below with the series of numbers from twenty to sixty. These series are much easier, as each series of ten (from twenty to twenty-nine, from thirty to thirty-nine, etc...until sixty to sixty-nine) follows the exact same pattern when counting by ones.

Make sure to consult the Language Note to understand why the numbers ending in one are in bold in the table below.

<b>Numbers</b>	<b>French</b>
20	<i>vingt</i>
<b>21</b>	<b><i>vingt-et-un</i></b>
22	<i>vingt-deux</i>
30	<i>trente</i>
<b>31</b>	<b><i>trente-et-un</i></b>
32	<i>trente-deux</i>
40	<i>quarante</i>
50	<i>cinquante</i>
60	<i>soixante</i>

So let's recap. What you should know is that in French, we begin saying each series of numbers in the twenties and everything from the thirties through the sixties by saying their first digit.

For example, let's look at the number twenty-seven. First, we say the number "twenty," *vingt* in French, and then the last digit, "seven," or *sept* in French, as you would in English. You'll have twenty-seven, *vingt-sept*. Don't forget the hyphen when writing the numbers on a check, for example.

For all the other numbers from twenty to sixty, the pattern is identical. So to say thirty-three, as you may during a consultation with a doctor, you'd say *trente* ("thirty"), and then *trois* ("three"), and end up with *trente-trois* ("thirty-three"). If you wanted to say forty-six when telling someone's age, you'd say *quarante* ("forty"), followed by *six* ("six"), which would be *quarante-six* as in *quarante-six ans* ("forty-six years old").

### Language Note

---

Note that there is one slight but consistent modification with the numbers ending in one. For twenty-one, thirty-one, forty-one, etc. up to sixty-one, make sure to add the word *et*, meaning "and," between the digits. For example, for forty-one, it is *quarante et un*, appearing without hyphens on French checks as *quarante-et-un euros*. If the amount is 41.61 euros, it would be *quarante-et-un euros et soixante-et-un centimes d'euros*.

## From Seventy to Seventy-Nine

---

Even if this series seems to be *un casse-tête chinois* or in English, "a brain teaser," there is a trick to it. It is similar to the one we explain in the Language Note above under the first point, Numbers by Tens.

Numbers	French

70	<i>soixante-dix</i>
71	<i>soixante-et-onze</i>
72	<i>soixante-douze</i>
73	<i>soixante-treize</i>
74	<i>soixante-quatorze</i>
75	<i>soixante-quinze</i>
76	<i>soixante-seize</i>
77	<i>soixante-dix-sept</i>
78	<i>soixante-dix-huit</i>
79	<i>soixante-dix-neuf</i>

As you know, the number seventy is broken down into *soixante* ("sixty") and *dix* ("ten") ending up with *soixante-dix* ("seventy"). Logically, you surely already have guessed what the pattern is. For any number between seventy-two and seventy-nine, take *soixante* ("sixty") and add the difference between the number you want to say and sixty.

For example, for seventy-two, take *soixante* ("sixty") and add the difference between seventy-two minus sixty, leaving twelve. Therefore, in French, the number seventy-two is *soixante-douze* to refer to the postal code of a department. To say seventy-three, take *soixante* ("sixty") and add it to seventy-three minus sixty, which is equal to thirteen. Thus, to say the number seventy-three, you would say *soixante-treize* in French, which you could say to refer the year a person is born, for example.

### Language Note

---

In this series of numbers from seventy to seventy-nine, the number seventy-one has also the slight modification as the numbers ending in one below seventy with the word *et* and the hyphen.

Make sure to remember how to say or write seventy-one: use sixty and follow it with the difference between seventy-one and sixty, leaving eleven. So write *soixante*, the word *et*, and then *onze*.

### From Eighty to Eighty-Nine

These numbers are quite similar in their composition to the series above that describes the numbers in the seventies. To say a number between eighty-two and eighty-nine, follow the same principles and strategies as for the numbers from seventy to seventy-nine.

Numbers	French
80	<i>quatre-vingt</i>
<b>81</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-un</i></b>
<b>82</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-deux</i></b>
<b>83</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-trois</i></b>
<b>84</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-quatre</i></b>
<b>85</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-cinq</i></b>
<b>86</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-six</i></b>
87	<i>quatre-vingt-sept</i>
88	<i>quatre-vingt-huit</i>
89	<i>quatre-vingt-neuf</i>

Instead of using sixty as a point of reference as for the numbers in the seventies series above, use the number eighty, which in French is the combination of four multiplied by twenty or in a simpler way, *quatre-vingt* ( $4 \times 20 = 80$ ). Then add the difference between the number you need and eighty.

For example, if you need to verify the cost of an exquisite menu at eighty-nine euros, take *quatre-vingt* ("eighty"), and add the difference between eighty-nine minus eighty, which is equal to *neuf* ("nine"). You'll end up with *quatre-vingt-neuf* ("eighty-nine"), and you can ask, *Est-ce que le menu est à quatre-vingt-neuf euros?* ("Is the menu at eighty-nine euros?")

### From Ninety to One Hundred

---

With this last series of numbers, the overall logic is the same as the previous ones.

<b>Numbers</b>	<b>French</b>
90	<i>quatre-vingt-dix</i>
<b>91</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-onze</i></b>
<b>92</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-douze</i></b>
<b>93</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-treize</i></b>
<b>94</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-quatorze</i></b>
<b>95</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-quinze</i></b>
<b>96</b>	<b><i>quatre-vingt-seize</i></b>
97	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-sept</i>
98	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-huit</i>
99	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-neuf</i>

For the numbers from ninety-one to ninety-nine, take the number *quatre-vingt* ("eighty"), and follow that number with the difference between the number you are searching for and eighty.

For example, if you are talking about a distance of ninety-five kilometers, say *quatre-vingt* ("eighty"), and follow it with the difference of ninety-five minus eighty, which is *quinze* ("fifteen"). You would then say *quatre-vingt* ("eighty"), *quinze* ("fifteen"), and of course, in the context of the distance, you would say *C'est à quatre-vingt-quinze kilomètres* ("It is at ninety-five kilometers.").

### Spelling Focus: Eighty-One and Ninety-One

---

Note that for the numbers eighty-one and ninety-one, we don't use the word *et*, and we do use a hyphen between all the numbers as in:



1. "81" - *quatre* hyphen *vingt* hyphen *un*, which is *quatre-vingt-un*
2. "91" - *quatre* hyphen *vingt* hyphen *onze*, which is *quatre-vingt-onze*

### Spelling Focus: Twenty and One Hundred

---

Note that when spelling the two words *cent*, meaning "one hundred," and *vingt*, meaning "twenty," we do not make them plural. We apply the plural mark, the letter *-s*, only when either *vingt* or *cent* have in front of them a number multiplying itself AND another number does not follow it.

So to have either *cent* ("one hundred") and *vingt* ("twenty") at the plural form, you must have:

1. A number in front of it multiplying *vingt* ("twenty") or *cent* ("one hundred") **AND**
2. No number following either *vingt* ("twenty") or *cent* ("one hundred")

#### For Example:

1. "80", *quatre-vingts* (4 x 20)
2. "200", *deux cents* (2 x 200)

If we don't satisfy the second condition, we do not use the mark of the plural with the letter *-s*.

#### For Example:



10

1. "82", *quatre-vingt-deux*
2. "202", *deux cent deux* or *deux-cent-deux* (according to the 1990 French spelling reform)

---

## Cultural Insight

---

### Reform of the French Numbering System

---

In 1990, the French reformed how they spell numbers to simplify the system. The reform allows us to simply just add hyphens to all the compound numbers under one hundred.

So we would write the numbers twenty-one or ninety-one, for example, as *vingt-et-un* ("twenty-one") and *quatre-vingt-et-onze* ("ninety-one").

A person's age will probably determine which method he or she prefers, either because of habit or because the person may not be aware of this simplification of writing numbers in French if he or she finished school before 1990.



## All About S1

### History of The French Language

1

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson is the History of French.**

### I. Linguistics:

---

#### 1. The Origins of and the Different Influences on Today's French Language

French comes from the Romance language family of the Indo-European languages, which is divided into various groups of languages. French is a Romance language because it descends from Latin, the language of the ancient Romans.

Historians have traced the earliest development of the French language to just after the Neolithic period (considered to be the last part of the Stone Age) and to three groups of people:

- The *Ligures* (located in Provence, a region on the Mediterranean coast, and the northeastern part of Italy),
- The *Ibères* (from the Languedoc region located in southern France near Spain),
- The *Aquitains* (from the southwestern region of France).

Each group left some traces in modern French as suffixes in names of places, such as *-ax*, *-ox*, and *-us*, which were inherited from the *Ligures*.

Before the Romans invaded the actual French territory, France was known as *La Gaule*. Numerous tribes speaking *le Gaulois* ("Gaulish") composed of Celtic dialects probably close to *le Breton* (still spoken today in the region of *La Bretagne* or Brittany located in western France), inhabited *La Gaule*. Some traces of Gaulish influence are still present in the French spoken today; for example, these traces include the Gauls' ancient way of counting people by twenty. In modern French, we still have *quatre-vingt* ("80"), but there were also *six-vingt* ("120") and *quinze-vingt* ("300").

Once the Romans conquered the Gauls in the second and first century BC, vulgar Latin (which the common people spoke, as opposed to literary Latin, which the upper classes spoke) rapidly dominated. Its success was due to:

- its resemblance to Gaulish,
- its social prestige, because Latin was considered the language of civilization,
- its use in the government and in schools open to Gaulish people,
- its use in the army to recruit the recently invaded inhabitants,
- its use for communication in business.

In the fifth century AD, the Franks, a group of Germanic tribes from the Northern Sea and the region near the Rhine River, began their invasion of Gaul, but they too were Romanized (as the Gaulish people) by accepting the Roman Empire. Even though sometimes at war, the Germanic tribes also traded and established military alliances and cultural exchanges. With its decline, the Franks became more and more important by melting into the Romano-Gallic population that would later carry their name, *Les Francs*.

With this multicultural population of the Gauls, Romans, and Franks, the language diverged into:

- the language of *Oïl*, a mix of Latin and the Franks' language, *le Francique*, north of the Loire River,
- the language of *Oc*, close to Latin, spoken south of the river (Bourgogne, Savoie, Dauphiné),
- in the middle, a mix of the previous two languages, the Franco-Provençal.

Although modern French inherited several hundred words of Celtic origin and several hundred more of Germanic origin, it owes its structure and the greater part of its vocabulary to Latin.

## 2. The Root of Today's French Language

People have spoken French for more than 2200 years. One important document proving its early existence is the *Les Serments de Strasbourg*\*, dated from 842.

From the ninth century, a common language, *le Francien*, appeared necessary for trade and commerce in what is today *Île de France*, the region where Paris is located (called *Lutèce* under the Roman Empire). It was the place to meet to exchange goods; a place where people speaking different dialects from the other regions could only understand each other through a common language evolved from the common forms of the various dialects.

*Le Francien* spread and rapidly gained prestige, as it was the language of the king. King Hugues Capet\*\* in 987 was the first king who couldn't understand Germanic (the original language of the Franks, *Les Francs*) and spoke *Le Francien*. Therefore, as a prestigious language, it was also used in literature and commerce.

To sum up, today's "academically correct" French comes from common forms of the different dialects and its usage in the judicial circle and in the king's court. Therefore, only a small group of people developed what became modern French.

\* *Les serments de Strasbourg* is an alliance between Charles le Chauve and Louis le Germanique, the two grandsons of [Charlemagne](#), King of the Franks from 768 to 814, against the threat of a third grandson, Lothair I, the oldest son of Louis le Pieux ("Louis the Pious," born in 795, died in 855), the sole heir to Charlemagne's throne.

\*\*Hugues Capet (born in 940, died in 996) was Duke of the Franks (960-987) and became King of the Franks (987-996). He is part of the *Capétien* dynasty.

## II. About France's Origin:

### 1. French in France and its surrounding Francophone neighbors

In its infancy, the French language was called *le Francilien*. It was born in Paris in the ninth century and spread successfully all over Europe through poems and literature telling the adventures and loves



of heroes. These stories were known as Romances after the French language, which became in modern French the word *roman* meaning "novel" and in English the word "romantic."

From around the time of Louis XIV (born in 1638, died in 1715) to the beginning of the twentieth century, European and European-influenced countries viewed French as the language of international communication.

Because French has been spoken for more than two thousand years, has spread across its border, and has become popular within many countries, today it is spoken all over the world-mainly in France, Belgium, Switzerland, Canada, and Monaco.

## 2. Number of Native French Speakers

Strictly speaking, the number of people speaking French all over the world as a native language is about seventy-two million, including the ones in France, Belgium, Switzerland, Canada, and Monaco.

However, from a broader viewpoint, the overall number of native French speakers in the world is more than double that.

French is also spoken in several different places in the world, such as Francophone countries where French is the official or one of the official languages or where the native population speaks French. Until 2007, this number was believed to be 109 million; in 2007, a study from the International Organization of the French Speaking Countries indicated there are more than two hundred million native French speakers, of which seventy-two million are partial native French speakers.

## III. Where It Is Spoken:

---

### 1. Countries Where Mainly French Is Spoken

French is now the main language spoken in France, of course, and its overseas departments or territories (such as Guadeloupe, French Guyana, Martinique, Mayotte, New Caledonia, French Polynesia, Reunion Island, Saint Barthelemy Island, Saint Martin Island, and the Saint Pierre and Miquelon Islands). In the following countries, French is the only official language:

- North America: Québec (a Canadian province)
- Africa: Benin, Burkina Faso, Burundi, Congo, Gabon, Ivory Coast, Mali, Niger, Senegal, Togo, Guinée-Conakry
- Europe: Monaco

## 2. Other French-Speaking Countries

There are many other French-speaking countries, which are distinguished in two groups.

The countries that list one of their official languages as French are:

- in Europe: Belgium, Luxembourg, and Switzerland,
- in Africa: Cameroun, Central Africa, Chad, Comoro Islands, Djibouti, Maurice Island, Rwanda, Seychelle Islands
- in America: Canada
- in the Caribbean Islands: Haiti.

And the countries where the population is partially speaking French but French isn't an official language are:

- in Africa: Algeria, Equatorial Guyana, Madagascar, Maroc, Tunisia
- in America: Louisiana in the United States
- in Asia, Cambodia

## 3. Language Differences in French



French spoken outside France has some variations. From one country to another, you'll hear regional flavors. The differences are mainly in pronunciation, with various accents from slight to heavy, as well as in the vocabulary used, where some words and expressions are common in some countries and not in others.

The differences are mainly due to France's colonial past. France's first colonial era lasted from the early 1600s to the mid-1700s and involved the colonization of parts of America, India, and West Africa. The second era lasted from 1830 to the 1920s, involving both France and Belgium, and involved the colonization of parts of Africa and the Middle and Far East.

You'll find the highest concentration of French speakers in the Maghreb (Algeria, Morocco, and Tunisia), although you'll also find many speakers in Africa as well as in the Indian Ocean.

In Canada, the French language differences in its pronunciation, including *infin* for *enfant* meaning "child," *p'tsi* for *p'tit* (spoken contraction of *petit*, meaning "small"), and *dziue* for *dieu*, meaning "God." There are also some three hundred thousand French speakers in Louisiana (which French settlers named for Louis XIV) who speak one of two dialects, colonial French (in New Orleans and the plantations along the Mississippi) and Cajun (whose speakers are the descendants of the first French settlers in Canada, called Acadians).



## IV. Why French Is Important

---

Even though English is now the dominant language of business, diplomacy, and international affairs, French still retains its role as an international language of communication in many ways.

### The Top Five Reasons to Learn the French Language:

1. It is an official language in most of the major international organizations, such as the United

Nations, the European Union, NATO, and UNESCO.

2. It is, along with English, one of the two languages spoken on every continent.

3. It is also the ninth most-spoken language in the world.

4. It was often used in scholarly texts (for example, Jacques Cartier's geographical writings, and Nostradamus's astronomical writings were written in French).

5. It allows access to a rich culture, history, and literary tradition.



## All About S1

### The French Writing System

2

Grammar Points

2

---

## Grammar Points

---

### The Focus of This Lesson Is The French Writing System

---

The French writing system uses the Latin or Roman alphabet of the Roman Empire, just like English, plus five diacritics<sup>1</sup> (the circumflex accent, acute accent, grave accent, cedilla, and dieresis<sup>2</sup>) and two ligatures (æ, œ) as its writing system. The accent marks mainly create phonetics for words, while the ligatures æ and œ are obligatory contractions of ae and oe in certain French words (as *insœur*; meaning "sister").

#### I. Origin of the French Writing System

---

2

Its first version (close to Latin) appears in writing in 842 AD in the Strasbourg Oaths, which formed alliances between two descendants of Charlemagne against their third brother to rule the inherited Empire divided among the three. (See Cultural Insight).

Then the French writing system evolved with the languages of the various invaders, including *la langue d'oc* (dialects of the Frankish Kingdom) and *la langue d'oïl* (dialects of south and southwestern France), with both *oc* and *oïl* meaning "yes."

The ancient origin of the Latin alphabet itself can be traced to the Cumae form of the Greek alphabet, from which a variety of other alphabets evolved to be used in the Italic languages.<sup>3</sup>

Knowing that French...

- uses the Latin alphabet, which is a major part of international communication since it is one of the most widely used alphabets; six of the twelve international languages of the world-French, Spanish, German, English, Italian, and Portuguese-use the Latin alphabet
- has many common vocabulary roots with romance languages (Spanish, Portuguese, French, Italian, Romanian, etc.)

...will help you survive with limited knowledge of these languages in many parts of the world, such as Spanish- or Portuguese-speaking countries as well as Italy, and the many other countries where French is widely spoken or is the official language.

### Cultural Close-Up

---

*La langue d'oïl* in the Middle Ages (from the fifth to sixteenth century) had a cultural prestige stretching well beyond the borders of France, like the language of troubadour poetry.

French literature really started to take off in the late twelfth to the early thirteenth century, with the first great work of French literature, *Chanson de Roland* ("Song of Roland") published around 1200.

## II. The French Alphabet

---

The word "alphabet" refers to a writing system that has characters (graphemes) for representing both consonant and vowel sounds (phonemes). Ideally, each letter represents one speech sound (grapheme-phoneme correspondence), which practically is not always the case.

The current French alphabet consists of five vowels (in green below) and twenty-one consonants, and thus it has twenty-six characters. It also uses accent marks, also called diacritics,<sup>1</sup> that create phonetic, semantic, or etymological meanings for words.

We form French words by combining letters into syllables and syllables into words.

To form syllables, we use the thirty-seven phonemes, which are divided into nineteen vowels and eighteen consonants, and more than 130 graphemes.

A phoneme corresponds to a unit of sound, and a grapheme is the written code of this sound. In French, there are many graphemes for one sound. For example, the graphemes *-en*, *-an*, *-em*, *-am*, *-aon*, *-aen* have an identical sound.

You can also add prefixes or suffixes (a group of determined letters) to a word to form new words: we place a prefix before the word and a suffix after a word. For example, to create opposites of some words, which are called antonyms, add *dé-*; when we add *dé-* to *brancher* ("to connect" or "plug in"), it becomes *débrancher* ("to disconnect" or "unplug").

If you know the French writing system and are familiar with the Latin alphabet, you will better understand its applications in the romance languages still spoken today. This will allow you to evaluate the spelling of any single one and better understand how romance languages function.

Therefore, you will also be able to learn in an easier and more efficient way an additional language, such as, for example, one of the most popular languages today for business or communication throughout the globe-Spanish.

The French Alphabet - <i>L'alphabet français</i>												
<b>A a</b>	<b>B b</b>	<b>C c</b>	<b>D d</b>	<b>E e</b>	<b>F f</b>	<b>G g</b>	<b>H h</b>	<b>I i</b>	<b>J j</b>	<b>K k</b>	<b>L l</b>	<b>M m</b>
[a]	[be]	[se]	[de]	[e]	[f]	[g]	[a]	[i]	[j]	[ka]	[l]	[m]
<b>N n</b>	<b>O o</b>	<b>P p</b>	<b>Q q</b>	<b>R r</b>	<b>S s</b>	<b>T t</b>	<b>U u</b>	<b>V v</b>	<b>W w</b>	<b>X x</b>	<b>Y y</b>	<b>Z z</b>
[n]	[o]	[pe]	[ky]	[r]	[s]	[te]	[y]	[ve]	[dubl?ve]	[iks]	[ig??k]	[z?d]

### Cultural Note

#### Birth of Accents

It was also during the sixteenth century that accents began to appear. With the invention of the printing

press, printers looked for ways to eliminate ambiguity and redundant letters. The solution to these problems was the use of accents and other markings. For example, in 1530, the French introduced the cedilla as a means of making it clear that the c was soft before a, o, and u (up till then, printers had used *-ce-*, *-ss-*, *-ch-* or just *-c-*).

<sup>1</sup> Diacritic: small sign added to a letter to alter its pronunciation or to distinguish between similar words.

<sup>2</sup> Dieresis: pronunciation of two adjacent vowels in two separate syllables, as in the word "cooperate" (with the syllables "co" and "operate").

<sup>3</sup> Italic languages: a subfamily of the Indo-European languages including the Romance languages (Spanish, Portuguese, French, Italian, Romanian, Latin, etc.).





## All About S1

### Painless French Grammar

3

Grammar Points

2



## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Painless French Basic Grammar.**

---

I hate grammar! Have you ever heard or said this statement? But what is grammar, and what is it for? French grammar has the reputation of being boring and complicated. However, with the right approach, it can be simpler and clearer than you think.

After this basic introduction to French grammar, everything is going to be much clearer and your apprehension will fly away! To make this a reality, let's see how and why grammar can be a useful tool to improve your French!

**What Is Grammar for?**

---

Grammar is for a language what an engine is for a car. Grammar is the mechanics of a language. We use it to form and structure sentences to communicate clearly and efficiently. Without assembling the mechanical parts of an engine correctly, your car won't function properly. The same concept is true of languages. With improper word construction or word order, a language becomes gibberish and is worthless.

**French & English Grammar**

---

Just as an engine helps a car move, mastering basic grammar helps you express yourself and communicate your ideas clearly. The more you know about the engine parts, the more you can

improve your engine's capacity. Similarly, the more you know about grammar, the better your French will become! Let's start with the basics.

## I. The Verb

Just like English, French is an SVO language: subject-verb-object.

The subject is the person performing the action. The verb expresses an action or state. The object is what is involved in the performance of the action.

### For Example:

	<b>Sentence</b>	<b>Subject</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Object</b>
<b>French</b>	<i>J'écris un mél.</i>	<i>J'</i>	<i>écris</i>	<i>un mél</i>
<b>English</b>	"I write an e-mail."	"I"	"write"	"an e-mail"

In French, most often we form or conjugate a verb following the same basic rules as in English.

The French classify verbs in three groups. The first two include regular verbs, and the last includes irregular ones.

The first verb group includes all the verbs with infinitives ending in *-ir*. The second verb group includes verbs with infinitives ending in *-ir* and present participles ending in *-issant*. The third group includes all the other verbs.

To know who does what and when in French or in English, the verb changes forms according to the following:

- Who does the action with **the person**:

As in English, there are six persons: three singular ("I," "you," "he/she") and three plural ("we," "you," "they"). The additional difficulty in French is that the verb form varies more than in English. Each verb form changes according to each person, but in English, the verb form is generally the same for all persons except the third person singular.

- When the action is done with **the tense**:

In both French and English, the event takes place either in the past, present, or future using various tenses. Be aware in French we use the word *temps* for both concepts of chronological time (as mentioned previously, present, past, and future) and tenses, such as the present simple, for example.

The easy part is that each major English tense has its equivalent tense in French. However, when going into more detail about the French language, you will notice that some French tenses don't have an equivalent tense in English. However, they exist for a reason and particular use, such as *le passé simple*, a tense we only use when describing past actions.

- The attitude of speakers with **the mood**:

The good news is that each mood in the French language has a counterpart in English. The four most frequently used moods in French are the indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and conditional.

Is the speaker expressing a fact, an order, a desire, or a polite request?

**For Example:**

Asking someone to open the window can be:	French	"English"
A straightforward request using the indicative with <i>ouvrir</i> , as in:	<i>Vous ouvrez la porte, s'il vous plaît?</i>	"Open the window please?"
An order using the imperative with <i>ouvrir</i> , as in:	<i>Ouvez la fenêtre !</i>	"Open the window!"
A desire with the subjunctive of <i>ouvrir</i> , as	<i>Je voudrais que vous ouvriez la fenêtre.</i>	"I'd like you to open the window."

in:		
A polite request with the conditional of <i>pouvoir</i> , as in:	<i>Pourriez-vous ouvrir la fenêtre ?</i>	"Could you open the door, please?"

## II. Indicative Tenses

We use the indicative tenses most widely in everyday speaking French and they are necessary to comfortably function while in France. You could even sound like a native using them, if your accent would not betray you.

### A. We use *le présent de l'indicatif*:

Use	French Example	"English"
For true information - This tense describes an action that is always true:	<i>La terre tourne autour du soleil.</i>	"The earth revolves around the sun."
For actions in progress:*	<i>Je mange une pomme.</i>	"I eat an apple."
For recent past or just completed actions:**	<i>Je rentre de Tahiti.</i>	"I just came back from Tahiti."
For an imminent action: (or use <i>être sur le point de</i> .)	<i>Je pars dans cinq minutes. Je suis sur le point de partir.</i>	"I leave in five minutes." "I'm just going to leave."

\*For actions in progress, you can also use the expression *en train de* + infinitive in the present progressive tense.

### For Example:

1. *Je suis en train de manger.*  
"I'm eating."

\*\*Or you can use *venir de* + infinitive.

**For Example:**

1. *Je viens de rentrer de Tahiti.*  
"I have just returned from Tahiti."

**B. We use *le future proche*: to describe an action that will happen soon.**

**For Example:**

1. *Je vais prendre un cours de français*  
"I'm going to take a French course."

With an indication of a time, the time frame might be more or less longer.

**For Example:**

1. *Je vais prendre un cours de français dans trois mois.*  
"I'm going to take a French course in three months."

**C. We use *le futur simple*: for future projects.**

**For Example:**

1. *Nous irons chez toi les prochaines vacances.*  
"We will come to your home next vacation."

**D. We use *le passé composé*: to describe completed actions in the past.**

**For Example:**

1. *Il a plu pendant une heure.*

"It rained for an hour."

**E. We use *l'imparfait*: for actions in progress in the past without a precise time limit.**

**For Example:**

1. *Il pleuvait beaucoup.*  
"It rained a lot."

**F. We use *le plus-que-parfait*: to express that an action happened before another event in the past-it is the past of the past.**

**For Example:**

1. *Il m'a rapporté les livres que je lui avais prêtés.*  
"He brought back the books that I lent him."

Most of the tenses are easy to use and have an equivalent tense in English. The only two that cause confusion to many learners are the two past tenses, *le passé composé* and *l'imparfait*.

7

### III. Other Tenses

---

The other tenses the French language uses are

**A. *l'impératif*** to give orders

**B. *le conditionnel présent et passé***, which we use as the future of the past

**For Example:**

1. *Hier, il a dit (passé composé)*
2. *Qu'il viendrait (conditionnel présent with a future time frame context) demain.*

We also use *le conditionnel* to express civility. Its English equivalent is the polite form "would" or "could," such as expressing a desire with the translation "would like," an advice with the translation "should," a probability or suggestion with the translation "could," or an uncertainty with the translation "may" or "might."

**C. le subjonctif présent et passé:**

These are the tenses of the subjunctive where the interpretation of the fact is more important than the fact itself.

**For Example:**

1. *Il faut que je parte à l'heure.*  
"I must leave on time."

**IV. Conjugation or Verb Form Tenses**

Once you know which tense to use in context of your sentence, it's time to conjugate the verb. This is not an easy task in French. It seems complex, but you can do it efficiently with the correct method and following basic instructions while using the right tool.

**A. Conjugating Verbs**

First, you need to identify the right tense according to the

time indicated by the context (past, present, or future).

- the intention of the speaker, if any, to choose the correct mood. If the speaker is uncertain about a past fact, use *le conditionnel passé*.
- whether the action is related to another one or not. For example, use *le passé composé* if an action interrupts another one in the past.

Then find the subject of the verb. It will tell you at which person (first, *je* ("I") or *nous* ("we")); second, *tu* ("you") or *vous* ("you"); or third, *il* ("he"), *elle* ("she"), or *on* (singular "we"); or *ils* (masculine "they") or *elles* (feminine "they")) you need to form the verb.

Next, take *le radical* ("the stem") of the verb, or in other words, the verb part that doesn't change, and add *la terminaison* ("the ending") according to the tense and subject you previously determined.

## B. Tips for Conjugating Regular Verbs

To make this task easier, know that for the regular verbs, we form almost all conjugations from the indicative present, the infinitive, and the present participle.

## C. Tips for Conjugating Irregular Verbs

For the third verb group, some patterns exist.

**For l'imparfait:** Take the stem from the first person plural of the indicative present and add the corresponding person ending of *l'imparfait* to the stem:

### For Example:

1. *Boire* ("to drink"): *Nous buvons* (stem: *buv* + ending: *-ons*), *il buvait*. ("I drank")

**For le subjonctif présent:** Take the stem from the third person plural of the indicative present and add the corresponding person ending to the stem, except for the first and second person plural.



**For Example:**

1. *Boire* ("to drink"): *ils boivent* (stem: *boiv* + ending: *-ent*), *que je boive*.

For the first and second person plural, the subjunctive has the same form as *l'imparfait*.

**For le futur de l'indicatif:** Take the infinitive stem and add the appropriate ending for the future.

**For Example:**

1. *Boire* ("to drink") *boi -re* add the *-r* (characteristic of the future), *je boirai* ("I will drink")

**V. Subject-Verb Agreement**


---

The verb always agrees with the subject, as in English. However, you might find yourself in a tricky situation. When the subject refers to a collectivity of people or things, the verb usually takes a singular form.

**For Example:**

1. *La foule va et vient.*  
"The crowd goes and comes."

However, if a plural noun follows the collectivity of people or things, the verb can take either the singular or plural form.

**For Example:**

1. *Un groupe d'homme d'affaire arrive/arrivent demain.*  
"A group of businessmen arrive tomorrow."

## VI. Articles

---

The generic term for any word in front of the noun is a determiner. Determiners give information about a noun. Determiners include articles as well as possessive adjectives, such as *mon* ("my," either masculine or feminine), *ma* ("my," feminine), etc., and demonstrative adjectives, such as *ce* ("this," "that," masculine) or *cette* ("this," "that," feminine), and some others, to only name a few.

There are many different kinds of articles. They are often the cause of headaches for learners of all levels simply because their uses can be confusing, especially for the indefinite and definite ones, as some of their usage overlaps. Moreover, some are equal in form but different in use. The following overview will help you get a good understanding of how they function.

Articles are classified as follows:

### A. Definite article: *le, la, l', les.*

We use definite articles to refer to a category of things or people, as in *les hommes* ("men"), *les animaux* ("animals"), *la science* ("science"), etc., or to speak of specific things individually or as a group, as in *l'homme au coin de la rue* ("the man at the street corner") or *les enfants de Jeanne* ("Jeanne's children").

### B. Indefinite article: *un, une, des.*

We use indefinite articles to indicate something or someone in general and not identified.\*

#### For Example:

1. *Un chat est sur le toit.*  
"A cat is on the roof."

In this case, we don't know anything about the cat except for its location! We also use indefinite articles when we mention something for the first time.

**For Example:**

1. *C'est une maison agréable. C'est la maison des Dubois.*  
"It's a nice house. It's the Dubois' house."

\*Be aware you might be confused when referring to a category of people or things. When this category is defined by a quality (as an adjective would), use an indefinite article. For example, we would say *Il y a des gens généreux* ("There are some generous people") instead of *Il y a les gens généreux*.

**C. Partitive article: *du, de la, de l', des.***

We use partitive articles to express an idea of a non-specific quantity.

**For Example:**

1. *Tu peux acheter du lait?*  
"Can you buy some milk?"

In this phrase, we refer to a certain quantity of milk without knowing how much. Is it a gallon, a carton, a small bottle? We also use them in a different context as well when speaking of feelings and personality traits, always referring to a certain quantity.

**For Example:**

1. *Il a de la peine et du courage.*  
literally, "He has some sadness and some courage," better translated as "He is sad and has some courage."

No one can possess the whole sadness or courage of the world!

#### D. Contracted article: *du, de la, de l', des*

It is often difficult to distinguish between contracted and partitive articles in sentences as they are identical in form. However, their uses are different.

We use contracted articles in two ways. One is with verbs followed by the preposition *de*, as in *parler de* ("speak of"), *arriver de* ("to arrive from") or *avoir peur de* ("to be scared of").

We can also use them to complete a noun, as in *l'ordinateur de l'étudiant* ("the student's computer") or *la femme du Boulanger* ("the baker's wife").

#### E. Absence of article or *article zero*

This French grammar rule is also a hard one to master. The solution? Practice, practice, practice. In some cases, it's evident when not to use an article, and other times, it is more challenging. Articles usually should be absent:

- 1.) after a the preposition *de* when referring to quantities, as in *un paquet de cigarettes* ("a pack of cigarettes"); characteristics, as in *des chaussures de sport* ("sport shoes"); material, as in *des chaussures de cuir* ("leather shoes"), and origins with feminine nouns of countries and regions, as in *Je viens de Belgique* ("I come from Belgium.")
- 2.) after the preposition *à* to refer to a quality, as in *un train à grande vitesse* ("a rapid train"); a characteristic, as in *une robe à fleurs* ("a flowery dress"); or a use, as in *un verre à vin* ("a wine glass").
- 3.) with the prepositions *sans* and *avec* and the expressions of coordination *et* and *ou* and in some other cases.

### VII. Nouns and Gender

---

Nouns designate either a person, a thing, an animal, or a concept. No fuss there. The difficulty is that nouns have gender, whereas they don't in English. However, be reassured, the following tips will demystify the genders to help you out.

**A. Les noms masculins**

Countries:

Almost all countries are masculine except for the ones ending with the letter *-e*. The exceptions are *le Mexique*, *le Zaïre*, *le Cambodge*, and *le Mozambique*. Some countries don't have any articles, such as *Cuba*, *Chypre*, *Israël*, *Malte*, and *Singapour*.

Other nouns:

Most nouns are masculine when ending with the following:

<b>Ending</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
-age (except <i>la plage</i> , <i>une image</i> , <i>la page</i> )	<i>le fromage</i>	"the cheese"
-al	<i>un animal</i>	"an animal"
-ier	<i>le pommier</i>	"the apple tree"
-isme	<i>le socialisme</i>	"socialism"
-ment	<i>le gouvernement</i>	"government"
-oir	<i>le couloir</i>	"the corridor"

**B. Les noms féminins**

Nouns with the following endings are almost always feminine:

<b>Ending</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
-ance, -ence (except <i>le silence</i> )	<i>la confiance la patience</i>	"confidence" "patience"
-ée (except <i>le lycée</i> , <i>le musée</i> )	<i>la pensée</i>	"the thought"
-eur (except <i>le bonheur</i> , <i>le malheur</i> )	<i>la chaleur</i>	"the heat"
-ie	<i>la philosophie</i>	"philosophy"
-ion, -sion, -tion,	<i>la passion</i>	"passion"
-xion	<i>la réflexion</i>	"thinking"
-té	<i>la beauté</i>	"beauty"
-ure	<i>la courbature</i>	"ache"

**VIII. Pronouns**

---

Pronouns are words that replace a noun to avoid repetition. Their forms are various, and we choose them according to their number (singular or plural), gender, and function (Is the pronoun the subject of the verb, the object?). Some are easy to recognize, as they exist in English too, but others are specific to the French language. The most common ones are

**A. *Les pronoms personnels*** (ou *pronom personnels sujets*), including *je* ("I"), *tu* ("you"), *il* ("he"), *elle* ("she"), etc.

**B. *Les pronoms toniques***, which we use to reinforce the subject.

**For Example:**

1. *Moi, je suis français.*  
"Me, I'm French."

We also use them after some prepositions, such as *à, pour, de, par*, etc.

**For Example:**

1. *Ce cadeau c'est pour toi.*  
"This gift is for you."

**C. *Les pronoms des verbes pronominaux***. We use these pronouns with verbs that indicate the action is done on the subject itself...

**For Example:**

1. *Il se rase.*  
"He shaves."

or the subjects act upon each other. In this case, the subject of the sentence is plural.

**For Example:**

1. *Ils se regardent dans les yeux.*

"They look at each other in the eyes."

**D. *Les pronoms compléments*** replace the object of a sentence.

**For Example:**

1. *Il la regarde.*

"He watches her/it."

**E. *Les pronoms démonstratifs*** replace a demonstrative adjective (*cette, cet, ces*, etc.) followed by a noun.

**F. *Les pronoms possessifs*** replace a possessive adjective (*mon, ma, tes*, etc.) followed by a noun.

**G. *Les pronoms interrogatifs*** ask information about a noun in question (*Quel est ton chanteur préféré ?*)

## IX. Invariable Words

---

Some words never change according to gender or number. They are prepositions and adverbs.

Prepositions are words, such as *à, de, en, par*, with various translations according to their context or a group of words, such as *à partir de* ("from") or *au-dessus de* ("above"). Each one has many usages we won't present here due to their complexity. However, what is important for you to know is that they don't agree with the noun and therefore don't change in their spelling, even though they introduce a

noun, a pronoun (replacing a noun), an adjective, or a verb.

Adverbs are words that slightly changing the meaning of a verb...

**For Example:**

1. **Adverb:**

*Il parle fort.*

"He speaks loudly."

2. **Adjective:**

*Il fait très froid.*

"It is very cold."

3. **Adverb:**

*Il est vraiment très gentil.*

"He is really very kind."

and never change as they are invariable.





## All About S1

French Pronunciation Made EASY

4

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

### **The Focus of This Lesson Is French Pronunciation.**

---

French is the language and sound of love! Many people state that French always sounds romantic, no matter what is said! Even swearing in French seems sweet to foreign ears. So let's get going so you can become the perfect parrot and pronounce French in no time.

In French, there are twenty-six letters (the alphabet), thirty-seven speech sounds, and 130 graphemes. Graphemes are the different spellings of each sound found in French.

For example, take a look at the *-en* sound in the word *vent*, meaning "wind." We can also write the *-en* sound as *-em*, as in *empporter* ("to bring"), or as *-an*, as in *ange* ("angel"). Therefore, we can write one sound in different ways.

With thirty-seven speech sounds, French has some sounds that are similar or identical to English sounds and others that are completely foreign. That's when the majority of learners get discouraged! However, by listening and practicing these sounds to learn the differences between them and how they are spelled in French, it will get easier and easier.

We can separate the speech sounds into two categories:

- Nineteen vowels
- Eighteen consonants

### **The Nineteen Vowel Sounds**

---

The French vowel sounds are divided as follows:

**I. *Voyelles orales* ("oral vowels")**

- *Voyelles antérieures* ("front vowels")
- *Voyelles centrales* ("central vowels")
- *Voyelles postérieures* ("back vowels")

**II. *Voyelles nasales* ("nasal vowels")****III. *Semi-voyelles* ("half vowels")**

Quite some barbarian words! Yes, we emit some of our sounds from our noses or throats and not only from our mouths. You'll use muscles you never knew you had! While learning French, you're discovering your own anatomy!

**I. *Voyelles orales* ("Oral Vowels")****A. *Voyelles antérieures* ("Front Vowels")**

We call these types of sounds "front vowels" because you produce them by placing your tongue more or less far ahead in your mouth.

For example, try to pronounce the letter *-é*, producing an anterior vowel, and the letters *-ou*, producing a posterior vowel. Notice the placement of your tongue in your mouth. While producing the sound *-é* first followed by the sound *-ou*, you should observe your tongue going from the front toward the back of your mouth.

Here is a list of the anterior vowels in French:

<b>Phonetic Symbol</b>	<b>English Pronunciation</b>	<b>Keyword</b>	<b>Other Grapheme (in red)</b>

[i]	[i] as in <u>feet</u>		<i>stylo</i> ("pen")
			<i>île</i> ("island")
			<i>maïs</i> ("corn")
[é]	[ay] as in <u>May</u>	<i>regarder</i> ("to look")	<i>parlez</i> ("talk")
			<i>piéd</i> ("feet")
			<i>messieurs</i> ("sir")
			<i>poignée</i> ("handful")
			( <i>volontiers</i> ("certainly"))
[è]	[eh] as in <u>paint</u>		<i>chienne</i> * ("female dog")
			<i>merci</i> ("thank you")
			<i>jouet</i> ("toy")
			<i>mais</i> ("but")
			<i>maître</i> ("master")
			<i>payer</i> ("to pay")
			<i>treize</i> ("thirteen")
			<i>être</i> ("to be")
			<i>Noël</i> ("Christmas")
			<i>volley</i> ("volleyball")
[a]	[a] as in <u>apple</u>	<i>sac</i> ("bag")	<i>à</i> ("at, to"), <i>femme</i> ("woman")

#### B. Voyelles centrales ("Central Vowels")

To properly pronounce this type of sound, place the tongue in the middle of your mouth.

Phonetic Symbol	English Pronunciation	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in red)
[u]	[u ] as in <u>pure</u>	<i>lune</i> ("moon")	<i>sûr</i> ("pen")
			<i>eu</i> ("had") ( <i>avoir</i> at the <i>passé composé</i> tense)
[e]	[uh] as in <u>duh</u>	<i>je</i> ("I")	-
[E]	[oe] as in <u>sun</u>	<i>feu</i> ("fire")	<i>noeud</i> ("knot")
			<i>jeûne</i> ("young")
[F]	[oeu] as in <u>flower</u>	<i>fleur</i> ("flower")	<i>coeur</i> ("heart")
			<i>club</i> ("club")

**C. Voyelles postérieures ("Back Vowels")**

To produce this type of sound, place your tongue in the back of your mouth.

Phonetic Symbol	English Pronunciation	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in red)
[U]	[ou] as in <u>tourist</u>	<i>poule</i> ("hen")	<i>où</i> ("where")
			<i>goûter</i> ("to taste")
			<i>football</i> ("football")
			<i>août</i> ("august")
[o]	[o] as in <u>orange</u>	<i>vélo</i> ("bike")	<i>landau</i> ("stroller")
			<i>bateau</i> ("boat")
			<i>drôle</i> ("funny")
[O]	[um] as in <u>drum</u>	<i>pomme</i> ("apple")	<i>album</i> ("album")
			<i>alcool</i> ("alcohol")
			<i>capharnaüm</i> ("shambles")
[A]	[a] as in <u>cat</u>	<i>pâte</i> ("pasta")	

**II. Voyelles nasales ("Nasal Vowels")**

As these sounds are specific to French, they are hard to reproduce in a written form. We produce them orally using the air passage through the nose and lowering the soft palate while the air goes through the mouth.

Phonetic Symbol	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in red)
[D]	<i>un</i>	<i>parfum</i>

	("a"/"an"/"on e")	("perfume")
[C]	<i>lapin</i> ("rabbit")	<i>chien</i> ("dog")
		<i>pain</i> ("bread")
		<i>peinture</i> ("paint")
		<i>daim</i> ("deer")
		<i>imparfait</i> ("imperfect")
		<i>syndicat</i> ("trade union")
		<i>sympa</i> ("kind")
[B]	<i>gant</i> ("glove")	<i>jambe</i> ("leg")
		<i>empereur</i> ("emperor")
		<i>Caen</i> (French city)
		<i>paon</i> ("peacock")
[I]	<i>ballon</i> ("ball")	<i>ombre</i> ("shadow")
		<i>punch</i> ("punch")

### Language Tip

To listen to these sounds or any others, go to the learning center and find a word with the grapheme that corresponds to the phonetic symbol you'd like to practice.

### III. *Semi-voyelles* ("Half Vowels")

Half-vowels are also called *semi-consonnes* ("half consonants"). They are specific to the French language only and are sounds between vowels and consonants. For example, the pronunciation of the letter -y in *yeux* ("eyes") is a *semi-voyelle*, as it would be pronounced as [zii-heo]. The same is true of the letters -oi pronounced in English [woa], as in *poisson* ("fish").

Phonetic Symbol	English Pronunciation	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in red)
[J]	[i-hae] as in <u>y</u> arn	<i>pi</i> ed ("foot")	<i>crayon</i> ("pencil")
			<i>soleil</i> ("sun")
			<i>paille</i> ("hay")
			<i>hyène</i> ("pen")
			<i>païen</i> ("pagan")
[V]	[hu-i] as in <u>qu</u> ick	<i>huit</i> ("eight")	<i>sueur</i> ("sweat")
			<i>suave</i> ("pen")
			<i>ennuyeux</i> ("boring")
[w]	[woa] as in <u>chihuhua</u>	<i>doigt</i> ("finger")	<i>ouate</i> ("pen")
			<i>wallon</i> ("pen")
			<i>équateur</i> ("equator")
			<i>moelle</i> ("pen")
			<i>poêle</i> ("pan")
			<i>croît</i> ("pen")

			<i>asseoir</i> ("sit")

## The Eighteen Consonant Sounds

They are divided as follows:

1. *Occlusives* ("blocked consonants")
2. *Fricative* ("sibilant")
3. *Vibrante* ("vibrant")

### I. *Occlusives* ("Blocked Consonants")

We produce this consonant sound by blocking the air though the mouth and pharynx, followed by a sudden release. These sounds are much easier to reproduce as they are very similar to the English consonants.

Phonetic Symbol	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in red)
[p]	<i>pile</i> ("battery")	<i>appartement</i> ("apartment")
[b]	<i>bol</i> ("bowl")	<i>abbaye</i> ("abbey")
[m]	<i>mur</i> ("wall")	<i>flamme</i> ("flame")
[t]	<i>table</i> ("table")	<i>datte</i> ("date")
[d]	<i>dé</i> ("dice")	<i>addition</i> ("addition")



[n]	<i>noeud</i> ("knot")	<i>anniversaire</i> ("birthday")
[G]	<i>ligne</i> ("line")	<i>manière</i> ("way")
[k]	<i>cadeau</i> ("gift")	<i>qualité</i> ("quality")
		<i>kepi</i> ("cap")
		<i>accord</i> ("agreement")
		<i>orchestra</i> ("orchestra")
		<i>ticket</i> ("ticket")
		<i>coq</i> ("rooster")
[g]	<i>gâteau</i> ("cake")	<i>bague</i> ("ring")
		<i>aggraver</i> ("to aggravate")
		<i>second</i> ("second")
		<i>ghetto</i> ("ghetto")
[N]	<i>parking</i> ("parking lot")	

## II. Fricative ("Sibilant")

We produce these consonants by forcing air through a narrow channel made by placing two small parts of the mouth (teeth, tongue, glottis, etc.) close together.

Phonetic Symbol	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in red)
[f]	<i>flûte</i> ("flute")	<i>phare</i> ("headlight")
		<i>affaire</i> ("matter")

[v]	<i>valise</i> ("suitcase")	<i>wagon</i> ("wagon")
[s]	<i>soleil</i> ("sun")	<i>poisson</i> ("fish")
		<i>citron</i> ("lemon")
		<i>garçon</i> ("boy")
		<i>démocratie</i> ("democracy")
		<i>science</i> ("science")
		<i>asthma</i> ("asthma")
		<i>six</i> ("six")
[z]	<i>maison</i> ("house")	<i>zoo</i> ("zoo")
		<i>deuxième</i> ("second")
		<i>blizzard</i> ("blizzard")
[H]	<i>chat</i> ("cat")	<i>short</i> ("short")
		<i>schéma</i> ("diagram")
		<i>fasciste</i> ("fascist")
[j]	<i>jupe</i> ("skirt")	<i>girafe</i> ("giraffe")

### III. Vibrante ("Vibrant")

We produce this consonant by one of various vibrations caused by pressured air created by one mouth organ (the tip of the tongue, uvula, etc.) that we suddenly release.



Phonetic Symbol	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in red)
[l]	<i>lampe</i> ("lamp")	<i>elle</i> ("she")
[R]	<i>roue</i> ("wheel")	<i>beurre</i> ("butter")

### Pronunciation Tip

---

To pronounce the letter *-r* in French, reproduce the sound of an angry growling dog. Harden the rolling *-gr* sound (as in the word "growling") and produce it repeatedly on the back of your mouth near the top of your throat, and you should be set to reproduce a nice French sound!



## All About S1

### Top 5 Most Common Phrases

5

Grammar Points

2

---

## Grammar Points

---

### **The Focus of This Lesson Is the Five Most Common French Phrases**

---

To survive in a foreign place where people speak a language other than yours, you'll need to know the emergency phrases to function, satisfy your basic needs, or save your skin in emergency situations!

France is no different! When you attempt to speak French to natives in France and demonstrate that you are making an effort to adapt, you'll facilitate communication with the inhabitants of France.

Not only will using the five phrases in this lesson and following our tips help you break the ice, but it will also allow you to *commencer du bon pied* ("start on the right foot") and establish a friendly and respectful exchange!

#### **Phrase One: *Ça va? Ça va.* ("How are you? I'm fine.")**

---

After greeting and saying hello to someone, you will need to ask how she or he is. It's a matter of politeness.

#### **The Question and Statement With *ça* and *va*:**

While in France you'll often hear these two sounds [sa-va], which are part of the phrase *Ça va ?*, meaning "How are you?"

Be aware though, these two tiny words can be either a question or a statement.

To differentiate between the two, you need to listen to the speaker's intonation. When the intonation rises, it will be a question: *Ça va ?* ("How are you?") When the intonation is slightly falling or constant, it will be a statement: *ça va* ("I'm fine.").

We only use *ça va?* and *ça va.* in familiar or informal settings. For example, you could say it when speaking to your French colleague you've spent time with outside of work that you've become comfortable with or simply with longtime friends.

### Language Expansion

#### Alternative Questions for *Ça va ?* ("How are you?")

Standard French:

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Comment ça va ?</i>	[ko-man-sa-va]	"How are you?"
<i>Ça va comment ?</i>	[sa-va-ko-man]	"How are you?"

#### Alternative Answers for *Ça va.* "I'm fine."

Standard French:

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Ça va bien.</i>	[sa-va-bihan]	"I'm fine."
<i>Ça va très bien.</i>	[sa-va-tray-bihan]	"I'm very well."
<i>Ça va mal.</i>	[sa-va-mal]	"I'm not good."

#### Phrase Two: *S'il vous plaît.* ("Please.")

This phrase is a must for anyone who has *de la galanterie* ("some courtesy").

The original meaning of *S'il vous plaît* was not only to be polite but also to ask whomever you are speaking to whether he or she would be pleased to do a favor for you, such as answering a question or passing the salt at the table.

### Formal "please": *S'il vous plaît*

You've guessed it: we use *s'il vous plaît* [see-voo-play] in French in formal situations or with people you are addressing using *vous* (the formal "you"). It simply means "please" in English.

### Informal "please": *S'il te plaît*

If you'd like to say "please" with close friends, colleagues, in a relaxed context, or in short with people you talk to by using the informal personal pronoun *tu*, use *s'il te plaît* [seel-tuh-play].

## Language Expansion

Often after you use *s'il te plaît* or *s'il vous plaît* comes the time to thank the person who helped you. To do so, just say "thank you" with the word *merci* [mer-si].

Even better, show your appreciation and break the old routine by using an alternative *merci* by saying:

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Merci beaucoup.</i>	[mer-see-bo-cu]	"Thank you very much/so much."
<i>Merci mille fois.</i>	[mer-see-mil-fuwa]	"Thank you a thousand times."

### Phrase Three: *Excusez-moi* ("Excuse Me")

Nobody is perfect. Are you? If not, you probably hope to be. As many of us aren't, we do make mistakes from time to time. Doing so often requires us to apologize or express that we are sorry.



**Formal "Excuse me": *Excusez-moi***

To express these feelings in formal situations or with higher-ranked colleagues, use the short phrase *excusez-moi*, pronounced [ex-scyuuz-eh mwah], meaning "excuse me," "I'm sorry," or simply "sorry."

**Informal "Excuse me": *Excuse-moi***

If you are among people in a relaxed atmosphere or an informal context, use *excuse-moi* [ex-scyuuz mwah] ("excuse me").

**Phrase Four: *Aidez-moi* ("Help Me")**


---

You never know what will happen from one day to the next. Some days are predictable, and others may require fast action on your part to solve an emergency. In that case, you may need to ask for help.

To get assistance, just say *Aidez-moi!* [ay-day mwah], meaning "help me." If you are not in such a hurry or an urgent situation and just would like to ask a stranger for help to find your way, for example, add the expression we saw earlier *s'il vous plaît* ("please") and end up with the polite and formal phrase *Aidez-moi, s'il vous plaît* ("Help me, please.").

**Language Expansion**


---

If you are in an urgent situation and want to catch the attention of people around you, say first *Aidez-moi !* ("Help me!"), then express your need for a doctor by adding after *Aidez-moi !* the phrase *J'ai besoin d' un docteur*. You'll have the phrase *Aidez-moi ! J'ai besoin d'un docteur* [ay-day mwah jeh boe-zuhin doen doc-tour] ("Help me! I need a doctor.").



**Phrase Five: *Je ne sais pas.* ("I don't know")**

---

While walking in a French city, park, or castle, someone might ask you one of the following questions: "Where are the restrooms?" or "Where is the entrance?" More likely than not, since you are also unfamiliar with the place you are visiting, you won't have the answer.

A useful way to respond in French when you don't know something is to say *Je ne sais pas* [juh nuh sy pa] ("I don't know.").

**Language Expansion**

---

To give an explanation and offer a reason for the cause of your ignorance, you can always say *Je ne parle pas bien le français* [juh nuh parl pa bi-han luh fran-say], meaning "I don't speak French well."



## All About S1

### Top 5 Things About France You Have To Know

6

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is a Quiz on the Five Things You Need to Know About France**

---

What do you know about France?

Test your knowledge! Through this mini-test, you will build your basic knowledge of France by quizzing yourself on five areas about France:

1. Geography
2. Pop culture
3. Travel
4. Economics
5. Facts about strikes

### 1. French Geography Question

---

France's most common nickname is *l'hexagone*, which refers to its geographical shape. People also refer to France as *metropolitain* France (implying that its overseas territories are not included in the context of the phrase). France has many regions divided in *départements* with a large variety of landscapes.

**How many regions and regional parks are there in France?**

A: Thirty-four regions and nineteen regional parks

B: Forty-five regions and twenty-six regional parks

C: Twenty-six regions and forty-five regional parks

### France's Regions

---

France has twenty-six regions. Twenty-one of them are located in the continental part of metropolitan France. The other five are located overseas: one, *Corse*, on the island of Corsica, and four other regions and territories spread through almost all the other continents.

The twenty-six regions are divided into one hundred *départements*, and each is numbered. The French use these numbers for postal codes and vehicle number plates. A well-known French car ride game while traveling to a vacation destination is to guess from the car plates their provenance!

### France's Parks

---

France possesses forty-five natural parks (with one located in *Guyane* and another in *Martinique*) and seven national parks. The regional parks represent:

- Twelve percent of the French territory, providing the landscape diversity encountered in France and its overseas territories
- 3,690 communes
- More than seven million hectares
- More than three million inhabitants

## 2. French Pop Culture Question

---

France, and especially Paris, is a center for culture and entertainment, such as fashion and music. One characteristic of new pop music trends is *le tube de l'été* ("a summer hit"). *Le tube de l'été* is a featured song played in the summer during the vacation period.

Below you'll see three major players in French culture and the French entertainment industry. One is a famous singer, the next an actor, and finally a sports star.

**Try to match the name with the person.**

A: Benjamin Siksou    1: Sport star

B: Gad Elmaleh        2: Singer

C: Laure Manaudou    3: Actor

4

Laure Manaudou is a French swimming star. She broke world records for the four hundred meter freestyle (short course). She also won the gold medal in the women's four hundred meter freestyle at the 2004 Athens Olympics. It was France's first gold medal ever in women's swimming, and the first swimming gold medal a French athlete had won since 1952. In the 2008 Summer Olympics, Manaudou was unable to recapture her form from the previous Olympics and didn't win the gold medals she aimed for.

Benjamin Siksou became popular during the television show "Star Academy" in 2008, where he proved his singing talent in blues-folk style with a jazz-soul influence. He plays the guitar and has also appeared in a few movies, including *Largo Winch* (2007), *Largo Winch 2* (2009), and *15 et demi* ("15 and a half years old").

Gad Elmaleh is a Moroccan-French comedian and actor. His first movie was *Salut cousin !* by Merzak Allouache. He later appeared in *L'homme est une femme comme les autres* and *Train de Vie*. He became popular after the success of his second one-man comedy routine, *La Vie Normale*, and the film *La Vérité si je mens ! 2* (2000).

### 3. French Travel Question

---

France receives as many tourists on its territory than its own population! More than two-thirds of the French people go on vacation at least once a year. With these facts, it's no wonder France is a popular destination!

**What is the most popular destination in France?**

A: *Le Var*, located in the southeast of France

B: *L'Auvergne*, the region of old volcanoes, is located in the middle of France.

C: *Le Nord-Pas-de-Calais*, with its flat landscape, is located in northern France.

*Le Var* is a region and a popular destination for its climate and Mediterranean landscape. It is the region of the sun and vacations, and it is a place where many French people camp or acquire their second residence for the summer vacation. Even *Sempé*, a humoristic French cartoonist, makes fun of it. The *Le Var* region's specialty is *le rosé de provence*, a chilled rosé wine enjoyed before lunch or dinner on a sunny patio.

**4. French Economy Question**

---

The French economy is well-known for its rank in the world. In 2008, France was the fifth world power economically after the United States, Japan, China, and Germany. It takes the fifth worldwide position for its exportation and the sixth place for its importation.

**What are the most important economic sectors in France?**

A: Service sector

B: Primary sector (agriculture)

C: Secondary sector (industry)

The active French population is mainly employed in the service sector, with a rate of seventy-two percent. Industry takes second place with twenty-four percent, and the agricultural sector is the least popular with only four percent in 1999, according to *l'INSEE*, the French national statistical institution.

As France is the most-visited country in the world with over seventy-five million visitors a year, tourism is a significant contributor to the French economy.

### 5. French Society Question

---

It's commonly said that France and the French people are always on strike!

**Are French people always on strike, and is striking a French characteristic?**

A: Yes

B: No

C: I'm not sure

Well, yes they are! But not as much as we think.

When classifying countries by the number of working days lost due to strikes from 1993 to 2002, we can see that France is in the middle of the class, with countries such as Australia, Ireland, and Norway. Spain, Canada, and Iceland are the countries with the highest rate of lost work days. (Source: ONS).

Over the years, French people have been striking less and less. The number of non-working days has

significantly decreased over the years. This is because French people who work in the private sector are rarely on strike.







All About S1  
Top 5 French Foods

7

Grammar Points	2
----------------	---

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Top Five French Foods.**

---

French gastronomy is renowned all over the planet. Eating in France is an *art de vivre*.

Given how tough it was to pick only the five top French foods, we chose to extend our list to six must-try French dishes.

### French Cuisine Basics

French people pride themselves for their variety of foods available often only in France, such as certain cheeses. Most people are already familiar with bleu cheese, rare steak, wine, and champagne. But there is much more to French cuisine.

French people like their meals made with fresh, high-quality ingredients. Fine flavors and their combinations are the basics of any French meal.

Here are the three main categories of dishes you will encounter when traveling to France:

### **Regional Dishes**

---

They are plentiful, various, and numerous, as regional dishes outnumber the regions of France themselves. Often one or two specialties characterize each French region.

They are always comforting, appetizing, and rarely made to meet the strict requirements of a tight diet. If you're in a restaurant, always ask for the regional dish and make sure to ask what it is made of so you are not disappointed.

#### **Pistou, a Southern Provençal Dish**

This pasta soup contains various vegetables, such as green beans, white beans, red beans, potatoes, leeks, tomatoes, celery, and zucchini. Add a little basil, garlic, parmesan, gruyere, and olive oil, and you're all set!

#### **Andouille de Vire and Potatoes**

*Andouille* ("pork sausage") from Normandy is smoked with oak or beech and served with potatoes. It is processed according to strict rules of manufacturing to maintain its original flavor.

### **Popular Dishes**

---

Popular dishes are those you'll usually find in every restaurant. They were once regional dishes and spread over time all over the country.

Nowadays, kids' favorite main course is often a steak topped with pepper gravy and French fries, which is often offered on the kids' menu in restaurants.

### *Les bouchées a la reine*

They are small flaky pastries filled with a mixture of bone marrow, poultry, and mushrooms in a creamy, white gravy with white wine. It is a classic!

### *La blanquette de veau*

Veal is popular for its fine flavor and tender texture. *La blanquette* is a stew with white sauce. We can also prepare other meats *en blanquette*. *La blanquette de veau* is cooked in vegetable stock made of aromatic herbs and vegetables. The French then use the vegetables as a side dish. The cook then thickens the liquid stock with flour, butter, cream and sometimes egg yolks. The French commonly serve mushrooms, rice, pasta, or potatoes with this hot dish.

### **Seasonal Dishes**

---

Seasonal dishes are countless.

### *Foie gras*

*Foie gras* is a delicacy that people enjoy at the end-of-the-year festivities. You can spread this duck or goose liver fine mousse on a piece of toast with beef jelly made of *madère* wine.

### **Beignet**

*Beignet*, or "doughnuts" in English, are traditionally served in February for Carnival. They are deep-fried dough that come either plain or stuffed with marmalade or apple sauce. The French also serve other versions as appetizers with fillings, such as zucchini and shrimp.

### **Table Etiquette**

---

*Bon appétit* is a phrase you should always use before starting your meal when sitting at the French table.

Here are some tips to help you in your quest to adapt to French culture and habits:

1. Keep your hands on the table and your wrists at the edge of the table.
2. Tear bread in pieces before eating it.
3. Ask for water. The French do not serve it automatically. Be aware that ice is always served sparingly.
4. For the cheese platter, make sure to mimic the previous guest's cut. Cutting cheeses in an improper way is usually not appreciated.
5. Almost no one has coffee with dessert. Request it usually after you've eaten the complete meal.

### **Top Five Foods for the Brave**

And our top five foods for the brave are....

Number five...steak tartare

Number four...veal's head

Number three...*boudin*

Number two...snails

Number one...frog's legs



## All About S1

### Top 5 Things You Need To Know About French Society

8

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Top Five Things You Need To Know About French Society.**

### **1. The Major City and Its Unique Identity**

---

**Paris: *La Ville-Lumière* ("The City of Lights")**

#### General Facts

Paris, the world-famous capital of France, has many nicknames. One of them is *La Ville-Lumière* or "City of Lights," which refers to the eighteenth century's Enlightenment in France.

Another nickname is *Paname* and is slang. It comes from the Panama hat, which was very fashionable in Paris in the early twentieth century. Today, people still call Paris *Paname*.

The city of Paris (intra-muros) counts 2,167,994 inhabitants. The *metropolitain* area (intra-muros and surroundings) has twelve million inhabitants and is one of the most populated metropolitan areas in



Europe.

Today, the Parisian urban area is Europe's biggest city economy, and it ranks fifth in the world's list of cities.

### The Unique City of Paris

---

Paris is a city that has a unique identity. Here is why.

Each major French city has its buzzing downtown area with shopping areas and restaurants in the old part of the city.

3 Although Paris follows this general rule, it also has an additional *je ne sais quoi* that you won't find in other French cities. First, Paris is laid out like an agglomeration of small villages. The capital is divided in twenty *arrondissements* or "districts," and each has its own local celebrations, its own bistros and cafés, as well as its own city hall. Walking from one neighborhood to another can feel like crossing borders between Morocco and India (assuming these two countries actually had borders!!).

Paris's rich history of artistic, intellectual, and political movements is still lively today. An illustration of this past and present artistic and political productivity is, among others, the Montparnasse neighborhood from the 1950s to the late 1960s. Located on the left bank of the river Seine, Montparnasse was the place where numerous artists, moviemakers, and intellectuals coming from all over Europe gathered during that time. French people tend to romanticize these times and dream about the idea of Jean-Paul Sartre drinking coffee with Simone de Beauvoir while discussing political affairs and working on their next book. But...these times are over (and the rents are too high for artists!). The cultural and artistic core of the city moved (and is probably still moving as we speak) to the right bank of the river, in *Marais* and *Châtelet*.

Sometimes, Paris's radiance leads Parisians to set themselves apart from the rest of France. This is also

due to a long history of Paris being the political, cultural, and commercial core of the country. Decentralization (public funds and political responsibilities given to the regions as opposed to the capital only) only started in the early twentieth century.

## 2. Family Life

---

The number two thing you should know about French society is that French people value their personal lives, and for them, doing nothing isn't a cause of guilt.

French families value their time together, sometimes prioritizing it over their work. This time shared with families or friends translates into a habit of using long meals as a time to socialize. A French family has at least two sit-down meals a day, most often in the morning and in the evening.

4

French people value their personal lives in different ways too; French families usually take time off twice a year to go on vacation together. This is possible because kids have two weeks of vacation every six weeks. Active adults get usually five weeks of vacation time. They spend plenty of time on leisure.

French people don't often mix work life and family life. There is a distinct separation between the two. A co-worker can become a person's friend when the person invites him or her to do so. But co-workers rarely spend personal time together. However, work habits tend to change with the new generation, and people hang out outside of work more.

## 3. Work Culture

France's economy is ranked fifth in the world and is strong in the industrial sectors. France's leading industries are telecommunications (including communication satellites), aerospace and defense, shipbuilding (naval and specialist ships), pharmaceuticals, construction and civil engineering, chemicals, and automobile production.

Some well-known companies in France are:

- France Telecom for communications
- Total for the oil industry
- Airbus for aeronautics
- PSA Peugeot Citroen for the car industry

Remember, we mentioned that Paris is the center of all matters in France? Well, this was one aspect of centralism.

Work culture in France is also based on centralism. In this case, it translates to most companies having their decisions made by a few or by just one person. Hierarchy is very strong and respect is due to the head of the company. But that's without taking into account the French revolutionary spirit. (Who never experienced a strike while visiting France?) Fighting for your rights is essential in France.

France's work culture is also based on individualism. In fact, French people have a very hard time with teamwork and are not very efficient with meetings (meetings can last three hours when it comes time to make a group decision about which coffee brand should be in the vending machine...). It is probably due to the French desire to be unique and not to be assimilated into a group.

#### **4. Political System**

---

France has a democratic political system where the President is the head of the State and the Prime Minister is the head of the government. People vote for the President in a universal suffrage election. Today's French political system is fairly recent in origin: the Fifth Republic was introduced in 1958 and provides substantial power to the President.

The political scene is mainly represented by two parties:

1. The UMP, *Union pour un Mouvement Populaire* ("Union for a Popular Movement"), which represents the right wing
2. The PS, *Parti Socialiste* ("Socialist Party"), which represents the left wing

The left wing is known to be more attached to what is called the French *modèle social* ("Social Model") than the right wing. The Social Model includes free or affordable *services publics* ("public services"), including health care, education, high compensation for unemployed people, and minimum income for all.

## 5. The French "Acquired Benefits"...

---

French people are attached to these "acquired benefits." What are those?

They are social benefits (a set retirement age and a set retirement public fund, universal health care, high quality public education for all, and other benefits if you work for the government) that have always (at least that's how French people feel) been offered to citizens. Ever since the end of WWII, presidents who tried to reform this strong system of benefits have been confronted with countrywide

demonstrations. Powerful French unions have prevented every government from freely reforming this system. This is the French way to prevent the government from abusing its citizens.

However, with the French society changing and its economy weakened, times are changing. Nicolas Sarkozy (elected in 2007) is the first President who has tried to reform these social systems. The idea is to save money by decreasing the public expenses. French people have been reacting promptly by demonstrating and marching in the streets.



## All About S1

### Top 5 Important Dates During the Calendar Year

9

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Top Five Important Dates During the Calendar Year.**

---

France has eleven *jours fériés* or "holidays." On those days, schools, government institutions, banks, and most companies are officially closed, and most employees get the day off. Here are the French holidays:

1. January 1: *Le Nouvel An* ("New Year's Day")
2. April: *Pâques* ("Easter")
3. May 1: *La Fête du Travail* ("Labor Day")
4. May: *Jeudi de l'Ascension* ("Ascension Day"), forty days after Easter
5. May 8: *Le 8 mai*, the celebration of the World War II victory in 1945
6. May/June: *Lundi de Pentecôte* ("Pentecost"), fifty days after Easter - It is also the day to celebrate solidarity with the elderly.
7. July 14: *Le 14 juillet* (national holiday celebrating the French Revolution of 1789)
8. August 15: *L'Assomption* ("Assumption"), celebrates the Virgin Mary
9. November 1: *La Toussaint*, (All Saints' Day"), is a time when the French commemorate and remember the deceased
10. November 11: *Le 11 novembre* (celebrates the World War I armistice in 1918)
11. December 25: *Noël* ("Christmas")

Now here are the most popular celebrations in France:

### 1. The fifth most important day in France is Christmas.

---

France, although a secular country, is traditionally Catholic. Christmas is celebrated by a majority of people. December 25 is called *Le jour de Noël* ("Christmas Day"). It celebrates the birth of Jesus

Christ, who is also known as Jesus de Nazareth. The twenty-fifth day of December was chosen as a substitute for the pagan festivities celebrating the Sun and the increasing days.

The French celebrate Christmas in many ways. First, most French families will symbolize the birth of Jesus by building the nativity scene usually under or near the Christmas tree. Each character is traditionally made of clay, and they are called *les santons de Provence*.

Families begin to celebrate this holiday on December 24. This ritual takes place in the evening with a meal prepared for the occasion where the French serve *foie gras*, seafood, and a *bûche de Noël* (iced cake in the shape of a log). The evening meal is then followed by the popular *messe de minuit* ("the midnight mass").

On December 25, French families gather again for Christmas Day and serve another elaborate Christmas meal for lunch. Many families open their gifts on Christmas Eve, the evening of December 24, to avoid the impatience of the youngest ones.

## 2. The fourth most important day in France is New Year's Eve.

---

3 This day takes place on December 31 and is one of the most apparent holidays in the public eye as restaurants offer a multitude of various meals and entertainment for the occasion. It's a time of renewal and hope to start the new year. It is called either *Le Réveillon du Nouvel An* or *Le Réveillon de la Saint-Sylvestre*.

Nowadays, the tradition is to gather with friends for a festive dinner. The French always serve Champagne along with *foie gras*. The French spend the night in cocktail gowns and suits either at a friend's house or in a restaurant with an orchestra or band playing to encourage guests to dance. The meal is often served with a three- or four-course dinner with plenty of wine. Champagne is traditionally served after the stroke of midnight. At this moment, couples and friends wish "Happy New Year" (*Bonne Année !*) to each other while giving their best wishes for the new year. In Paris, people gather on the *avenue des Champs-Élysées* with Champagne in hand...this is quite a moving moment as people talk to each other, which they never do otherwise.



Another tradition for New Year's Eve is to give *les étrennes*: kids receive small presents and employees get bonuses.

At eight o'clock in the evening on January 1, the French President sends his *vœux présidentiels* or "presidential vows" to the French people from the *palais de l'Élysée*, his official residence.

### 3. The third most important day in France is Mother's day.

---

Even though Mother's Day isn't a non-working day, it has become a highly celebrated day in French families. *La Fête des Mères* ("Mother's Day") is celebrated on the last Sunday of May in France.

The Greeks originated this holiday by celebrating the goddess Rhea, the mother of all gods, each spring. In ancient Rome in the fifth century before Christ, the pagan custom was to celebrate Matralia, the festivity honoring women and mothers.

In 1886, Napoleon made Mother's Day an official French holiday. However, this celebration did not become popular until after World War II in 1945, when the French observed the flow of messages American soldiers sent to their mothers. At that time, Mother's Day was already established as a holiday in the United States.

Before *la Fête des Mères*, children usually prepare a gift in school to give to their moms, such as a card, a poem, a bean necklace, and the like.

Another traditional gift is flowers. The idea is also to relieve the mother from her usual chores. To do so, children prepare lunch under the dad's supervision or, more frequently, the family goes out for a dinner.

### 4. The second most important day in France is Music Day.

---

Also called *la Fête de la Musique*, this day is a music festival organized all over the streets of France

on June 21. Musician Joel Cohen, who worked in 1976 at *France Musique*, a public French radio station, originated this holiday. He suggested a music celebration every year for the summer solstice. The idea grew and the French Minister of Culture, Jack Lang, adopted it as a holiday in 1981, and the first celebration took place a year later.

Many look forward to this day, since any amateur or professional music performer can show his or her talent in the streets of all cities and villages in France. The goal of this day is to promote music. Free concerts take place everywhere, whether they are randomly improvised by high school students or more officially organized by cities.

On that day, you cannot avoid hearing music. Businesses such as restaurants and bars offer free concerts in their establishments. Cities plan concerts all day long and offer their equipment, making sure to include all types of music. You may also find individuals or amateur bands on street corners or squares. Music Day is one the most friendly celebrations in France. Many other countries have adopted it over the years.

## 5. The most important day in France is July 14.

---

This day is the French national holiday. It represents *la Fête de la Fédération*, the federation party that was held on the first anniversary of the seizure of the Bastille during the French Revolution.

Before the French Revolution, France was divided into three estates: the clergy, the nobility, and the common people. Each estate could voice its collective opinion to the King running the nation. In 1789, a time of drastic political and social change, the deputies representing the common people separated from the church and the nobility to form a National Assembly. The monarchy obviously remained deaf to the people's claims. The unheard angry people of Paris marched to the Bastille, which was at that time a jail for political dissidents and a warehouse for weaponry, armed themselves, and released the prisoners. Later in 1880, the French chose that day as their national symbol of the republic, and the French have celebrated this holiday since then on July 14.

This day is, of course, a paid holiday. During this important day, the most representative event is the military parade in Paris on the Champs Élysées. After the military parade, another important ritual is

*L'Allocution Présidentielle du 14 Juillet*: the French president gives a speech on French television for the national holiday to express his political views on recent events. Afterward, politicians and official guests are invited to the *Garden Party de l'Élysée du 14 juillet*. The Elysee Palace is the official residence of the French president. In 2008, the July 14 Garden Party hosted the newly freed Franco-Colombian politician Ingrid Bétancourt. The last and probably most entertaining custom on the French national holiday is the fireworks. They are done in small cities on the evening of July 13, with bigger ones on the July 14.



## All About S1

### Top 5 Things to Know About Pop Culture in France

10

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

### Top Five Things to Know About Pop Culture in France

---

France has some trends that seem to not exist in other countries.

For example, you'll hear the hit song on almost all the French radio stations. Seasonal summer TV shows invite the star of the moment, who will sing the summer hit live.

Some game shows are very specific to France. For example, *La Carte au Trésor* ("The Treasure Map") is a gigantic treasure hunt all over France broadcast on TV. Also, *Fort Boyard* is a game show that takes place in a fortress on an island where participants are put to severe tests fighting fake gladiators and answering puzzles.

Obviously France can't avoid the influence of American culture, but French pop culture also maintains its French identity...

We collected five pop culture items that make French people proud (or not) of being French.

### Number Five Pop Culture Must-Know: Popular Sports Figures

---

Even though France doesn't dominate the Olympics, it doesn't mean some of our sport stars are behind the rest of the world!

French sports stars cannot be counted by the thousands, but they are extremely talented. Some popular

sports are:

### **Soccer**

Zinedine Zidane is surely one of the most talented soccer players in the world, and the French, even those who are not interested in sports, cherish him.

### **Tennis**

Amélie Mauresmo won two major tennis competitions, the Australian Open and Wimbledon, in 2006. She is known for her powerful one-handed backhand and her strong net play.

### **Skiing**

France has provided some world-famous skiers, such as Jean-Claude Killy, who was a triple champion in the 1960s, or most recently French alpine skier Julien Lizerou, who was World Champion of the 2001 Super-Giant Slalom and won silver medals in the Super Combined and the Slalom at the 2009 Alpine Skiing World Championships in Val d'Isère.

### **Sailing**

A few famous sailors are French. Michel Desjoyeaux is one of the world's most successful solo sailors, as he is the only person to win the Vendée Globe race twice, in 2000 and 2008. Isabelle Autissier was the first woman to complete a solo sail around the world in 1991.

With that short introduction to sports and sports stars in France, our number five pop culture sport icon in France is its representation with the color blue and the rooster. They are both symbols of French sports. They first appeared on the football shirt in 1909. Later, in 1920, the French Olympic delegation choose the rooster for its mascot as well.

## **Number Four Pop Culture Must-Know: Popular Music**

---

A few musical French styles dominate in France.

The most popular pop singers among teens and young adults are the winners of the *Nouvelle Star* (the French equivalent of *American Idol*).

France counts many pop singers whose music is usually text-oriented with few musical arrangements. Among them are Jean-Jacques Goldman (1990s), Pascal Obispo (2000 to today), and Carla Bruni...you've probably heard of her, but maybe not as a singer. She is known for her soft voice and her guitar. Recently, Emmanuelle Dumas arrived on the music scene as either a vibrant, rock 'n' roll or sexy, yet discreet young woman who changes according to the song's mood.

Another musical movement is the French music from the French Caribbean islands, and is called Zouk Music. Along with Yannick Noah (a former tennis player!) and the bands Kassav' and Soma, the Zouk music star today is Madhya Customs with his most famous single *Elles demandent*.

Musicals are also all the rage in France. For several years now their popularity has grown, first with *Notre Dame de Paris* then with *Le Petit Prince* adapted from the novel by Saint Exupery and also *Roméo et Juliette*, and now with *Mozart, L'Opréa Rock*.

### **Number Three Pop Culture Must-Know: Popular French Men and Women Abroad**

Apart from the past renowned artists, such as painter Claude Monet, the composer Claude Debussy, the scientists Pierre and Marie Curie, and designer Pierre Cardin, France still offers a few worldwide famous artists today. If you like clubbing, you've probably heard about the house DJ Laurent Garnier, or the author/composer/producer Bob Sinclar, who often performs as a DJ in New York and Tokyo. Finally, the electro band Daft Punk is infamous for its spectacular shows.

Another French international icon is Manu Tchao. This French singer has always been involved in politics. He was raised in both Spanish and French-Parisian culture, and he sings in French, Spanish, and English. He's loved for his activism and multicultural music.

Not only does France have music exports, but it also counts internationally renowned movie stars. After Sophie Marceau's international performances in the James Bond movie *The World Is not Enough* and in *Braveheart*, other actresses followed in her footsteps and marched to Hollywood. They include Audrey Tautou in *Le Fabuleux Destin d'Amélie Poulain* (also known as *Amélie*) and Marion Cotillard in *La Vie en Rose*.

French culture is alive and radiates abroad!

## Number Two Pop Culture Must-Know: France's Movie Industry

---

Again and again, the French media and movie theaters are filled with foreign movies, especially American ones.

However, over the last few decades, French cinema has become successful (within France's borders at least!). Producers, distributors, moviemakers, actors, and, most importantly...the audience all are keeping up with the national and international movie market.

How is that possible? France is such a small country!

Well, French cinema, ever since *La Nouvelle Vague* ("The New Wave") in the 1960s, has tried to maintain the idea that making movies is an art. The idea that the same person should write, direct, and edit a movie [called *auteur* ("author")] is very important to French people. In France, you ask who MADE a movie before you ask who IS IN the movie.

5

French people are usually reluctant to consider films as part of an industry. The French *exception culturelle* is a good example of the French perspective on the movie industry: what *exception culturelle* basically means is that public funds are very much involved in the movie making and production process. To give you an example, the money made on movie ticket sales is partly given to public institutions. Those institutions (such as the CNC, which stands for *Centre National de la Cinématographie* ("National Center of Cinematography")) are then able, along with government grants, to fund unknown moviemakers, to help small producers, and to boost the alternative movie scene. This way, small movie productions can compete with mainstream productions.

Public funds are considered essential to ensure that films remain independent from the demands of the market.

## Number One Pop Culture Must-Know: Popular Television in France

---



France, like many other countries, is not an exception regarding the influx of many successful American TV series. Some American series dubbed in French that teens and young adults regularly follow are *Desperate Housewives*, *Dexter*, and *Grey's Anatomy*. But France also has its very own (and oh so French!) TV productions...let's take a look at some of them...

One of the recent successful French TV shows is *Plus Belle la Vie* ("More Beautiful Life"). It is playing every weekday in prime time and is watched by 5.3 million people. Four seasons and a thousand episodes after it started in 2004, it is still very popular. It portrays the life of people living in a working-class neighborhood (*le quartier du Panier*) in the southern French city Marseille.

Another French show is *La Vie est à Nous* ("Life Is Ours"). It portrays the life of five roommates in their thirties who live in a small pavilion somewhere in the suburbs of a city in France. It intends to depict real issues encountered by this generation: looking for a job, homosexuality, and getting married (or choosing not to get married?). Watching these shows can be very linguistically and culturally enriching.



## All About S1

### Top Tools to Learn French

11

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

### **The Focus of This Lesson Is the Top Five Useful Tools for Learning French**

---

Learning a language requires commitment, a little time, and the right tools. In this presentation, we'll try to help you get the right tools to learn French. We picked five of them:

#### **The top five tools for learning French are:**

- Tool 1: Manuals and reference books
- Tool 2: Online dictionaries
- Tool 3: Spelling and grammar checkers
- Tool 4: Songs and lyrics
- Tool 5: A pronunciation tool

#### **Tool One: Resource Books**

---

When exposed to French, you surely will encounter minor or major understanding issues when reading or listening, or you might run into problems when you try to write and speak the language.

To overcome or resolve the issues while listening or writing, you'll find that resource books are excellent tools. There are many resources that address the needs of all levels. We recommend three French publishers who offer resource books for those learning French as a second language. They are:

- CLE International ([www.cle-inter.com/home.html](http://www.cle-inter.com/home.html), written in French),

Didier ([www.didierfle.com](http://www.didierfle.com), written in French) and  
 - Hachette Français Langue Étrangère ([www.fle.hachette-livre.fr/](http://www.fle.hachette-livre.fr/) and click on the English link)

Depending on your needs and level, you can find the right tool adapted to your needs.

To do so, find your level from A1 to C2 on the "Common European Framework of Reference," a document that outlines levels, tools, and progression standards in language learning. Here is an excerpt:

Proficient	C2	Can understand with ease virtually everything heard or read. Can summarize information from different spoken and written sources, reconstructing arguments and accounts in a coherent presentation. Can express himself/herself spontaneously, very fluently, and precisely, differentiating finer shades of meaning even in more complex situations.
User	C1	Can understand a wide range of demanding, longer texts and recognize implicit meaning. Can express himself/herself fluently and spontaneously without much obvious searching for expressions. Can use language flexibly and effectively for social, academic, and professional purposes. Can produce clear, well-structured, detailed text on complex subjects, showing controlled use of organizational patterns, connectors, and cohesive devices.
Independent	B2	Can understand the main ideas of complex text on both concrete and abstract topics, including technical discussions in his/her field of specialization. Can interact with a degree of fluency and spontaneity that makes regular interaction with native speakers quite possible without strain for either party. Can produce clear, detailed text on a wide range of subjects and explain a viewpoint on a topical issue giving the advantages and disadvantages of various options.
User	B1	Can understand the main points of clear

		standard input on familiar matters regularly encountered in work, school, leisure, etc. Can deal with most situations likely to arise whilst traveling in an area where the language is spoken. Can produce simple connected text on topics that are familiar or of personal interest. Can describe experiences and events, dreams, hopes, and ambitions and briefly give reasons and explanations for opinions and plans.
Basic	A2	Can understand sentences and frequently used expressions related to areas of most immediate relevance (e.g., very basic personal and family information, shopping, local geography, employment). Can communicate in simple and routine tasks requiring a simple and direct exchange of information on familiar and routine matters. Can describe in simple terms aspects of his/her background, immediate environment, and matters in areas of immediate need.
User	A1	Can understand and use familiar everyday expressions and very basic phrases aimed at the satisfaction of needs of a concrete type. Can introduce him/herself and others and can ask and answer questions about personal details such as where he/she lives, people he/she knows and things he/she has. Can interact in a simple way provided the other person talks slowly and clearly and is prepared to help.

### Tool Two: Online Dictionaries

Now that you have an idea of your level with the "Common European Framework of Reference" and are stumbling upon words, citations, or expressions you have no clue about, use a dictionary.

Dictionaries are great for checking spelling and gender, and they obviously will help you determine the mysterious meaning of French words...

Many dictionaries are available online. Some are better suited for beginners and others for more advanced ones:

For newbie to advanced learners, we recommend Wordreference.com.

Wordreference.com provides many languages in addition to French as well as translations from English to French and vice versa. This web site also has a French verb conjugator. The best part is the forum. There, you can ask questions about how to translate specific words, phrases, or expressions in different contexts. People are friendly and very helpful.

For intermediate learners to advanced, we recommend Lexilogos.com

Using a French dictionary helps you think as much as possible in French. Lexilogos.com gives you a wealth of resources and choices between various French dictionaries and other spelling and conjugation resources. If you are searching for a definition, you can click on different buttons redirecting you to different dictionaries. Some are more elaborate than others. Try them all or just a few to choose the best one for you.

### **Tool Three: Spelling and Grammar Checker *Le bon Patron***

When producing French either orally or in writing, use a spell check and a grammar check to check for any errors.

The tool you'll find at <http://bonpatron.com/> is convenient to invite and motivate you in doing research about your mistakes in French. Once you have typed in your text and verified it with the button *Vérifier le texte*, notes will appear in French on suggested corrections. If you are a beginner and unfamiliar with the term used, refer to a grammar resource book. If you are a more advanced French learner, you can research more in depth about the cause of your errors so you will have a better understanding of them.



The inconvenience is that the text you can verify is limited to three thousand characters, or about five hundred words. But let's be realistic, this is a great freebie with a word limit that's quite large! And if five hundred words is still not enough, you can always break down your text and perform several verifications.

The main point is that university researchers and professors created this program, making its use reliable and accurate. Note that the accuracy varies depending upon how you word your text and how precisely you express your ideas.

### **Tool Four: Folk Songs and Lyrics/Starting Point + Setting Aside Thirty Minutes a Day to Practice**

---

You must practice to improve your French. A fun and common way to practice is to use songs. They provide pronunciation, listening, and reading drills all at once. The end result is fun - you get to sing karaoke style in French!

To be effective, your choice of songs is critical. You must find the right starting point to determine the right songs suited to your language level profile.

If you're a newbie or beginner, we recommend you start with French folk songs or ballads. Check Carla Bruni's repertoire or other French singers such as Jean-Jacques Goldman, Daniel Balavoine, Patricia Kaas (also singing in English and German), Vanessa Paradis, Batlik, Stephan Eicher (also singing in English and German), and more recently Bénabar, and many others. You can also purchase compilations of a variety of French songs of the preceding years, which will give you a clue on what the trends were during the past twelve months.

Listen first to a sample of the song for its rhythm and overall pronunciation. It will give you an idea about how challenging the song might be. If the song is too slow and with little variety in words and phrases, it may get boring. If it is too fast and pronounced unclearly, it may get too difficult.

Once you have chosen the right song, listen to its entire version while reading the lyrics. Then work on the comprehension and words themselves, and research the words as well as the expressions unknown to you with the dictionaries indicated in the second tool.

### Tool Five: Pronunciation Tool

---

Finally, while being exposed to new French words both written or oral, you might have a hard time learning how to pronounce them. Here is a great tool to improve your pronunciation skills:

Go to the free web site <http://www.research.att.com/~ttsweb/tts/demo.php>. Make sure to read the usage policy and just follow these three easy steps:

1. First choose either the masculine voice (Alain) or the feminine voice (Juliette) for French.
2. Then enter the word or phrase you want to learn how to pronounce in the box.
3. Finally click either on the button "speak" to hear the word or phrase or click on the "download" button to listen and save the audio file of the word or phrase you added in the text box.

All levels of foreign French speakers will find this program helpful and fun to use. The voices use a standard French accent, excluding any regional accents. This tool overall gives you a really decent pronunciation of French and will surely help you improve your pronunciation and be understood in France and other French-speaking countries!





## All About S1

### Top 5 Mistakes Not to Make When Speaking French

12

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

### **The Focus of This Lesson Is Top Five Mistakes Not to Make When Speaking**

---

Making mistakes when speaking French occurs quite often. No matter what your level is, it is hard to be able to think and speak at the same time. When you improve in French, you'll get rid of the most basic mistakes, but you will still make some. Making mistakes is part of the learning process.

So don't feel alone or embarrassed. Making errors is normal and helps you get better if you are motivated. Rather, try to be aware of the ones you make the most often and work on a couple of them. Trying to correct them all when speaking is impossible! So be sure to take it one step at a time.

#### **Mistake One: Gender Agreement**

---

Gender agreement errors are very common. The main reason for it is the lack of knowledge of or incorrect assumptions about the noun's gender.

To avoid this mistake, you can do two things.

1 - If your interlocutor and the situation allow it, consult a handy, pocket-size French dictionary that you can carry with you everywhere you go.

#### **Advance in Your French Learning Tip**

Buy several dictionaries and put one in your purse, in your car, on your bike, or in your favorite jacket. That way, you won't have to remember to take it with you, as it already is in one of your belongings.

2 - Follow the general rule on the feminine and masculine endings for nouns.

#### a) Masculine Suffixes

Masculine nouns end with the following suffixes: *-isme*, *-age*, *-ment*.

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>un téléchargement</i>	"a download"
<i>un changement</i>	"a change"
<i>un apprentissage</i>	"an apprenticeship"

Also, all words ending with a consonant are usually masculine.

#### Some Exceptions:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>l'optimisme</i>	"optimism"
<i>un million</i>	"a million"
<i>un camion</i>	"a truck"
<i>un avion</i>	"a plane"
<i>un lycée</i>	"a high school"
<i>un musée</i>	"a museum"
<i>un traité</i>	"a treaty"
<i>un comité</i>	"a committee"
<i>un incendie</i>	"a fire"

#### b) Feminine Suffixes

Feminine nouns end with the following suffixes: *-sse*, *-oire*, *-ion*, *-ée*, *-ique*, *-té*, *-ie*.

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>une manifestation</i>	"a manifestation"

<i>la liberté</i>	"freedom"
<i>une arrivée</i>	"an arrival"
<i>une sortie</i>	"an exit"
<i>une victoire</i>	"a victory"

**Some Exceptions:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>une jument</i>	"a mare"
<i>une image</i>	"an image"
<i>une plage</i>	"a beach"
<i>une cage</i>	"a cage"
<i>une page</i>	"a page"
<i>une nage</i>	"a swim"
<i>la rage</i>	"rabies"
<i>un pion</i>	"a pawn"

**Mistake Two: Use of *être* and *avoir***

The use of *être* and *avoir* is quite challenging while speaking or otherwise. First, the most frequent mistake is using the wrong verb in certain expressions, such as when giving your age or when talking about your hunger or thirst when socializing among French-speaking people.

The use of *être* and *avoir* can be confusing because of how we use their English counterparts.

For example, English speakers would say "I am sixty years old" using the verb "to be." In French, to give the same information, we use the verb *avoir*, meaning "to have," as in *J'ai 60 ans*.

The same is true to express hunger or thirst. We use the verb "to be" in English, such as in "I am hungry and thirsty." In French, we use *avoir* ("to have"), as in *J'ai faim et soif*.

**Mistake Three: Subject-Verb Agreement**

Conjugation is a part of the French language that can cause great difficulty. People often make mistakes when forming or conjugating the verb in a sentence.

These mistakes are often due to lack of attention or faulty grammar analysis; people often fail to know the proper conjugation or fail to conjugate the verb to the proper subject or number.

To remedy the first cause of the subject-verb agreement mistake, it is critical to look at the verb and search for its subject. Train yourself to do it while speaking. Such an exercise is demanding. The sad truth is, you will have to confront your conjugation charts at some point in your learning process...but trying to pay attention to the pronouns and their related verbs in your sentence will help you become more familiar with agreement.

Try to think of which personal pronoun is leading the verb:

Is it *je* ("I"), first singular person?

Or is it *il* ("he")/*elle* ("she")/*on* ("we"), informal - third singular person?

Or is it *ils/elles* ("they"), third plural person? etc.

Then try to think of which tense you should use. Each tense in French has its rule for agreement.

But again, the best way to finally master your conjugations is...a book of French conjugations!

Mastering conjugations in French is difficult to do since the conjugations are so varied. To make this task easier, first consult a book. Then use a French conjugator from the Internet.

We suggest this sequence because looking the conjugations up in a book instead of getting an automated response from a site is a little more labor intensive. It requires more critical thinking, and it is well-known that the more effort you produce to reach a certain result, the better you will memorize the conjugation.

#### **Mistake Four: Conditional Instead of Simple Future**

Another problem with verbs and their conjugations is choosing the correct tense. One common mistake is distinguishing whether a speaker is using *le futur de l'indicatif* ("simple future") or *le présent du conditionnel* ("conditional present").

These two tenses are very similar in their spelling and pronunciation but completely different in their meaning.

*Le futur de l'indicatif* and *le présent du conditionnel* both are constructed using the infinitive verb, making their distinction difficult. Their endings are also tricky, as they appear to be similar but are not identical.

When speaking, the only persons who are affected are the first, second and second person plural. Compare the slight differences between these two sets of verbs.

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Construction</b>
<i>nous parlerons</i>	"we will speak"	<i>futur de l'indicatif</i> ("simple future")
<i>nous parlerions</i>	"we would speak"	<i>le présent du conditionnel</i> ("conditional present")

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Construction</b>
<i>vous parlerez</i>	"you will speak"	<i>futur de l'indicatif</i> ("simple future")
<i>vous parleriez</i>	"you would speak"	<i>le présent du conditionnel</i> ("conditional present")

As you can observe, the only difference orally is the pronunciation of the letter *-i* at the conditional present. People often mistakenly omit this *-i* sound while speaking. To avoid such error, take into consideration what you are talking about. Make sure to pronounce the letter *-i* if you are speaking of an uncertain situation or probability.

For the other pronouns either at *futur de l'indicatif* ("simple future") or the *le présent du conditionnel*

("conditional present"), the pronunciation is either identical or completely different. For the first person singular, it is identical.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Construction</b>
<i>Je parlerai</i>	"I will speak"	<i>futur de l'indicatif</i> ("simple future")
<i>Je parlerais</i>	"I would speak"	<i>le présent du conditionnel</i> ("conditional present")

For the rest of the pronouns, it is completely different.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Construction</b>
<i>tu parleras</i>	"you will speak"	<i>futur de l'indicatif</i> ("simple future")
<i>tu parlerais</i>	"you would speak"	<i>le présent du conditionnel</i> ("conditional present")
<i>elle parlera</i>	"she will speak"	<i>futur de l'indicatif</i> ("simple future")
<i>elle parlerait</i>	"she would speak"	<i>le présent du conditionnel</i> ("conditional present")
<i>ils parleront</i>	"they will speak"	<i>futur de l'indicatif</i> ("simple future")
<i>ils parleraient</i>	"they would speak"	<i>le présent du conditionnel</i> ("conditional present")

The context of the speech will definitely help you figure out which tense the speaker is using. And if you still have a doubt, just ask. French people are happy to help and so proud of the tricks of their language!

**Mistake Five: *Imparfait vs. Passé composé***

This error is extremely common. In English, we can translate both these tenses with the simple past. In French, each has a very specific function, and they are not interchangeable. Therefore, the concept of usage may be a difficult one for you to acquire.

However, practicing and knowing the main usages for both tenses can help you choose between the two.

The main function of the *passé composé* is to describe events that started AND ended in the past. Also use the *passé composé* when the action is interrupting another action (still in the past, of course!).

The main usage of the *imparfait* is to describe actions in the past without a precise time frame. Think of what you're talking about in the past: could you portray it in a still picture? There you go! Use the *imparfait*. It also expresses a habit. And finally, use it when describing someone's emotional state or health in the past.

Now...here is another tip. Think about the still picture we just mentioned. In this still picture, let's say there is a landscape, the sky is blue, and everything is quiet. As we said above, we need the *imparfait* to describe this picture (don't forget, this will be a description in the PAST!). Let's go ahead and start the description.

*Le ciel était bleu, tout était calme.* ("The sky was blue, everything was quiet.") Everything in your still picture is quiet; everything is at the *imparfait*. But...all of a sudden, lightning strikes in the sky. The lightning interrupts the still motion, and along with it, the *passé composé*!! Let's see how it looks:

*Le ciel était bleu, tout était calme, quand tout à coup, un éclair a déchiré le ciel.* ("The sky was blue; everything was quiet, when all of a sudden lightning struck in the sky.")

The second action (lightning) interrupts the first action (quietness and tranquility). The first action is at the *imparfait* and the second action is at the *passé composé*.

To train yourself, ask a native or an advanced learner of French to assist you in talking in the past while using both tenses. Choose a subject involving speaking in the past tense, such as a childhood memory or a strange event you recently experienced. While you are speaking, ask the person listening to catch your errors in using the two tenses. Then exchange roles.





## All About S1

Top 5 French Phrases Your Teacher Will Never Teach You!

13

Grammar Points	2
----------------	---

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Top Five Phrases Your Teacher Will Never Teach You.**

---

French has three main registers of language:

1. Familiar/vulgar
2. Neutral
3. Formal/literary

Instructors teach both the neutral and formal/literary registers in school. French teachers usually avoid the familiar register, despite the fact that the French people use it about half of the time, especially in relaxed, casual situations.

**2** We don't want to keep you away from true French! Therefore, we picked five casual/familiar phrases that you probably wouldn't encounter in a regular French textbook. Since it's hard for a non-native speaker to measure the level of familiarity of a language, we give you the level of casualness in parentheses for each of the phrases. Read them as follows:

**Casual:** You can use the expression in any relaxed setting with people you feel comfortable around. It's always funny to hear casual French in a non-native's mouth!

**Familiar:** Avoid using it with strangers, but it's fine to use among friends.

Enjoy!

**Phrase One (casual):**

*On se fait une bouffe avec un bon petit pinard?* ("How about having dinner with a nice wine?")

---

The French widely use this expression among friends and family. You won't be able to miss either the noun *la bouffe* or the verb *bouffer* while in France, especially considering that eating is a huge part of the French culture.

*La bouffe* means "food" or "meal," depending on the context. In the phrase above, it can refer to "lunch" or "dinner," depending on the time of the day the suggestion is made. You can also use *bouffer*, which is obviously the verb meaning "to eat."

Originally, before the twelfth century, the French used the verb *bouffer*, and therefore its derivative, the noun *la bouffe*, to indicate the fact of puffing out one's cheeks. Later, in the 1200s, the French used it to describe someone who was emotionally distressed with a face exploding with anger. At this time, the term was considered to be informal French. During the first half of the sixteenth century, the French used the term when someone would excessively fill his mouth and cheeks with food, which easily shows you the link to how the French use the word *bouffer* today.

### Language Expansion:

---

The French also used the word *bouffoir*, which shares its root with *bouffer* and *la bouffe*, to designate a bellow butchers used in the nineteenth century to blow air under the skin of butchered animals to make their skins easier to remove.

Note that the slang word *pinard* means a "cheap wine of lower quality."

### Phrase Two (familiar):

***Ne m'anarque pas ! ('Don't rip me off')***

---

Often, while visiting places frequented by tourists, whether all over the world or in France, you may

get ripped off. You may buy articles or souvenirs at a high price that you could have gotten cheaper elsewhere. To avoid this misadventure, make sure to say *Ne m'arnaque pas* ("Don't rip me off!"). You can also use it as a strong statement to open a negotiation in flea markets, where this practice is common. You can use a softer intonation to make this statement less assertive.

The verb *arnaquer* ("to rip off") derives from the slang *harnacher*, meaning "to entertain with the intention of swindling." Then the word lost its first letter, *h-*, in the nineteenth century, and the French used the word to mean "to cheat." In 1900, the spelling of this word evolved to its present form, but its definition shifted to mean "fixing a game."

You will certainly hear the phrase *C'est l'arnaque* ("It's a rip-off") in many mouths in France, too.

### Phrase Three (casual):

*Je suis à la dèche.* ("I'm broke.")

---

It has surely happened to most of us at some point.

*Être à la dèche* means "to be broke."

In the early 1800s, the French used this phrase to designate the fact of losing at games. Shortly after, it meant "destitution." It probably came from the word *déchet*, meaning "waste," "scrap," or "garbage." Later on, in the nineteenth century, the adjective *décheux*, *décheuse* appeared to point out a person without money.

### Language Expansion:

---

In a dictionary dating to 1935, the verb *décher*, which is obsolete today, was recorded. It was used to refer to money, in particular finding coins. Today, the frequently used verb *dénicher* means "to find."



**Phrase Four (casual):*****J'ai pigé*** ("I understood")

The verb *piger* is slang for "to understand."

The French usually use it in its past form, *j'ai pigé*, and it means "I understood," "I have understood," or even "I got it."

You will also find it in its present form in the phrase *Je pige que dalle* ("I don't understand anything"), *que dalle* being slang for "nothing" or "anything."

You will hear it when someone suddenly understands something he or she didn't understand before.

In the early 1800s, the usage of the transitive verb *piger* was "to know." Half a century later, the definition slightly changed to "to know something," the meaning of which turned later into "to understand."

Here are some examples of its usage:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>J'ai pigé.</i>	"I understood."
<i>J'ai pigé ton problème.</i>	"I understood your problem."
<i>Je pige rien./Je pige que dalle.</i>	"I don't understand anything."/"I understand nothing."

**Phrase Five (familiar):*****Je me casse !*** ("I'm leaving!")

The verb (*se*) *casser* primarily means "to break." It is also used nowadays in many idiomatic

expressions, such as *casser la voix*, meaning "to break one's voice by excessive use," or in informal French, *casser la croute* ("to eat"), *casser les pieds* ("to annoy"), *se casser la tête* ("to experience difficulty solving an issue"), or *casser les os* ("to fight," "to beat someone").

The verb *se casser* used in *Je me casse !* ("I'm leaving!") originated in the twelfth century with *quasser*, meaning "to break bones." Later came the expression *casser la tête de quelqu'un*, which means "to break someone's head," which is still in use today.

The phrase *se casser la jambe*, which the French used in 1835 to mean "to escape," later got shortened to *se casser*, this lesson's phrase, meaning "to leave."



## All About S1

### Top 5 Most Useful Phrases for Learning French

14

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Top Five Most Useful Phrases for Learning French.**

---

Here are a few useful phrases if you just started learning French and find yourself immersed in French at a party, or in France, or even if you are just running into some French person on the street who is asking for directions. French people are everywhere, so be prepared to throw out some basic phrases that will help you manage a basic conversation.

### Phrase One:

*Je ne comprends pas.* ("I don't understand.")

---

Most likely, you will find yourself stuck in the middle of an all-in-French conversation. This scenario is inevitable. To express to French friends that you need a little help, state that you don't understand.

Be assured that even your teachers and tutors do not know everything. They aren't encyclopedias. So stating that you don't know is a positive first step in learning and getting over your fear of making mistakes. It is that simple. Not knowing is the first step of learning.

In the phrase *Je ne comprends pas*, we use the irregular verb *comprendre* from the third verb group, meaning "to understand," with the negative form *ne pas*. We place the first element, *ne*, before the verb, and we place *pas* after the verb.

### Language Expansion:



---

With that said, you have now picked up how to form the negative form in French with *ne* + verb + *pas*. You can also use it to say "I don't know" with *Je ne sais pas*.

**Phrase Two:**

*Vous pouvez répéter lentement, s'il vous plaît ?* ("Can you repeat slowly, please?")

---

Once you've made your point clear that what has been said is incomprehensible to you, you can give yourself another chance to practice your listening. To do so, ask the person to repeat slowly with *Vous pouvez répétez lentement, s'il vous plaît ?* ("Can you repeat slowly, please?") If the speed is not the issue, just omit the adverb *lentement* and simply ask *Vous pouvez répéter, s'il vous plaît ?* ("Can you repeat, please?")

*Vous pouvez* is the formal "Can you" and is followed by the infinitive verb *répéter*, meaning "to repeat." *Lentement* means "slowly." Finally, you have the polite expression *s'il vous plaît*, meaning "please."

If you are talking to a friend, you can use the informal version of this phrase by saying *Tu peux répéter, s'il te plaît?*

**Phrase Three:**

*Qu'est-ce que...veut dire ?* ("What does...mean?")

---

After you asked the speaker to repeat and you still didn't get the idea, another phrase can assist you. It is the question asking what a certain word means said in your own language. Use either one of the two common ways to formulate the question "What does...mean?":

*Qu'est-ce que* (your word) *veut dire ?*

*Qu'est-ce que* (your word) *signifie ?*

Note that both questions use the element *Qu'est-ce que*, meaning "what."

The verb form *veut dire* comes from the infinitive *vouloir dire* and *signifie* from its infinitive *signifier*. Both mean "to mean."

### Language Expansion:

---

If your interlocutor just mentioned the word, sign, or symbol you need a translation for, you can use *Qu'est-ce que ça veut dire ?* "What does **it/this** mean?"

### Phrase Four:

*Comment vous dites...en français ?* ("How do you say...in French?")

---

Now it's your turn to talk, and there's something you'd like to say but you don't know the word in French. In that situation, use the question *Comment vous dites* (your word) *en français ?* ("How do you say (your word) in French?")

In the featured question *Comment vous dites ... en français ?*, the irregular verb *dire* means "to say." In this question, note the use of *vous*, the formal "you," referring to one person.

Remember that *vous* ("you") is also the second person plural, even though when we used it as the formal "you," it is singular.

Therefore, *vous* can either refer to one single individual (formal "you") or several people (plural "you").



**Phrase Five:**

*Aidez-moi, s'il vous plaît.* ("Help me, please.")

---

Now that you went through all the possible statements and questions, it is time to ask for help. This phrase is extremely versatile as you can use it in all possible situations when you need some assistance.

*Aidez-moi, s'il vous plaît* ("Help me, please") is a straightforward request for help. You can use it when you have an issue using an automatic device, such as an ATM or a ticket dispenser for a parking place or a seat on a train, bus, tram, and the like.

You'll also find this phrase useful in case of an emergency or if you need medical assistance.

Since this request is an order, we conjugate the regular verb *aider* at the imperative form. The verb form *aidez* tells us that your message is addressed to one person in the formal way or to several people because the verb ends in *-ez* (mark of the second person plural).

Note that the verb form *aidez* is followed by *un trait d'union* ("a hyphen") and the word *moi*. The word *moi* means "me," and therefore *aidez-moi* means "help me."



## All About S1

Top 5 Phrases from the Frenchpod101 team

15

Grammar Points

2

## Grammar Points

---

### Top Five Phrases from the FrenchPod101 Team.

---

We are presenting some additional phrases here because of their practical use (phrases 1 and 2), their frequently requested meaning or translation (phrases 3 and 4), their frequent use in France (phrase 5), and their cultural aspects (phrases 1, 3, and 4).

#### Phrase One:

*À vos/tes souhaits* ("Bless you")

---

This phrase is a classical request from learners of French. They want to know how to say "Bless you" when a person sneezes.

Use *À vos souhaits* to address an unknown person or someone in a formal situation.

Use *À tes souhaits* to address a friend or someone in an informal context.

So, don't make any reference to religion in France when someone sneezes, save that for when you're swearing (but that's another subject that would require a whole lesson)!

#### Phrase Two:

*À point* ("medium well")

The expression *à point* refers to meat and how it is cooked. French people have a tendency to order it more on the raw or rare side than well done.

When in a restaurant in France, be assured that the waiter will ask how you want your steak with *Vous voulez votre steak comment ?* ("How you would like your steak?") or *Vous souhaitez quelle cuisson ?* which literally means "Which roasting would you like?"

In order to state how you'd like your meat, use either:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Bien cuit</i>	"well done" (French natives almost never order beef this way)
<i>À point :</i>	"medium well"
<i>Saignant</i>	"medium rare" (most French people order their meat cooked this way)
<i>Bleu</i>	"very rare" (lightly grilled on each side, blood should ideally run out of the piece of meat and show red/blue flesh)

### Phrase Three:

***Prenons du bon temps ! Laissez les bons temps rouler!*** ("Let the good times roll!")

People often ask about the festive phrase *Laissez les bons temps rouler!* ("Let the good times roll!") due to its usage in Louisiana. However, the French version is only used in Cajun French and not in France.

The equivalent expressions would be in informal French *Éclatons-nous*, literally "Let's have fun!" or *Que la fête commence !*, which word for word means "Let the party begin!"

Use the first phrase in colloquial or informal French, *Éclatons-nous*, among friends in any entertaining event. The identical expression in standard, everyday French is *Profitons-en* ("Let's enjoy it"), implying that whatever was enjoyed was previously mentioned.

**Phrase Four:**

*Mon chou* ("My cabbage"), *mon lapin*, *mon poussin*, *ma poule*, *ma puce*, *mon coeur*

---

Since French is the language of romance, many people ask about French phrases and vocabulary used when expressing love to someone. Many French couples give each other sweet nicknames to call each other.

*Mon chou* ("my cabbage" or "my puff") is a common term of affection used toward either men or women. Another frequent term is *mon coeur*, literally "my heart," which the French use to refer to both boys and girls.

Some of these nicknames are used only toward one gender. For example, you will only see a person saying *mon lapin* ("my rabbit") or *mon poussin* ("my chick") to a man, never a woman. If you want to express affection toward a woman and only a woman (or girl), use in that case *ma poule* ("my hen") or *ma puce* ("my flea"). Remember we can use all these affectionate expressions with either adults or children.

**Phrase Five:**

*C'est bien/bon*. ("It's okay.")

---

The French use these two short sentences all the time and in every possible context. Grammatically speaking, *bon* ("good") is an adjective describing someone or something and *bien* ("well") is an adverb detailing how things are done.

Using *bien* and *bon* is more complicated.

*C'est bon* ("it's okay/good") can refer to tasting or smelling a delicious meal or drink. We can also use *c'est bon* can to tell someone that his work was good or that a task is complete ("I'm done").

Finally, you can use *c'est bon* (!) when you are tired of someone picking at you or making fun of you and you want him/her to stop. Your intonation will then sound more annoyed.

We use *c'est bien* ("It's okay/good") when referring to how well things are done. For example, you will say *C'est bien* when implying *C'est bien fait* ("It is well done"). Anytime you can say *C'est bien peint/écrit/pensé* ! etc. ("It's well painted/written/thought," etc.), then use *C'est bien*.







## Pronunciation S1

What Would We Do Without Vowels in French?

1

Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	2
Cultural Insight	12

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
met, mais	dish, but		
lait, les	milk, the		
trait, très	line, very		
refaire, zèbre, crier	to redo, zebra, to yell		
clair, petit, écoute	fair, small, listen		
peine, debout, lier	sorrow, up, to tie		
riz, pâte, rat	rice, pasta, rat		
pin, pan, pont	pine, pan, bridge		
toi, huit	you, eight		

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is French Vowel Sounds.**

---

French is spoken fluently by 128 million French speakers (as a native or adopted language). Use it regularly so you start on the right foot and can understand and be understood. Learning the French sounds will help you to become sensitized to the language's different sounds and better master its pronunciation.

Be aware though, this pronunciation guide is for standard French—the one you'll hear on the radio or television. When traveling in France, you'll hear many different accents and vocabulary words used specifically in the region you are in.

For example, you may hear in the Eastern region of France *un cornet* instead of *un sachet* to refer to a plastic bag in stores and supermarkets. Previously, the French only used the word *cornet* to refer to

small, cone-shaped paper containers that hold French fries, grilled chestnuts, or sweets. The usage of the word became more generic with time, and now it refers to a plastic or paper bag of any shape.

In French, twenty-six letters form the alphabet and give rise to thirty-seven speech sounds. Among these sounds, there are two main categories:

- Nineteen vowel sounds
- Eighteen consonant sounds.

Today, we will look at the nineteen vowel sounds in detail with many simple examples and pronunciation practice exercises. They are divided into three groups as follows:

1. *Voyelles orales* ("oral vowels") with three subgroups:

- *Voyelles antérieures* ("front vowels")
- *Voyelles centrales* ("central vowels")
- *Voyelles postérieures* ("back vowels")

2. *Voyelles nasales* ("nasal vowels")

3. *Semi-voyelles* ("half vowels")

### The Nineteen Vowel Sounds

---

For now, of course, all this is still a mystery. However, the different kinds of vowel denominations have a purpose! They are called oral, front, central, back, nasal, and half vowels for the position of the tongue, the uvula, and the lips when pronouncing them.

For example, when pronouncing the letter /i/ right after pronouncing the letter /u/, you'll notice your

tongue slide from the front (the tip of your tongue should touch your front incisor) to the back of your mouth (now your tongue should be placed further back).

**Pronunciation Practice: Feel for the movement of your lips.**

---

Pronounce several times in a row the letters /i/, /u/, and /a/. Observe yourself in a mirror and notice how your lips are moving.

You should see your lips stretch from side to side when saying the letter /i/ as if you are saying "cheese" when posing for a picture. Then your lips should form a tight o-shape toward the front as if you're giving a loved one a kiss on the forehead. Finally, when saying the last letter, your lips are shaped as a huge oval and your mouth is wide open.

**I. Voyelles orales ("Oral Vowels")**

---

They are vowels we pronounce by air going through the mouth area and where the tongue, uvula, and lips will have a certain position. There are twelve oral vowels, which we classify in three categories according to their pronunciation.

### a. *Voyelles antérieures* ("Front Vowels")

*Voyelles antérieures* are characterized by the placement of the tongue toward the front of the mouth. For example, try to pronounce the letter -è as in prey, producing an anterior vowel, and the letter -o as in orange, producing a posterior vowel. Notice the placement of your tongue in your mouth.

While producing the front vowel sound -é first followed by the sound -ou, you should observe your tongue moving from the front toward the back of your mouth. Here is the list of the anterior vowels in French:

Phonetic Symbol	English Pronunciation	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in bold)
[i]	[i] as in <u>fe</u> t		<i>st</i> ylø ("pen"), <i>île</i> ("island"), <i>maïs</i> ("corn")
[e]	[ay] as in <u>Ma</u> y	<i>regarder</i> ("to look")	<i>parlez</i> ("talk"), <i>pi</i> ed ("feet"), <i>messieurs</i> ("sir"), <i>poignée</i> ("handful"), <i>volontiers</i> ("certainly")
[ə]	[eh] as in <u>pa</u> int	<i>elle</i> ("she")	<i>chi</i> enne* ("female dog"), <i>merci</i> ("thank you"), <i>jouet</i> ("toy"), <i>ma</i> is ("but"), <i>maître</i> ("master"), <i>pa</i> yer ("to pay"), <i>treize</i> ("thirteen"), <i>être</i> ("to be"), <i>Noël</i> ("Christmas"), <i>volley</i> ("volleyball")
[a]	[a] as in <u>ap</u> ple	<i>sac</i> ("bag")	<i>à</i> ("at," "to"), <i>fem</i> me ("woman")

### Pronunciation Practice: Pronouncing and Telling the Difference Between Sounds.

Pronounce these pairs and tell whether their sounds are identical or not:

1. *met* [may]/*mais* [meh]
2. *lait* [lay]/ *les* [leh]
3. *trait* [tray]/ *très* [tray]

The first pair is different, the second is different, the third is identical. All these vowel sounds are either the [è] or [é].

### b. *Voyelles centrales* ("Central Vowels")

To pronounce properly the *voyelles centrales*, place your tongue in the middle area of your mouth. These sounds are very similar to the ear and may be difficult to distinguish, even for a native speaker of French. Their main difference while pronouncing them is the opening gap of the mouth, creating a more or less open sound.

For example, a wide-open sound would be the pronunciation of the letter *-a*, and a closed one is the pronunciation of the letter *-i*.

Phonetic Symbol	English Pronunciation	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in bold)
[y]	[u ] as in <u>pu</u> re	<i>lune</i> ("moon")	<i>sûr</i> ("sure"), <b>eu</b> ("had") ( <i>avoir</i> at the <i>passé composé</i> tense)
[ʔ]*	[uh] as in <u>duh</u>	<i>je</i> ("I")	-
[ø]*	[oe] as in <u>su</u> n	<i>feu</i> ("fire")	<i>noeud</i> ("knot"), <i>jeûne</i> ("fasting")
[œ]*	[oeu] as in <u>flower</u>	<i>fleur</i> ("flower")	<i>coeur</i> ("heart"), <i>club</i> ("club")

**\*Note**

---

The nasal sounds in *je*, *feu* and *fleur* are almost identical. For now, do not worry if you pronounce them in the same manner. It won't alter the comprehension while conversing in French. Most native French speakers would not distinguish the difference between them either if asked.

### Pronunciation Practice: Identifying a Central Vowel.

---

Say several times the letter *-u* and syllable *-ou*. Which one is a central vowel?

The first one is central and the second is posterior. When pronouncing the second one, you should notice the tip of your tongue slightly traveling toward the back of your mouth.

Practice the pronunciation of the following vowels:

1. *refaire* [r-uh-fer] / *zèbre* [zaybr] / *crier* [kri-ay]
2. *clair* [kler] / *petit* [puh-ti] / *écoute* [eh-ku-t]
3. *peine* [pe-n] / *débout* [duh-bu] / *liez* [li-eh]

### c. *Voyelles postérieures* ("Back Vowels")

To produce this type of sound, place your tongue in the back of your mouth. In other words, position the larger part of your tongue (the back part) toward the back of the mouth cavity.

Phonetic Symbol	English Pronunciation	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in bold)
[u]	[ou] as in <u>tourist</u>	<i>poule</i> ("hen")	<b>où</b> ("where"), <i>goûter</i> ("tate"), <i>football</i> ("football"), <i>août</i> ("august")
[o]	[o] as in <u>orange</u>	<i>vélo</i> ("bike")	<b>landau</b> ("stroller"), <b>bateau</b> ("boat"), <i>drôle</i> ("funny")
[ʔ]	[um] as in <u>drum</u>	<i>pomme</i> ("apple")	<b>album</b> ("album"), <b>alc</b> ool ("alcohol"), <i>capharnaüm</i> ("shambles")
[a]	[a] as in <u>cat</u>	<i>pâte</i> ("pasta")	

### Pronunciation Practice: Telling the Difference Between Anterior and Posterior Vowels.



Repeat these words several times: *riz, pâte, rat*. What happens?

You should slide the widest part of your tongue from the back to the front and to the back again of your mouth.

Note that we pronounce the letter *-a* in the word *pâte* differently than the letter *-a* in *patte*.

The former is a longer *-a* sound we pronounce with the air passing through the back part of the mouth cavity in conjunction with the throat.



The latter is a shorter sound we pronounce with the front of the mouth's cavity.

## II. Voyelles nasales ("Nasal Vowels")

---

These vowels are specific to French as the passage of the air goes mainly through the nose. For foreign ears, they may seem very strange at first, as the air vibrates mainly through the nose and produces a twangy sound.

Phonetic Symbol	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in bold)
[ʔ]*	<b>un</b> * ("a"/"an"/"one")	<b>parfum</b> ("perfume")
[ʔ]*	<b>lapin</b> * ("rabbit")	<b>chien</b> ("dog"), <b>pain</b> ("bread"), <b>peinture</b> ("paint"), <b>daim</b> ("deer"), <b>imparfait</b> ("imperfect"), <b>syndicat</b> ("trade union"), <b>sympa</b> ("kind")
[â]	<b>gant</b> ("glove")	<b>jambe</b> ("leg"), <b>empereur</b> ("emperor"), <b>paon</b> ("peacock"), <b>Caen</b> (French city)
[ô]	<b>ballon</b> ("ball")	<b>ombre</b> ("shadow"), <b>punch</b> ("punch")

**\*Note**

---

The nasal sounds in *un* and *lapin* are almost identical. For now, do not worry if you pronounce them in the same manner. It won't alter the comprehension while conversing in French. Most native French speakers would not distinguish the difference between them either.

### **Pronunciation Practice: Pronouncing the Nasal Vowels.**

---

Listen to the audio for the words *pin*, *pan*, and *pont* in the vocabulary section and repeat them several times.



### **III. Semi-voyelles ("Half Vowels")**

---

*Semi-voyelles* are also called *semi-consonnes* ("half consonants"). They are unique sounds between vowels and consonants that occur when two vowels follow each other in one syllable of a word, such as in *balayer*, meaning "to sweep" (example of the phonetic sound symbol [J]). Another example is the pronunciation of the letters *-oi*, which are pronounced in English [woa], as in the French word *poisson* ("fish").

Phonetic Symbol	English Pronunciation	Keyword	Other Grapheme (in red)
[J]	[i-hae] as in <u>y</u> arn	<i>pie</i> d ("foot")	<i>crayon</i> ("pencil"), <i>soleil</i> ("sun"), <i>paille</i> ("hay"), <i>h</i> yène ("pen"), <i>païen</i> ("pagan")
[V]	[hu-i] as in <u>qu</u> ick	<i>hui</i> t ("eight")	<i>sueur</i> ("sweat"), <i>suave</i> ("pen"), <i>ennuyeux</i> ("boring")
[w]	[woa] as in <u>chihuhua</u>	<i>doi</i> gt ("finger")	

**Pronunciation Practice: Differentiate the [V] and [w] Sounds.**

---

11

Repeat several times: *toi* [t-w<sup>h</sup>a]/ *hui*t [u-i<sup>t</sup>]

Which one has the dominant sound -*u*?

*Toi* has the [w] as in "wha" in the word "what." The word *hui*t has the sound [V] with the dominant -*u* sound.

**Pronunciation Practice: Practice All the Half-Vowel Sounds.**

---

Repeat and practice all the half vowels in this sentence:

1. *Le soleil luit pour Louis en juin.*

"The sun shines for Louis in June."

Can you recognize the three half-vowel sounds in this sentence?

*Le soleil* [J] *luit* [V] *pour Louis* [w] *en juin* [V].

---

## Cultural Insight

---



## Pronunciation S1

### French Consonants

2

Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	2
Cultural Insight	10

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
ligne, signal, guerre, fugue	line, signal, war, runaway		
ligne, digne, gant, gamme	line, worthy, glove, range		
banc, vent	bench, wind		
marche, charge, jumeaux	walk, load, twins		

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is French Consonant Sounds.**

---

Some of the French consonants are particularly challenging to produce for foreigners. A common example is the pronunciation of the letter /r/, as it is a guttural sound that is specific to French. People have often imitated this sound and made fun of the sound in movies.

In order to re-establish all the respect that the letter -r deserves, as well as to teach you all the other French consonant sounds, we've put together a very helpful consonant sound pronunciation guide. As you may already know, the French alphabet is composed of twenty-six letters that depict through 130 graphemes (various or unique spellings of a sound in writing) thirty-seven speech sounds, of which eighteen are consonant sounds.

Today, we will look at the eighteen consonant sounds. They are divided as follows:

1. *Occlusives* ("blocked consonants")
2. *Fricatives* ("sibilant")

*Vibrantes* ("vibrant")

## The Eighteen Consonant Sounds

### 1. *Occlusives* ("blocked consonants")

We produce this consonant sound by blocking the air though the mouth and pharynx with a sudden release. These sounds are much easier for us to reproduce than the *r* sound, for example, as they are very similar to the English consonants. You'll certainly find it easy to pronounce words that start with the letter *-m*, such as "mother" or its French translation, *mère*.

French Phonetic Symbol	French Keyword	Similar to English	Other French Grapheme (in red)
[p]	<i>parmi</i> ("among")	<u>p</u> ad	<i>appartement</i> ("apartment") ("apartment")
[b]	<i>barbe</i> ("beard")	<u>b</u> ad	<i>abbaye</i> ("abbaye")
[m]	<i>mer</i> ("sea")	<u>m</u> an	<i>flamme</i> ("flame")
[t]	<i>tête</i> ("head")	<u>t</u> ea	<i>datte</i> ("date")
[d]	<i>domino</i> ("domino")	<u>d</u> oll	<i>addition</i> ("addition")
[n]	<i>non</i> ("no")	<u>n</u> ame	<i>anniversaire</i> ("birthday")
[ʒ]	<i>vigne</i> ("vineyard")	<u>k</u> nee	<i>manière</i> ("way")
[k]	<i>crêpe</i>	<u>c</u> ar	<i>qualité</i>

	("crêpe")		("quality"), <i>kepi</i> ("cap"), <i>accord</i> ("agreement"), <i>orchestre</i> ("orchestra"), <i>ticket</i> ("ticket"), <i>coq</i> ("rooster")
[g]	<i>gamin</i> (familiar) ("kid")	<u>g</u> oal	<i>bague</i> ("ring"), <i>aggraver</i> ("to aggravate"), second ("second"), ghetto ("ghetto")
[N]	<i>parking</i> ("parking lot")	se <u>tt</u> ing	

### Pronunciation Practice: [ʒ] and [g]

4

Listen to the audio for the words: *ligne*, *signal*, *guerre*, *fugue*.

Which one has the sound [g]?

Repeat several times : *ligne* ("line"), *digne* ("worthy"), *gant* ("glove"), *gamme* ("range")

### 2. Fricative ("sibilant consonant")



We produce these consonant sounds by forcing air through a narrow opening by placing two parts of the mouth together, such as by the closing the teeth tightly when pronouncing the double -ss grapheme found in *laisser* ("to leave [something]"). We represent this grapheme with the phonetic symbol [s]. Keep both your upper and lower incisors are closed, as if you're trying to produce a hissing sound like a snake.

French Phonetic Symbol	French Keyword	Similar to English	Other French Grapheme (in red)
[f]	<i>ferme</i> ("farm")	foal	<i>phare</i> ("headlight"), <i>affaire</i> ("matter")
[v]	<i>vent</i> ("wind")	value	<i>wagon</i> ("wagon")
[s]	<i>sol</i> ("ground")	sun	<i>poisson</i> ("fish"), <i>citron</i> ("lemon"), <i>garçon</i> ("boy"), <i>démocratie</i> ("democracy"), <i>science</i> ("science"), <i>asthme</i> ("asthma"), <i>six</i> ("six")
[z]	<i>maison</i> ("house")	zebra	<i>zoo</i> ("zoo"), <i>deuxième</i> ("second"), <i>blizzard</i>



			("blizzard")
[ʃ]	<i>chat</i> ("cat")	<u>sh</u> ee <u>t</u>	<i>short</i> ("short"), <i>schéma</i> ("diagram"), <i>fasciste</i> ("fascist")
[ʒ]	<i>jupe</i> ("skirt")	j <u>et</u>	<i>girafe</i> ("giraffe")

### Pronunciation Practice: [s] and [z]

---

#### For Example:

1. *Je suis passé au zoo où le zèbre zélé sent les roses.*

"I passed through the zoo where the enthusiastic zebra smells the roses."

### Pronunciation Practice: [b] and [v]

---

Say and repeat the pair: *banc* ("bench")/*vent* ("wind"). Which has the sound [v] as in victory?

#### For Example:

1. *Valerie va boire un bon vin blanc avec Boris dans un bar vendredi.*

"Valerie is going to go drink a good white wine in a bar on Friday."

<b>Pronunciation Practice: [ʒ] and [ʒ]</b>		
Say and repeat: <i>marche</i> ("walk"), <i>charge</i> ("load"), <i>jumeaux</i> ("twins"). Which word has the sound [ʒ] as in <u>sheet</u> ?		
<b>For Example:</b>		
1. <i>Le chat marche sur la jolie plage avec en bouche une chaussette jaune.</i>		
"The cat walks on the pretty beach with a yellow sock in his mouth."		
<b>3. Vibrante ("Vibrant")</b>		
We produce this consonant by one or various vibrations we cause by building up pressured air in one of our mouth organs (the tip of the tongue, uvula, etc.) that we suddenly release.		
<b>Phonetic</b>	<b>Keyword</b>	<b>Other Grapheme (in</b>



Symbol		red)
[l]	<i>lampe</i> ("lamp")	<i>elle</i> ("she")
[R]	<i>roue</i> ("wheel")	<i>beurre</i> ("butter")

The French /r/ is a fricative produced when air "rubs" against the back of the throat. The result is a sound similar to a light clearing of the throat.

### Pronunciation Practice: Most Challenging Consonant Sounds ([v], [z], [ʒ], [ʒ], [r])

---

Pronounce this phrase: *La vache au bal qui rit joyeusement est zen.* ("The cow at the dance who laughs is cool.")

### Reading and Pronunciation Tip

---

Grapheme-Phonetic Symbol	Examples	Comparison to English	Reading Tip
c [s]	<i>ces céréales, ce, ici</i>	c grapheme pronounced as in	The letter -c in front of

		the letter <i>-s</i> in "sold"	the letters <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , or <i>u</i> in French is pronounced as a <i>k</i> sound as in "code" in English
ç [s]	<i>ça, garçon, commençons, reçoive, reçu</i>	ç grapheme pronounced as an <i>-s</i>	If no <i>cétille</i> appears under the letter <i>-c</i> and in front of <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , or <i>u</i> , the letter <i>c</i> is pronounced [k] as in "code" in English
ch [ʃ]	<i>chien, chat, cher, chemise</i>	ch grapheme is pronounced as in "shore"	
g - (hard) [g]	<i>garçon, gourmet, de Gaulle, guerre, Guillaume, Guy</i>	In the <i>ga</i> , <i>go</i> , and <i>gu</i> graphemes, we pronounce the letter <i>-g</i> as in "gas."	The letter <i>g</i> in front of the letters <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , or <i>u</i> is pronounced as a hard <i>g</i> .
g - (soft) [ʒ]	<i>mangeons, voyageons, Georges, Givenchy, Peugeot</i>	<i>ge</i> and <i>gi</i> graphemes are pronounced as in "jeans"	The letter <i>g</i> in front of the letters <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> is pronounced as a soft <i>g</i> .
gn [ɲ]	<i>cognac, montagne, signe, dignité, répugnant</i>	gn grapheme is similar to the sound "kn" in "knew"	
h [silent]	<i>hôtel, homme</i>	<i>h</i> is silent	
j [ʒ]	<i>je, Jacques,</i>	this letter is	

	<i>Jérémy, juste</i>	pronounced as in "j am"	
qu [k]	<i>quand, quartier, que, tranquille, séquence</i>	qu grapheme is pronounced as in "k ilo"	
s - [s]	<i>sympa, poisson, dessert</i>	this letter is pronounced as in " Sam"	
s - [z]	<i>rose, chose, poison, désert</i>	this letter is pronounced as in "z oo"	
th [t]	<i>théâtre, mathématiques, bibliothèque</i>	th grapheme is pronounced as in "t ell"	
t [s]	<i>démocratie, nation, portion</i>	ti grapheme is pronounced as in " seem"	



10

## Cultural Insight

---



## Pronunciation S1

Accents, Silent Letters, Final Letters

3

Grammar Points	2
Cultural Insight	13

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is French Pronunciation: The Accents and Silent Letters.**

---

Certain vowel sounds are specific to the French language, and their pronunciation may be a challenge. However, this guide will help you in their pronunciation by comparing similar sounds existing in English.

### Sounds and Their Corresponding Written Accents (*è, é*)

The letter [*é*] is much like the vowel sound in "day" or "hay." It is written in various ways in French, as illustrated in the table below:

<i>Sound</i>	<i>Where You Can Find It</i>	<i>Example</i>
<i>é</i>	nouns, adjectives, etc.	<i>école</i>
<i>er</i>	end of an infinitive	<i>chanter</i>



	verb	
<i>ez</i>	second person plural verb ending	<i>vous chantez</i>
<i>ez</i>	end of a word	<i>nez</i>
<i>e (ss)</i>	start of a word	<i>essence</i>
<i>ed</i>	end of a word	<i>piéd</i>
<i>e(ff)</i>	start of a word	<i>effort</i>

We pronounce the letters [è , ê] as in the vowel sound of "pet."

<b>Sound</b>	<b>Where You Can Find It</b>	<b>Example</b>
<i>è</i>	nouns, adjectives, etc.	<i>mère</i>
<i>e</i>	before a consonant	<i>mer, elle, avec</i>
<i>ê</i>	nouns, adjectives, etc.	<i>pêche</i>
<i>ei</i>	nouns, adjectives, etc.	<i>reine</i>
<i>et</i>	end of a word	<i>carnet</i>
<i>ai</i>	nouns, adjectives, etc.	<i>raisin</i>
<i>âi</i>	nouns, adjectives, etc.	<i>maître</i>

### Practice 1

---

Classify these words into the sound *é* or *è*:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>fer</i>	"iron"
<i>pelle</i>	"shovel"
<i>palet</i>	"puck"

<i>écrivez</i>	"write"
<i>vrai</i>	"true"
<i>essentiel</i>	"essential"
<i>jardiner</i>	"to garden"
<i>hêtre</i>	"beech tree"
<i>reine</i>	"queen"

### Silent Letters: Silent and Aspired *h* and Silent *e*

In French, there are two kinds of pronunciations of the letter *h*-. However, the letter *h*- doesn't represent any sound, but we refer to it as either the aspired *h*- or silent *h*-. The reason is essentially etymological. Some words that start with an *h*- are of Latin origin and others come from Germanic languages. There are no rules to classify them in specific groups of words, aside from their etymological origins. Only practicing your French listening and speaking skills will help you figure them out when you encounter them.

#### Silent *h*

In French, we do not pronounce the silent *h*-. The silent *h*- is the first letter of words from the Latin or Greek language. The letter *h*- in these words doesn't have any impact on their pronunciation, and that is why in oral speech we consider these words to begin with vowels.

For example, we pronounce a linking sound between a word starting with a silent letter and the last letter of the preceding word, as in the letter *-n* from the word *un* ("a") and the silent *h*- of *hameçon*

("hook") in *un hameçon* ("a hook"), which is pronounced [huh-nam-sohn].

Another example is with the phrase *nous habitons* [nou-za-bi-ton], meaning "we live," where we pronounce the letter *-s* from *nous* with the silent letter *h-* and the sound of the word *habitons* ("live").

### Other Examples:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>habileté</i>	"skill"
<i>habiller</i>	"to dress"
<i>habituer</i>	"to get somebody used to something"
<i>haleine</i>	"breath"
<i>hebdomadaire</i>	"weekly"
<i>harmonie</i>	"harmony"
<i>héberger</i>	"to accomodate"
<i>hémisphère</i>	"hemisphere"
<i>héritage</i>	"heritage"
<i>héréditaire</i>	"hereditary"
<i>héroïne</i>	"female hero"
<i>hésiter</i>	"to hesitate"
<i>hippopotame</i>	"hippopotamus"
<i>homme</i>	"man"
<i>honnête</i>	"honesty"
<i>honneur</i>	"honor"
<i>hôtel</i>	"hotel"
<i>hôpital</i>	"hospital"
<i>horizon</i>	"horizon"

**Language Focus: Why Do We Shorten the Articles *le* and *la* Before the Silent *h*?**

Because the silent *h*- is considered as nonexistent and words that begin with it behave as if they start with a vowel, when using a definite article, choose the abbreviated *l'* when referring to something in general, as in *l'homme*, meaning "the man."

### Aspired *h*

We use the aspired *h* in words originating in Germanic languages, even though there isn't any aspiration in its pronunciation. It is in reality a disjunctive sound, as if you would pause between the words. This is why we don't use the linking sound between the last letter of a word and the following word starting with an aspired *h*-, but rather we insert a very short pause, as with *les hamacs* ("the hammocks"), pronounced [le-amak], not [lezamak].

### Other Examples:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>haïr</i>	"to hate"
<i>hall</i>	"hall"
<i>hamburger</i>	"hamburger"
<i>hanche</i>	"hip"
<i>handicap</i>	"handicap"
<i>hangar</i>	"warehouse"
<i>hanter</i>	"to haunt"
<i>haricot</i>	"bean"
<i>harpe</i>	"harp"
<i>hasard</i>	"by chance"
<i>haut</i>	"high"

<i>héros (but not héroïne)</i>	"hero" (but not female heroines)
<i>hibou</i>	"owl"
<i>hiérarchie</i>	"hierarchy"
<i>hippie</i>	"hippie"
<i>hobby</i>	"hobby"
<i>homard</i>	"lobster"
<i>honte</i>	"shame"
<i>huit</i>	"eight"
<i>hurler</i>	"to scream"

### Language Focus: Why Do We Use the Articles *le* or *la* With the Aspired *h*-?

---

You cannot shorten the article in front of words that start with an aspired *h*-, as we pronounce these words as two separate words. Instead, use the definite article *le* ("the") or *la* ("the"); therefore, with indefinite articles, these words behave as if they start with a consonant, as in *la honte* ("the shame").

### Silent *-e*

---

The silent *-e* is almost\*\* always spelled with the letter *-e* without any accent, and we can pronounce it as in *verrai* ("I'll see") or drop it as in *quelle* ("which," "what").

Note also that the requirement to pronounce or not pronounce the silent *-e* also depends on the emphasis the speaker wishes to express. For example, someone can say *Je TE le dis* ("I tell **you**."), or *JE te le dit* ("**I** tell you"), and the language register.

The silent *-e* is more commonly pronounced in formal French than informal French, in which speech is faster and less articulate. For example, you may hear in informal speech, *Je t'l'dis* ("I tell you.") where the speaker does not pronounce all of the letter *-e* sounds because he or she is speaking very rapidly.

\*\*Except for the verb *faire* when its conjugation has two syllables: *nous faisons*, *en faisant*, *je faisais*, etc.

Language Focus: The Different Pronunciations of the Written Unaccented *-e* The unaccented *-e* is not always a silent *-e*; some unaccented *-e*'s are pronounced with the *-é* sound or the *-è* sound when placed in front of double consonant\*, as in *tennis* ("tennis"), or in front of two articulately pronounced consonants, as in *restaurant* ("restaurant"). These pronunciations may vary from region to region, but that won't affect comprehension.

\*When the double consonant is a double *-s* preceding the letter *-e*, we pronounce this letter as the letter *-e* from the alphabet. It is also the case when the letter *-e* is part of the prefix *re-*, as in *repartir* ("to leave again").

### For Example:

#### é Sound

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>festival</i>	"festival"
<i>dessert</i>	"dessert"
<i>effectif</i>	"effective, real"

#### è Sound

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>presse</i>	"written media"
<i>tellement</i>	"so much"
<i>spectacle</i>	"show"

## Deciding Whether to Pronounce the Silent *e*

In most words or phrases ending in *-e*, the final *-e* is silent and is always dropped. For example, we drop it when the silent *-e* precedes a vowel, as in *une autre ami*, pronounced [hʁn otr ami], or precedes a consonant, as in *elle joue* ("she plays").

Some exceptions are the pronunciation of the silent *-e*, whether required or optional, in:

A.) One-syllable words:

1. *ce* ("this")
2. *de* ("of")
3. *je* ("I")
4. *le* ("it")
5. *me* ("myself")
6. *ne* (part of the negation form)
7. *que* ("that")
8. *se* [reflexive element of the verb, as in *se maquiller* ("to put make up on")]
9. *te* ("you")

It is required when a word starting with a silent *h-* follows it, as in the aspirated *h-* in *ce homard* ("this lobster").

It is optional when a word starting with a consonant follows it, as in informal fast speech, as with *Je n'suis pas là* ("I'm not here."), which you can encounter in comics, for example. In formal French, it should be *Je ne suis pas là* ("I'm not here.").

B.) A phrase or word when the silent *e* is placed in the first syllable, as in *Levez-vous à six heures* ("Wake up at six o'clock a.m.").

C.) A phrase or word when the silent *e* is not in the first or last syllable and is preceded by one or more consonant sound, as in *Je regardez ce film* ("I watch this movie") or *l'appartement* ("the apartment").

### Practice 2

---

What are the silent letters in:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je mange le petit-déjeuner avec ma fille.</i>	"I eat breakfast with my daughter."
<i>Estelle arrive à la gare avec sa valise.</i>	"Estelle arrives in the train station with her luggage."
<i>Le photographe admire l'image.</i>	"The photographer admires the picture."
<i>L'artiste regarde son modèle.</i>	"The artist looks at his model."
<i>Ce que l'ivresse apporte c'est une mauvaise santé.</i>	"What alcohol intoxication brings is bad health."

### Practice 3

---

What are the thirteen letters not pronounced in these phrases?



<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je suis français.</i>	"I'm French."
<i>Tu comprends ?</i>	"Do you understand?"
<i>Elle parle bien anglais.</i>	"She speaks English well."
<i>Quelle est ta nationalité ?</i>	"What is your nationality?"
<i>Il s'appelle François et toi ?</i>	"He is François, and you?"

### Language Expansion: When Not to Pronounce Final Letters

---

As a rule of thumb, do not pronounce final letters. However, keep in mind that we pronounce the letters *b* as in *club* ("club"), *c* as in *toc* ("tap"), *f* as in *bref* ("brief," "in short"), *k* as in *anorak* ("waterproof vest"), *l* as in *fil* ("thread"), *q* as in *cinq* ("five"), and *r* as in *car* ("because") when they fall at the end of a word.

11

The other French consonants are usually silent at the end of a word, with some exceptions, as with many proper names or words borrowed from other languages or when linking words are mandatory, as in *les oranges* ("the oranges"), pronounced [lezoranj], or *ils ont* ("they have") [ilzon].

### Solution Practice 1

---

#### é Sound

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>écrire</i>	"write"
<i>jardiner</i>	"to garden"
<i>essentiel</i>	"essential"
<i>participez</i>	"to participate"

**è Sound:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>pelle</i>	"shovel"
<i>palet</i>	"puck"
<i>vrai</i>	"true"
<i>hêtre</i>	"beech tree"
<i>reine</i>	"queen"

**Solution Practice 2**

<b>French</b>
<i>Je mange le petit-déjeuner avec ma fille.</i>
<i>Estelle arrive à la gare avec sa valise.</i>
<i>Le photographe admire l'image.</i>
<i>L'artiste regarde son modèle.</i>
<i>Ce que l'ivresse apporte c'est une mauvaise santé.</i>

**Solution Practice 3**

---

<b>French</b>
<i>Je suis français.</i>
<i>Tu comprends ?</i>
<i>Elle parle bien anglais.</i>
<i>Quelle est ta nationalité ?</i>
<i>Il s'appelle François et toi ?</i>

---

## Cultural Insight

---



## Pronunciation S1

### French Liaisons - Linking Sounds Between Consecutive Words

4

Grammar Points	2
Cultural Insight	11

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Mandatory, Optional, and Forbidden Linking Sounds Between Two Words.**

---

When speaking and reading French, you may have noticed that sometimes the French pronounce two words together as one. This process is called in French *une liaison*, or "a linking word." Some are mandatory, some forbidden, and others optional, and we form them by pronouncing the last letter of a word with the first letter of the following word. However, the pronunciation of this last letter may change according to the phrase.

2

First, we are going to look at the pronunciation of the final letter of the first word, followed by the mandatory, forbidden, and optional linking sounds.

When pronouncing a linking sound, blend the last letter of a word with the first letter of the following word, as in *vous vous appelez* ("you are + name"), pronounced [vuvuzapeley], linking the last letter -s to the second *vous* and the first letter of the verb form *appelez* with a z sound.

With this example, you will notice that the last letter of the word *vous* ("you") is pronounced as a -z when followed with a word starting with a vowel. This is true even though the letter -s in *vous* is not pronounced when the pronoun *vous* ("you") stands alone or is followed by a word starting with a consonant.

***La liaison* ("linking sound") - Linking a Consonant with a Vowel and its Pronunciation**

---

When making a liaison ("linking sound") among two words, we pronounce some final consonants as they would be pronounced when reciting the alphabet and others in a different way as shown previously.

The letters *-s*, *-x*, *-z*, *-t*, *-d*, *-n* and *-m*, are normally silent at the end of a word. We pronounce them when the next word begins with a vowel or an *-h*.

### Language Focus

#### Words Starting with the Letter *-h* and Their Linking Sound Rules

---

Remember that the words starting with a silent *-h*, as well as those of Latin origin, act as words starting with vowels. Therefore, when the last letter of a word is either *-s*, *-x*, *-z*, *-t*, *-d*, *-n*, or *-m*, we pronounce the sounds when followed by a word that begins with a silent *-h*.

The words starting with an aspirated *-h*, usually of Germanic origin or taken from another language, as in *un hall* ("a hall") from English, act as if they begin with a consonant and the liaison ("linking sound") between words does not occur.

#### a) Linking sound of the final letters *-s*, *-x*, and *-z*:

We pronounce these letters as a *-z* when blending two words together.

**Examples:**

1. *deux amis* - "two friends"
2. *les enfants* - "the children"
3. *plus important* - "more important"
4. *chez un copain* - "at a friend's place"

**b) Linking sound of final letters -t and -d:**

When we pronounce these letters in conjunction with a word starting with a vowel or a silent *-h*, they are pronounced as a *-t* sound. Note that you may hear this *-t* sound pronounced more or less softly when the final letter is a *-d*, depending on the language register used (informal or formal), the rapidity of speech, and regional accents.

**Examples:**

1. *grand homme* - "great man"
2. *Est-il...* - "is he"
3. *Elles sont en retard.* - "They are late."

**c) Linking sound of final letters -n and -m:**

Their pronunciations are identical as if you would spell a word containing these letters in French.

**Examples:**

1. *un an* - "a year"
2. *un homme* - "a man"

Now that you know how to pronounce the final letters, you need to be aware that some linking sounds are mandatory, forbidden, or optional.

**Linking Sounds Between Consecutive Words (liaison)****1. Mandatory Linking Sounds**

A. Link a determiner\* and a noun or a determiner, an adjective, and a noun.

\* A determiner can be an article, a demonstrative adjective, a possessive adjective, and the like.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>un enfant</i>	[unenfen]	"a kid"
<i>mon ancien ami</i>	[unansihuh ami]	"my former friend"
<i>un petit ami</i>	[hu petitami]	"a boyfriend"

B. Link a personal pronoun and a verb or vice versa.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>ils ont</i>	[ilzohn]	"they have"
<i>aiment-ils</i>	[emtil]	"do they like?"
<i>vous êtes</i>	[vuzet]	"you are"

C. Link short adverbs, compound nouns, and expressions.

**Examples of Short Adverbs:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>bien amusé</i>	[bihanamusey]	"a lot of fun"
<i>trop occupé</i>	[tropokupe]	"too busy?"
<i>très intéressant</i>	[trezinteresshan]	"very interesting"

**Exceptions:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>pas encore</i>	"not yet" (optional)



<i>trop exigeant</i>	"too demanding"
<i>vers elles</i>	"toward them"

**Examples of Expressions:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>petit à petit</i>	[petitapeti]	"little by little"
<i>de temps en temps</i>	[duh temsentem]	"from time to time"
<i>tout à l'heure</i>	[tutalhoer]	"in the next hour"

**Examples of Compound Nouns:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>avant-hier</i>	[avantier]	"the day before yesterday"
<i>les Etat-Unis</i>	[lezatatzuni]	"the United States"
<i>un sous-entendu</i>	[suentendu]	"overtone," "undercurrent"

**2. Forbidden Linking Sounds**


---

You will never link sounds in these grammatical structures:

A. Never link words starting with an aspirated *h-*, *y-*, or *w-*.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>la haie</i>	[la hey]	"hedge"
<i>le hockey</i>	[le hokay]	"hockey"
<i>le yaourt</i>	[l? ja uR(t)]	"yogurt"

<i>le yoga</i>	[le yoga]	"yoga"
<i>les week-ends</i>	[le wi kend]	"weekend"
<i>les watt</i>	[le wat]	watts

**Exception:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>les yeux</i>	[le zjø]	"eyes"

B. Never link words following *et* ("and").

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>et eux</i>	[hey heu]	"and them"
<i>et Anne</i>	[hey an]	"and Anne"
<i>et une maison</i>	[hey un mayson]	"and a house"

C. Never link words following a singular noun.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>
<i>un soldat anglais</i>
<i>un enfant intelligent</i>
<i>Son nez est énorme.</i>

D. Never link words after a proper noun.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>
<i>Jean a dit</i>
<i>Roger est parti</i>

E. Never link words after *quand* ("when") with a subject-verb inversion or after *comment* ("how") or *combien* ("how much").

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Quand a-t-il dit</i>	[ken atil di kil vien]	"When did he say he

<i>qu'il vient ?</i>		would come?"
<i>Comment ont-elles pris la nouvelle ?</i>	[komen ontel pri la nuvel]	"How did they take the news?"
<i>Combien il y en a ?</i>	[kombihen il hi en ha]	"How many are there?"

**Exceptions:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Comment allez-vous ?</i>	[komentale vu]	"How are you?"
<i>Quand est-ce que...</i>	[kes se khu]	"What..."

F. Never link words after compound nouns and some expressions.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>des salles à manger</i>	[desal a manjey]	"dining rooms"
<i>des arcs-en-ciel</i>	[de zark ensiel]	"rainbows"
<i>nez à nez</i>	[ne a ne]	"nose to nose"

G. Never link words preceding the numbers *onze* ("eleven") and *huit* ("eight") or the word *oui* ("yes").

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>le onze mai</i>	[le onz may]	"the eleventh of may"
<i>les huit jours</i>	[ley ui jur]	"the eight days"
<i>mais oui !</i>	[may ui]	"but yes"

**Practice**

Are the linking sounds mandatory or forbidden?

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Vous avez le téléphone ?</i>	"Do you have a phone?"
<i>Ce sont des études difficiles.</i>	"They are difficult lessons."
<i>Il part avec sa copine.</i>	"He leaves with his girlfriend."
<i>Il a été très étonné de voir ça !</i>	"He was surprised to see this!"
<i>C'est vraiment ennuyeux !</i>	"It is really boring."
<i>Elle aime les oranges.</i>	"She likes oranges."
<i>Ils envoient.</i>	"They send."
<i>Elle écrit une lettre à Lili.</i>	"She writes a letter."
<i>Nathalie passe un examen.</i>	"Natalie passes an exam."
<i>Elle téléphone à ses amis.</i>	"She calls her friends."

### 3. Facultative Linking Sounds



We most often pronounce these linking sounds in formal situations. When we're in informal situations, we almost always can skip them.

A. Usually pronounce a linking sound after plural nouns.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>

<i>les femmes actives</i>	[ley famsaktiv]	"active women"
<i>des inventions originales</i>	[dey zinvensihonsorijinal]	"original inventions"
<i>des familles américaines</i>	[dey famizameriken]	"American families"

B. Usually pronounce a linking sound after verbs.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il fait un gâteau.</i>	[il fet hugato]	"He is making a cake."
<i>Vous prenez un café ?</i>	[vu prenezhuh cafe]	"Do you take a coffee?"
<i>Je suis informaticienne.</i>	[je suhisinformatisien]	"I am a computer technician."

C. Usually pronounce a linking sound after a conjunction.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>mais enfin</i>	[me zan fen]	"but no"
<i>puis on</i>	[ouhizon]	"then we"

**Exceptions:** Never link words after *et* ("and") or *et alors* ("and then").

D. Usually pronounce a linking sound after an adverb and after prepositions of more than one syllable:

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>complètement aventureux</i>	[kompleytementaventureu]	"completely adventurous"
<i>assez aimable</i>	[assezeymable]	"polite enough"
<i>après être aller</i>	[eytrale]	"to be gone"

E. Usually pronounce a linking sound after the verb *être* ("to be").

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il est important.</i>	[il hetinportan]	"It is important."
<i>C'est un ami.</i>	[cethuhnami]	"It is a friend."
<i>Nous sommes entrés.</i>	[nusom zentrey]	"We entered."

## Cultural Insight

---



## Pronunciation S1

French Rhythm, Intonation, and Linking

5

Grammar Points	2
Cultural Insight	6

---

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Rhythmic Groups and Linking Words and Phrases in French Pronunciation.**

---

Speaking French involves adding intonation and rhythm to speech to give it some life. Listening to someone speaking in the same rhythm and without any intonation rising or falling feels boring and lifeless. Without rhythm and intonation, language does not express emotions or intentions.

Both the English and French languages possess a rhythm and stress, but each language applies them differently.

### **Rhythm and Rhythmic Groups of the French Language**

When speaking a phrase in French, we stress only the final syllable and our intonation falls. This may seem very monotone, as in English, each individual word keeps its stressed syllables. However, when a French speaker varies the usage of rhythm in the language, it can translate into a different meaning for the same phrase depending on the speaker's intention. For example, we can pronounce the phrase *La belle ferme le voile* with two different rhythm patterns and cause it to have two distinct meanings.



Let's say we want to mean that a farm hides a beautiful tree or landscape. When we say *La belle ferme le voile* ("The beautiful farm hides it."), we would stress the noun *ferme* by saying the word for a longer time frame than the other words, and we would raise our intonation. At the same time, we would also pronounce the noun *voile* for a longer time, but we would allow our intonation to fall.

However, if we wanted to say that "the woman closes the veil" with *la belle* ("the beautiful one") and the conjugated verb *ferme* ("close"), the words to stress are *belle* with a rising intonation and *voile* with a falling intonation.

### Rhythmic Group

In longer phrases than subject/verb/object phrases, we divide the sentence in different parts corresponding to rhythmic groups. This means that each part of the sentence has its own rhythmic pattern. For example, the sentence *Roger et Annie, deux amis d'enfance, voyagent en Italie demain* ("Roger and Annie, two childhood friends, travel in Italy tomorrow.") is divided as follows: *Roger et Annie, // deux amis d'enfance, // voyagent en Italie demain*. In each division (or rhythmic group), we stress the final syllable of each word and the intonation rises, except for that of the last rhythmic group.

### Language Tip: Adding Rhythm to Your French and Identifying It

When speaking French as a newbie, just stress the last syllable of your sentence while marking the

falling intonation.

When listening to French at a higher level, you will instinctively perceive the speaker's intention. Try to listen to the stressed syllables, and if you are not sure of what the person meant, just ask for an explanation.

### Linking Words in a Phrase

---

When you listen to someone speak French while you read along, you've probably noticed that French pronunciation doesn't match what you see written. One reason for this is the way words are linked together one after the other with *la liaison* or "linking sounds," which we saw in Pronunciation Lesson #4.

Another reason is that in spoken French, we pronounce words in phrases without any pauses; rather, we link them together. This process is called in French *l'enchaînement*, or in English, "word linking." We make some links between vowel sounds and others between consonant and vowel sounds.

### Word Linking Between Vowel Sounds

---

When a word ends with a vowel and the following word also starts with a vowel, both vowels form two syllables, and we do not add a pause.

For example, with the phrase *Tu as un vélo* ("You have a bike."), you'd say the whole phrase as if it were one word without any pause: you'd say [tuhahuhveylo] and not [tu ha huh veylo].

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Ça y est !</i>	[sahihey]	"That's it!"
<i>J'ai une amie anglaise.</i>	[jhayhunamihoengles]	"I have an English friend."
<i>Il a écrit un récit étrange.</i>	[ilaheykrihuhreysiheytroenj]	"He wrote a strange story."
<i>Il a été un peu étonné.</i>	[ilaheyteyhuhphuhheytoney]	"He was a little astonished."
<i>Elle a étudié et a appris à étudier.</i>	[elhaheytudhiheyheyhaprihaheytyudihey]	"She studied and learned how to study."

### Word Linking Between a Consonant and a Vowel Sound

In spoken French, we pronounce the last consonant of a word with the initial vowel of the following word. The last consonant of the first word becomes the first letter of the second word, as in *Il arrive* ("he arrives") pronounced [ilhariv]. We link the consonant to the vowel to form a syllable.

When we link words, the only consonant that changes pronunciation is [f], and it is pronounced as the letter *v* in two cases:



1. When saying that the time is "nine o'clock": *neuf heures* [neuvhhoer]
2. When saying that a person is "nine years old": *neuf ans* [neuvhan]

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>Pronunciation</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il habite à Paris.</i>	[ilhabita pari]	"He lives in Paris."
<i>Cette île est petite.</i>	[setilheytoetit]	"It is a small island."
<i>Quel âge as-tu ?</i>	[kelajatu]	"How old are you?"
<i>Hélène entre avec une amie.</i>	[heylenoentravekhunami]	"Helen comes in with a friend."
<i>Quelle est votre activité préférée ?</i>	[kelheyvotractivitheypreferey]	"What is your favorite activity?"
<i>La table en plastique est blanche.</i>	[latablheyblanch]	"The plastic table is white."
<i>Moi j'offre un vase à fleurs à cette amie.</i>	[moahjofrhunvazafloerasetami]	"Me, I offer a flower vase to this friend."

## Cultural Insight

---

Go to [InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks](https://www.InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks) to get the lesson notes for this course and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.





## Gengo Beginner French

Lessons 1 to 30

1-30

## Introduction

---

This is Innovative Language Learning.

Go to [InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks](https://www.innovativelanguage.com/audiobooks) to get the lesson notes for this course and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.

The course consists of lessons centered on a practical, real-life conversation.

In each lesson, first, we'll introduce the background of the conversation.

Then, you'll hear the conversation two times:

One time at natural native speed and one time with the English translation.

After the conversation, you'll learn carefully selected vocabulary and key grammar concepts.

Next, you'll hear the conversation 1 time at natural native speed at the end of the lesson.

Finally, practice what you have learned with the review track. Repeat the words and phrases you hear in the review track aloud to practice pronunciation and reinforce what you have learned.

Before starting the lessons, go to [InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks](https://www.innovativelanguage.com/audiobooks) to get the lesson notes for this course and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.



## Gengo French S1

Where Did You Learn to Speak French Like That!

1

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	11



## French

---

Joe                    Bonjour Cécile, comment allez-vous ?  
 Cécile                Je vais bien. Et vous ? Comment ça va ?  
 Joe                    Ça va bien !  
 Cécile                Oh, au fait. Est-ce que c'est bien dimanche demain ?  
 Joe                    Oui, demain c'est dimanche.  
 Cécile                C'est super ! Bon voyage alors !  
 Joe                    Merci Cécile ! À bientôt !

## English

---

Joe                    Hello Cécile, how are you?  
 Cécile                I'm fine. And you? How are you?  
 Joe                    I'm well!  
 Cécile                Oh, by the way. Is tomorrow Sunday?  
 Joe                    Yes, tomorrow is Sunday.  
 Cécile                That's great! Have a nice trip!  
 Joe                    Thank you Cécile! See you soon!

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
bien	well, good	adverb	
vous	you (formal)	personal pronoun	
comment	how	adverb	
super	great	interjection	
oui	yes	adverb	
demain	tomorrow	adverb	
bon	good	adjective or adverb	masculine
au fait	by the way	expression	
Comment allez-vous ? (formal you)	How are you? (formal)	phrase	
Comment ça va ?	Doing well? Literally, "It goes?" (formal)		
Et vous ?	And you?	phrase	
Je vais bien.	I'm well.	phrase	

Bon voyage !	Have a nice trip!	phrase	
à bientôt	See you soon.	interjection, phrase	
lundi	Monday	noun	masculine
mardi	Tuesday	noun	masculine
mercredi	Wednesday	noun	masculine
jeudi	Thursday	noun	masculine
vendredi	Friday	noun	masculine
samedi	Saturday	noun	masculine
dimanche	Sunday	noun	masculine

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*C'est bien fait.*

*On vit bien.*

*Tout va bien.*

*Vous êtes ici.*

*Vous vous appelez David.*

*Comment ils vont ?*

*Comment tu t'appelles ?*

*Super! Je vais à New York!*

*C'est super d'être dans un pays exotique.*

*Oui, c'est certain.*

*Demain je vais à la piscine.*

*À quelle heure tu viens demain ?*

*C'est un bon livre.*

*Le chocolat, c'est bon.*

*Au fait, tu peux aller chercher le courrier ?*

*Au revoir, et à bientôt.*

*Lundi, je vais à Paris.*

*Le lundi de pâques est toujours un lundi.*

*Tu travailles mardi ?*

*On est occupé le mardi.*

*Je vais à la piscine le mercredi.*

*Le marché aux fruits est le jeudi.*

*Ce vendredi est chargé.*

*Vendredi treize est considéré néfaste.*

*Samedi, c'est le premier jour du week-end.*

*Il adore lire le journal le dimanche matin.*

"It's well done."

"We live well."

"Everything is well."

"You are here."

"You are called David."

"How are they?"

"What is your name?"

"Great! I'm going to New York!"

"It's great to be in an exotic country."

"Yes, it's certain."

"Tomorrow, I'm going to the swimming pool."

"What time are you coming tomorrow?"

"It is a good book."

"Chocolate is good."

"By the way, can you go get the mail?"

"Bye, and see you soon."

"I'm going to Paris on Monday."

"Easter Monday is always on a Monday."

"Are you working on Tuesday?"

"We are busy on Tuesday."

"I am going to the pool on Wednesdays."

"The fruit market is on Thursday."

"This Friday is busy."

"Friday the 13th is considered dangerous."

"Saturday is the first day of the weekend."

"He loves to read the newspaper on Sunday morning."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Basic Greetings With the Verb *Aller* ("to go") and Questions and Affirmative Sentences With the Verb *être* ("to be").**

*Bonjour Cécile, comment allez-vous ?*

"Hello Cécile, how are you?"

---

How many times a day do you greet people? Have you ever thought about it?

You will probably become more aware of it when it's time for you to do so in a French-speaking country and you need to use the practical French basic greetings you'll learn right here.

The most standard greeting in any situation is with the word *bonjour*, as in the first line of the dialogue. Joe says, *Bonjour Cécile. Comment allez-vous ?* ("Hello, Cécile, how are you?") You can use *bonjour* ("hello"), which literally means "good day," in a formal or informal setting from morning to the end of the afternoon. Once the evening falls, use *bonsoir*, which literally means "good evening."

Next comes, when speaking with another you care about, the polite and unavoidable question that asks how your interlocutor is, as we see in the dialogue with the phrase *Comment allez-vous ?* ("How are you?")

### Asking About Your Interlocutor's Well-Being

---

To express your empathy toward others formally, you can ask about your interlocutor's well-being using a "wh-" question, which is known in French as an "open question," with the question word *comment*, meaning "how," and the verb *aller*, meaning "to go." In the dialogue, Joe asked his teacher *comment allez-vous?* This shows her respect, as he is her student.

In English as in French, you can encounter two types of questions. The type that requires a customized answer is called a "wh-" question in English, as these questions generally start with question words as

"who," "when," "where," "why," or "how." In French, we refer to these types of questions as "open questions," as the reply will differ from case to case.

The second type of questions are yes/no questions, to which the answers will be affirmative or negative and often additional information will follow. In French, these questions are called "closed questions," as the replies are limited to two options.

When asking how a person is, the type of question we use is a yes/no question in English or "a closed question" in French, which we can literally translate as *une question fermée*. In French, we basically structure all closed questions the same way. In fact, there are three possible formulations as illustrated below.

### Closed Questions in Formal Situations

The question structure of "How are you?" in French is as follows:

Question Word	Conjugated Verb	-	Subject?
<i>Comment</i>	<i>allez</i>	-	<i>vous ?</i>

**Note:** Observe the hyphen between the verb and the subject. We only use a hyphen when the verb comes first and then the subject follows in questions.

Question Word	Subject	Conjugated Verb
<i>Comment</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>allez ?</i>

Subject	Conjugated Verb	Question Word
<i>Vous</i>	<i>allez</i>	<i>comment ?</i>

**Note:** In French, a space precedes the question mark and exclamation mark, which is not the case in English typography.

### Language Focus: Use of *Vous*

You can use the pronoun *vous*, literally "you," in two ways.

When you are speaking to only one person and you need to show respect or when you are in a formal situation, use the formal *vous*, which we will refer to in English as the formal "you."

However, you can also use *vous* when speaking to two or more people.

### For Example:

1. *Marie et toi, comment vous allez ?*

"Mary and you, how are you?"

Here, the *vous* designates the couple, Mary and the other person, spoken to.

2. *Monsieur le Directeur Général, comment allez-vous ?*

"Sir CEO, how are you?"

Here, there is only one person referred to, the CEO.

### Informal Questions

*Et vous ? Comment ça va ?* ("And you, how are you?")

6

In standard French or in a familiar context, instead of *vous* ("you"), use *ça* when asking how a person is, as in the second line in the dialogue: *Et vous ? Comment ça va ?* ("And you? How are you?") Cécile, the teacher, sets a more familiar tone with her student, Joe, as she uses the word *ça*, which is considered standard French.

### In Informal Situations:

The word *ça* is the informal contraction of the demonstrative pronoun *cela*, meaning "this" or "that," and we often translate it with "there" or "it," depending on the question.

In French, when formulating the question with *comment* ("how") and *ça* ("it") to ask about the well-being of your interlocutor, use either of two structures:

Question Word	Subject	Conjugated Verb
<i>Comment</i>	<i>Ça</i>	<i>va ?</i>

Subject	Conjugated Verb	Question Word
<i>Ça</i>	<i>Va</i>	<i>comment ?</i>

### Replying About Your Own Well-Being

*Je vais bien.* ("I'm fine.")

Once you express your concern through a question asking how another person is, it will be your turn to tell the other person how you are.

To respond, use the verb *aller*, which literally means "to go," either with the pronoun *je* ("I") or *ça* ("it"). People commonly use both in any situation. Even though grammatically *ça* ("it") is standard French and can also be considered informal, French-speaking people use it every day as much in formal situations as in informal ones when replying to any of the questions asking about their well-being.

#### How to tell someone that you are well:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je vais bien.</i>	"I'm fine."
<i>Je vais très bien.</i>	"I'm very well."
<i>Ça va.</i>	"Fine."
<i>Bien.</i>	"Well."
<i>Très bien.</i>	"Very well."

#### How to tell someone that you are not well:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je ne vais pas bien.</i>	"I'm not fine."
<i>Je ne vais pas très bien.</i>	"I'm not very well."
<i>Ça ne va pas.</i>	"I'm not fine."

<i>Ça ne va pas très bien.</i>	"I'm not very well."
<i>Ça va mal.</i>	"I'm bad."

### Language Focus: Asking or Replying *Ça va ?* or *Ça va.*

We can use another version of the question *Comment ça va ?* ("How are you?"). It is the shortened alternative question *Ça va ?*, meaning "How are you?"

Be aware though, this word order can also be a possible reply to any of the questions asking how a person is.

The difference orally lies in its intonation. When asking *Ça va ?* ("How are you?"), raise your tone on the last word. When answering and telling *Ça va* ("I'm fine."), the intonation falls on the last syllable.

### Eliminating Doubts With Questions

*Est-ce que c'est bien dimanche demain ?* ("Is tomorrow Sunday?")

To eliminate doubts or confirm information required to ask a question, we use a yes/no question, as Cécile does to make sure the next day is Sunday, the day of Joe's departure, in the dialogue with *Est-ce que c'est bien dimanche demain ?* ("Is tomorrow Sunday?")

To form a yes/no question, or in French, *une question fermée* ("a closed question"), with the verb *être* ("to be"), use one of the following options:

<i>Est-ce que/Est-ce qu'</i>	<b>Subject Starting With a Consonant</b>	<b>Verb Form of être</b>	<b>Complement</b>
<i>Est-ce que</i>	<i>c'</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>bien dimanche demain?</i>

### Notes

A. In the question *Est-ce que c'est bien dimanche demain ?* ("Is tomorrow Sunday?"), we can place the word *demain* at the beginning of the question as follows: *Demain, est-ce que c'est dimanche ?*

B. The word *bien* is optional and adds a nuance of a minimized doubt. In other words, the person asking is almost sure that the next day is Sunday. However, the French use both questions equally in everyday French.

Let's take a look at the sentence *Est-ce qu' elle est sur skype ?* ("Is she on Skype?").

<i>Est-ce qu'</i>	<b>Subject</b>	<b>Starting With a Vowel Verb Form of être</b>	<b>Complement</b>
<i>Est-ce qu'</i>	<i>elle</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>sur Skype?</i>

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Est-ce que tu es français ?</i>	"Are you French?"
<i>Est-ce que Cécile est ton professeur ?</i>	"Is Cécile your teacher?"
<i>Est-ce que Joe est étudiant ?</i>	"Is Joe a student?"
<i>Est-ce qu'il est à Paris ?</i>	"Is he in Paris?"
<i>Est-ce qu'elles sont danseuses ?</i>	"Are they dancers?"

<b>Subject</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Complement</b>
<i>C'</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>bien dimanche demain ?</i>

**Note:** The word group *c'est* means "it is." We can use it in yes/no questions as in those above or in affirmative sentences.

<b>Verb</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>Subject</b>	<b>Complement</b>
<i>Est</i>	<i>-</i>	<i>ce</i>	<i>bien dimanche demain ?</i>

**Note:** In this structure, we replace the subject *c'* appearing in the previous word order with its full form *ce* because the next word starts with a consonant.



**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Tu es français ?</i>	"Are you French?"
<i>Es-tu français ?</i>	"Are you French?"
<i>Il est à Paris ?</i>	"Is he in Paris?"
<i>Est-il à Paris ?</i>	"Is he in Paris?"
<i>Elles sont danseuses ?</i>	"Are they dancers?"
<i>Sont-elles danseuses ?</i>	"Are they dancers?"
<i>Vous êtes paresseux ?</i>	"Are you lazy?"
<i>Êtes-vous paresseux ?</i>	"Are you lazy?"

**Language Tip: Telling and Writing Yes-No Questions**


---

When formulating yes/no questions with the verb preceding the subject, in French this process is called *l'inversion du sujet* ("the subject inversion"). In this process, make sure to add the hyphen between the two words.

**For Example:**

1. **Correct:** *Sommes-nous ici ?*  
"Are we here?" (while pointing at a location on map)
2. **Incorrect:** *Sommes nous ici ?*  
"Are we here?"

**Answering Closed Questions**

*Oui, demain c'est dimanche.* ("Yes, tomorrow is Sunday.")

---

To answer any yes/no questions, or *questions fermées*, an affirmative or negative answer is required.

It can be explicit, as in the dialogue with the word *oui*, meaning "yes," as in the phrase *Oui, demain*

*c'est dimanche* ("Yes, tomorrow is Sunday."). We can also use other expressions to affirm or negate the question, for example with *Bien sûr* ("Of course") replacing the word *oui* ("yes") in *Bien sûr demain c'est dimanche*. ("Of course tomorrow is Sunday.")

We can also imply the yes/no reply with an affirmative statement. For example, Joe could have answered *C'est dimanche demain*. ("It is Sunday tomorrow.")

To form an affirmative statement, always use this word order:

Subject	Verb	Complement
<i>C'</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>dimanche demain.</i>
<i>Je</i>	<i>vais</i>	<i>bien.</i>
<i>Ça</i>	<i>va</i>	<i>bien !</i>
<i>C'</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>super !</i>

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Joe apprend le français.</i>	"Joe learns French."
<i>Cécile parle à Joe.</i>	"Cécile speaks to Joe."
<i>Joe part demain.</i>	"Joe leaves tomorrow."
<i>Joe va en France.</i>	"Joe goes to France."

## Cultural Insight

### The Importance of Showing Respect in France

Anywhere you are, you should make respect a priority. Students follow this rule as well in France when interacting with their teachers. To show respect to their teachers, students greet them with a *Bonjour, madame* ("Hello, ma'am") or *Bonjour, monsieur* ("Hello, sir"). Teachers usually call their students by their last names only.

Sometimes, once the relationship between the teacher and students develops and becomes friendlier,

the teacher may request the students to call her or him by her first name, even though this is only done on a case-by-case basis. However, most often, to keep a proper distance, teachers do not change the students' habit. Students may also use *madame* ("ma'am) or *monsieur* ("sir") followed by the professor's last name if they know it.



## Gengo French S1

How to Make a First Impression in French That Will Last a Lifetime!

2

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	6

## French

---

Manon	Ça m'énerve la la la la...
Joe	Excusez-moi ?
Manon	Oh, pardon. Allez-y. Je vous en prie.
Joe	Bonjour. Moi c'est Joe.
Manon	Bonjour. Moi c'est Manon.
Joe	Excusez-moi. Vous pouvez répéter plus lentement, s'il vous plaît ?
Manon	Ma-non.
Joe	Manon.
Manon	C'est ça. Mais vous pouvez m'appeler Mano.
Joe	Mano. Enchanté.
Manon	Moi aussi.

## English

---

Manon	It gets on my nerves. La la la la.
Joe	Excuse me?
Manon	Oh, sorry. Go on, please.
Joe	Hello. I'm Joe.
Manon	Hello. I'm Manon.
Joe	Excuse me. Can you repeat more slowly please?
Manon	Ma-non.
Joe	Manon.
Manon	That's it. But you can call me Mano.
Joe	Mano. Nice to meet you.
Manon	Me too.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
excusez-moi	excuse me	phrase	
pardon	pardon, excuse me		
Je vous en prie.	You are welcome, please	expression	
bonjour	hello	noun	masculine
lentement	slowly	adverb	
C'est ça.	that's it	phrase	

Enchanté(e).	Pleased / Nice to meet you.	adjective	Enchantée (feminine)
Allez-y	Go ahead	phrase	
s'il vous plaît	please (formal)	expression	
répéter	to repeat	verb	
pouvoir	can	infinitive verb	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Excusez-moi avez-vous du pain ?*

"Excuse me; do you have some bread?"

*Pardon, je suis désolé.*

"Excuse me; I'm sorry."

*Je vous en prie, entrez.*

"Please, come in."

*Bonjour Monsieur.*

"Hello, sir."

*Bonjour Madame.*

"Hello, ma'am."

*Il marche lentement.*

"He walks slowly."

*La vie, c'est ça !*

"Life, that's it!"

*Elle est enchantée de vous voir.*

"She is pleased to see you."

*Il est enchanté de vous rencontrer.*

"He is pleased to meet you."

*Je peux passer? - Allez-y!*

"Can I go? - Go ahead!"

*Vous pouvez me donner un café, s'il vous plaît ?*

"Can you give me a coffee, please?"

*Vous pouvez répéter la question?*

"Can you repeat the question?"

*Je peux lui montrer comment le faire.*

"I can show him how to do it."

*Pardon, vous pouvez me laisser passer ?*

"Excuse me; can you let me go through?"

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is on Making Polite Requests and Introducing Oneself**

*Vous pouvez répéter plus lentement, s'il vous plaît ?*

"Can you repeat slowly, please?"

Many occasions are available daily to express kindness to others. Even though traveling or living in a French-speaking country will be full of awkward situations due to unexpected reactions from natives, reassure yourself that none of the parties involved are at fault, as the cultural differences will surely be the cause. The best way to remedy these frustrated feelings is to accept the challenge, remain calm, and keep a respectful and kind attitude. You will be amazed how people will react positively to you that way.

Many language tools are available to you to help you express your positive intentions, polite attitude, and good manners. One of the basic elocutions is the use of *s'il vous plaît* ("please"), as in *Vous pouvez répéter plus lentement, s'il vous plaît ?* ("Can you repeat slowly, please?")

### Polite Expressions

#### *S'il vous plaît*

---

*S'il vous plaît* means "please," and you can use it in formal situations when you are addressing your interlocutor with the polite pronoun *vous*, the informal "you."

This expression is composed of the contracted form of *si*, meaning "if," with the letter *s-* followed by the apostrophe, as the next word starts with a vowel.

The second element is the pronoun *il*, meaning "it," as in this phrase the word *il* is neutral. The following element of the phrase is *vous*, indicating the formality of the phrase.

Finally, the last element is *plaît* from the verb *plaire*, meaning "please." In other words, *s'il vous plaît* literally means "if you please."

To ask politely for something such as information, make a polite request, or get someone's attention, use *s'il vous plaît*. If you are speaking to someone that you know or that has allowed you to use *tu*, use *s'il te plaît*.

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Monsieur, de l'eau s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Sir, some water, please."
<i>Anne. Passe-moi le sel et le poivre, s'il te plaît.</i>	"Anne. Pass the salt and the pepper, please."
<i>Georges, viens s'il te plait.</i>	"Georges, come please."
<i>Les toilettes, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Restrooms, please."
<i>S'il vous plaît, vous avez de la moutarde ?</i>	"Please, do you have mustard?"

### Language Focus: Other Polite Expressions

---

Other expressions are available to help you demonstrate your good manners.

*Pardon* ("sorry") and *excusez-moi* ("excuse me") are two common phrases you will hear while

listening to French-speaking people. Their usages are interchangeable in everyday life.

We can use *Je vous en prie*, literally "I plead you," in a variety of contexts to show humility and the willingness to be of help without any expected return.

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>Usages</b>
<i>Pardon.</i>	"Sorry."	To interrupt a person; to tell someone you are sorry; to ask for forgiveness
<i>Excusez-moi.</i>	"Excuse me."	To ask for forgiveness; to interrupt a person
<i>Je vous en prie.</i>	"You're welcome." "Don't mention it."	To express that your help was done with humility and without expectations; to allow a person to continue with his or her activities [usually in with the phrase <i>Allez-y</i> ("Go on") or other similar ones.]

### Making Polite Requests

***C'est ça. Mais vous pouvez m'appeler Mano.*** ("That's it. But you can call me Mano.")

When making a polite request, we use *s'il vous plaît* and the verb *pouvoir* to demonstrate your well-mannered expression, as in the dialogue phrase *Vous pouvez répéter plus lentement, s'il vous plaît ?* ("Can you repeat slowly, please?")

If we use the verb *pouvoir* ("can") in the request, we can omit the words *s'il vous plaît*, as in *C'est ça. Mais vous pouvez m'appeler Mano.* ("That's it. But you can call me Mano.")

Using the verb *pouvoir* ("can") adds a nuance of subtlety to the request, making it less direct and straightforward and therefore more polite.

To make a polite request or give a formal authorization, use the verb *pouvoir* at the second plural form, *pouvez*, followed by an infinitive verb, as presented below with the phrases from the dialogue.

<b>Vous</b>	<b>pouvez</b>	<b>Infinitive Verb</b>	<b>complement?</b>
<i>Vous</i>	<i>pouvez</i>	<i>répétez</i>	<i>plus lentement ?</i>
<i>Vous</i>	<i>pouvez</i>	<i>m'appeler</i>	<i>Mano.</i>



**For Example:**

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>Vous pouvez me tutoyer.</i>	"You can call me <i>tu</i> ."
<i>Vous pouvez attendre un instant ?</i>	"Can you wait for a moment?"
<i>Vous pouvez prendre place.</i>	"Please, take a seat."
<i>Vous pouvez venir à 10 heures.</i>	"You can come at ten o'clock in the morning."
<i>Vous pouvez surveiller mes sacs ?</i>	"Can you watch my bags?"

**Language Focus**

Observe the difference between the two sentences presented in the table above.

The question *Vous pouvez répétez plus lentement ?* ("Can you repeat slowly?") is a request identifiable with the question mark. However, the statement *Vous pouvez m'appeler Mano* ("You can call me Mano.") is in fact giving an authorization that allows people to do something; in this case, to call you by your nickname.

**Cultural Insight****Popular French Lyrics**

Helmut Fritz, the assumed stage name of Eric Greff, is a fictitious character who took form and became a reality in the French media less than a year ago. According to Fritz's biography, he was born as the only child to modest German parents. Later, he inherits from his great-grand-uncle the huge sum of 300 million deutsch marks. Though he was rich, he still remained stingy. Nonetheless, he decided to move to Paris and enjoy the life of *la Bourgeoisie* ("the high class"), or those who jet-set from one event to another in the French capital, who dance at trendy discos, and who frequent other popular places to be seen.

Tired of this life without direction, Fritz fell into a depression. He had enough of this life and to alleviate his anxieties he wrote the song *Ca m'énerve* ("It annoys me."). It portrays his German accent and his attitude denouncing the excesses of middle and high class - people who wait in line just for a macaroon, girls who get bangs like those of Kate Moss, those who prefer the more fashionable lip gloss now to red lipstick - in short, everyone who gets on his nerves. *Ca m'énerve* was released in March 2009 and met with immediate success. As of June 2009, Fritz Helmut is still on the list of top hits.



## Gengo French S1

Do People Understand Where You're Coming From?

3

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Phrase Usage	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	12

## French

---

Joe                   Donc, c'est qui ce chanteur ?  
 Manon               Pardon ?  
 Joe                   "Ça m'énerve."  
 Manon               Oh, c'est Helmut Fritz.  
 Joe                   Je vois. Tu viens d'où ?  
 Manon               Je viens de Lyon.  
 Joe                   Ah oui, Lyon.  
 Manon               Et toi ? Tu es américain ?  
 Joe                   Oui.  
 Manon               Tu es de New York ?  
 Joe                   Non, je ne suis pas de New York. Je suis californien.  
 Manon               Oh, vraiment ?

## English

---

Joe                   So, who is this singer?  
 Manon               Sorry?  
 Joe                   "Ça m'énerve."  
 Manon               Oh, it is Edmund Fritz.  
 Joe                   I see. Where are you from?  
 Manon               I'm from Lyon.  
 Joe                   Ah yes, Lyon.  
 Manon               And you? Are you American?  
 Joe                   Yes.  
 Manon               Are you from New York?  
 Joe                   No, I'm not from New York. I come from California.  
 Manon               Oh, really?

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
donc	so, therefore	conjunction	
qui	who, that	relative/ interrogative pronoun	
un chanteur	a singer	noun	masculine

où	where	adverb of place	
venir de	to come from, to have just	verb	
je suis	I am	phrase	
ça m'énerve	it annoys me	phrase	
je vois	I see	phrase	
vraiment	truly, really	adverb	
américain/e	American	adjective	male/female
californien(e)	Californian	adjective	
et toi	and you	interjection	
tu	you (informal)	personal pronoun	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Donc, c'est qui ce chanteur?*

*Donc, tu viens d'où?*

*Je cherche la personne qui a laissé un message.*

*Qui veut un gâteau au chocolat?*

*Bénabar est un chanteur français.*

*Tu habites où, déjà ? J'habite à Paris.*

*Où tu es ?*

*Je viens de France.*

*Je viens de finir mes devoirs.*

*Je suis à la maison.*

*Excusez-moi, je suis maladroite.*

*Oh, vraiment ?*

*C'est vraiment le cas.*

*Tu sais, je suis américain !*

*Arnold Schwarzeneger est le gouverneur de la Californie. Mais il n'est pas californien.*

*Moi, je vais bien. Et toi, ça roule ?*

*Tu as 20 ans.*

*Tu vas au travail.*

"So, who is this singer?"

"So, where are you from?"

"I am looking for the person who left a message."

"Who wants a chocolate cake?"

"Bénabar is a French singer."

"Where do you live, again? I live in Paris."

"Where are you?"

"I come from France."

"I just finished my homework."

"I'm at home."

"Excuse me, I'm clumsy."

"Oh, really?"

"It's really the case."

"You know, I'm American!"

"Arnold Schwarzeneger is the governor of California. But he's not Californian."

"Me, I'm fine. And you, what's up?"

"You are twenty years old."

"You go to work."

## Vocabulary Phrase Usage

Oh, vraiment?

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Getting to Know More About Someone.**

*Donc, c'est qui ce chanteur ?*

"So, who is this singer?"

---

When you sit next to someone on a fifteen-hour-long flight, conversation is a nice way to kill time. It's definitely more interactive than watching two movies, bugging the flight attendant every half hour for more drinks and snacks, or sleeping in weird positions on an airplane seat to be comfortable.

4

In the mid-thirties, traveling became democratized in France after the government announced the first paid vacation. Traveling became especially popular after the Second World War, with increased economic prosperity and the implementation of the five-week vacation for all. The French put together time and money, two essential ingredients for traveling, to make the perfect recipe for tourism. Since then, most French people go on vacation at least once a year, and many from the younger generation between twenty and thirty years of age have traveled out of France for pleasure, internships, or work in order to better themselves and be more competitive in the work market.

Traveling and using transportation to your new destination means meeting new horizons and people. Whether you are shy or extroverted, you'll need to socialize at some point. In order to get to know someone a bit better, you may need to ask a question about a person's background. If you are brave enough, you can ask a direct question, such as *Qui êtes-vous ?* ("Who are you?"), or you can try an icebreaker, as Joe does with the question *Qui est ce chanteur?* ("Who is this singer?").

### Asking Who a Person Is

To ask about a person's basic profile, use "wh-" questions, also known as *questions ouvertes* or "open questions" in French, as illustrated in the dialogue with *Qui est ce chanteur ?* ("Who is this singer?")

To ask about a person's identity, use the question word *qui*, meaning "who," as in the generic question below:

"Who is it?" with the verb *être*.

### Asking Who a Person is Without Any Identification

**Formal:**

<i>Qui</i>	Conjugated Verb <i>être</i>	- Subject ?
<i>Qui</i>	<i>est</i>	- <i>ce ?</i>

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Qui est-il ?</i>	"Who is he?"
<i>Qui sont-ils ?</i>	"Who are they?"
<i>Qui es-tu ?</i>	"Who are you?"
<i>Vous êtes qui ?</i>	"Who are you?"
<i>Qui vous êtes ?</i>	"Who are you?"
<i>Qui suis-je ?</i>	"Who am I?"



**Note:**

Use the hyphen in questions only when placing the verb form *être* before a pronoun or the word *ce* ("this").

**Informal**

<b>Qui</b>	<b>Subject</b>	<b>Conjugated Verb être</b>
<i>Qui</i>	<i>c'</i>	<i>est ?</i>

or

<b>Subject</b>	<b>Conjugated Verb être</b>	<b>qui ?</b>
<i>C'</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>qui ?</i>

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Qui c'est, Marc?</i>	"Who is he, Mark?"
<i>Marc, c'est qui ?</i>	"Mark, who is he?"
<i>La femme en blanc c'est qui ?</i>	"The woman in white, who is she?"
<i>Ce chanteur, qui c'est ?</i>	"This singer, who is it?"

**Asking Who a Person is With an Identification**

When you and your interlocutor know which person you are referring to, as shown in the dialogue with the reference to the singer interpreting *Ça m'énerve*, and you wish to define the person by his name, occupation, or any other information, use the question structure with the verb *être* ("to be") and the question word *qui* ("who") below:

<b>Qui</b>	<b>Conjugated Verb être</b>	<b>Subject</b>
<i>Qui</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>ce chanteur?</i>

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Qui est Michèle ?</i>	"Who is Michèle?"
<i>Qui sont les frères Lumières ?</i>	"Who are the brothers Lumières?"
<i>Qui est la femme en blanc ?</i>	"Who is the woman in white?"
<i>Qui est le journaliste ?</i>	"Who is the reporter?"

**Answering a Question About a Third Person's Identity**

*Oh, c'est Helmut Fritz.* ("Oh, it's Helmut Fritz.")

---

To answer any questions about a third person's identity, use *c'est* ("it's"), as with the phrase *C'est Helmut Fritz* ("It is Helmut Fritz.") from the dialogue followed by the appropriate information.


**Identifying People in a Statement**


---

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>



<i>Qui est-il ? C'est Helmut Fritz.</i>	"Who is he? It is Helmut Fritz."
<i>Qui c'est, Marc? C'est mon ami.</i>	"Who is he, Mark? It's my friend"
<i>Marc, c'est qui ?</i>	"Mark, who is he?"
<i>La femme en blanc, c'est qui ? C'est Michèle.</i>	"The woman in white, who is she? It's Michèle."
<i>Ce chanteur, qui c'est ? C'est Helmut Fritz.</i>	"This singer, who is it? It is Helmut Fritz."
<i>Qui est Michèle ? C'est mon amie canadienne.</i>	"Who is Michèle? It is my Canadian friend."
<i>Qui est la journaliste ? C'est Anne Sinclair.</i>	"Who is the reporter? It is Anne Sinclair."

### Asking About a Person's Origin

**Asking *Tu viens d'où ?* ("Where are you from?")**

To find out where a person is from, you can ask more than one question. You can ask a "wh-" question or *question ouverte* ("open question") with the question word *où*, as in *Tu viens d'où ?* ("Where are you from?"). Ask a question with a suspicion about where the person is from, as in *Tu es de New York*; or guess his or her nationality with *Tu es américain ?* ("Are you American?")

To ask a generic question of your interlocutor, use the question "Where are you from?" with the question word *où* ("where") and the subject *tu* ("you").

**To Formulate a Question with *où* ("where"), Different Word Orders Exist**



1. *Tu viens d'où*  
*Tu viens d'où ?*  
 "Where are you from?"
2. *D'où tu viens?*  
*D'où tu viens ?*  
 "Where are you from?"

### Forming *une question fermée* ("a closed question") to Guess About Nationality

---

If you're guessing your interlocutor's nationality, use a yes/no question with the verb *être* and the adjective of nationality as shown below:

1. *Tu es + nationality?*  
*Tu es américain ?*  
 "Are you American?"
2. *Es-tu + nationality?*  
*Es-tu américain ?*  
 "Are you American?"

**Note:** Use the hyphen only when you place the verb form *être* before a pronoun.

**For Example:**

<i>French</i>	"English"
Tu es brésilien ?	Are you Brazilian?
Es-tu brésilien ?	Are you Brazilian?
Tu es russe ?	Are you Russian?
Es-tu coréen ?	Are you Korean?
Tu es chinois ?	Are you Chinese?
Es-tu chinoise ?	Are you Chinese?

### Forming *une question fermée* ("a closed question") to Confirm Your Suspicion

---

If you suspect where the person is from, use a yes/no question with *de/d'* followed by a city, as in *Tu viens de New York ?* ("Are you from New York?"). Use the following structure:

1. *Tu viens de* + **city starting with a consonant?**  
*Tu viens de New York?*  
 "Are you from New York?"
2. *Tu viens d'* + **city starting with a vowel?**  
*Tu viens d'Atlanta ?*  
 "Are you from Atlanta?"

### Culture Tip: Asking to Use *tu* or Keep Using *vous*?

---

Joe and Manon meet quite informally as Joe bravely interrupts Manon while she is singing her favorite tune. Like Joe, when you meet someone informally who is about your age, it is acceptable to use *tu*.

If you're unsure of the situation or you prefer to be safe, ask the question *On peut se dire tu?* ("Can we use *tu*?") or *On peut se tutoyer ?* ("Can we use *tu*?")

If you prefer not to offend your interlocutor, use *vous*.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Vous venez d'où?</i>	"Where are you from?"
<i>Vous êtes américain ?</i>	"Are you American?"
<i>Vous venez de Chicago ?</i>	"Are you from Chicago?"

**Negating Information**

*Je ne suis pas de New York. Je suis californien.* ("I'm not from New York. I'm Californian.")

---

Joe reveals that Manon's assumptions about his origin are wrong, as Joe adds that he isn't from New York but California with the statement *Je ne suis pas de New York. Je suis californien* ("I'm not from New York. I'm Californian.").

To negate information about yourself, use the two words *ne* and *pas* as follows:

***Je ne + suis + pas***

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>

<i>Je ne suis pas de New York.</i>	"I am not from New York."
<i>Je ne suis pas de Minneapolis.</i>	"I am not from Minneapolis."
<i>Je ne suis pas de Boston.</i>	"I am not from Boston."

### Language Expansion

---

When forming a negative statement, make sure to look at the first letter of the conjugated verb. If it starts with a vowel, replace the word *ne* of the negation with its shortened form, the letter *-n*, followed by an apostrophe.

### Subject + *n'* + conjugated verb starting with a vowel + *pas*

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il n'est pas de Paris.</i>	"He isn't from Paris."
<i>Tu n'es pas de New York.</i>	"You are not from New York."
<i>Vous n'êtes pas de Montpellier.</i>	"You are not from Montpellier."
<i>Tu n'es pas ici.</i>	"You are not here."

## Cultural Insight

---

### French Culture Makes You Want to...Sing?

---

Several references to part of French pop culture are made in the song *Ça m'énerve*, meaning "it annoys me."

### Song Reference 1:

French: *J'entre au Costes boire un verre.*

English: "I enter *Costes* for a drink."

The Hôtel Costes is a famous hotel in Paris, located on the street *St-Honore* and best known for its bar and courtyard café. The hotel is now renowned for its opulent design to which the qualification was "all things in excess."

### Song Reference 2:

French: *J'ai un cadeau à faire de chez Zadig & Voltaire, le pull où c'est marqué "Rock."*

English: "I have a gift to make from *chez Zadig & Voltaire*: a pull over with the word 'Rock'."

The line *Zadig & Voltaire* offers trendy clothing whose blended style mixes rock, punk, hippy, and other styles, as well as perfumes, jewelry, and much more with the motto "affordable luxe."

### Song Reference 3:

French: *Ça m'énerve tous ces gens qui font la queue chez Ladurée. Tout ça pour des macarons. Mais bon....il parait qu'ils sont bons.*

English: "It's annoying all these people who wait in line at *La durée* just for macaroons. But well...apparently, they are good."

*Ladurée* in Paris is a famous address to buy luxury cakes and pastries in Paris. It is known for the double-decker macaroon\*, fifteen thousand of which are sold every day. Founded in 1862, the place became famous in 1930 when the founder's grandson, Pierre Desfontaines, invented the double-decker macaroons by sticking two of them together with a creamy ganache as filling.

\*A macaroon is a traditional French pastry, made of egg whites, almond powder, sugar icing, and sugar. This small, sweet pastry came out of the baker's oven of the French courts as round

meringue-like domes with a flat base.



## Gengo French S1

That Is So Cliche...You Did Not Just Say That!

4

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	10



## French

---

Manon	(à l'hôtesse de l'air) Excusez-moi, de l'eau s'il vous plaît.
Joe	Pour moi aussi, s'il vous plaît.
Stewart	Oui Madame, Monsieur.
Manon	Désolée. Donc, la Californie c'est bien. Tout le monde est heureux.
Joe	(il rit) Lyon est bien aussi. Et qu'est-ce que tu fais à Lyon?
Manon	Je suis ingénieur.
Joe	Tu peux répéter?
Manon	Je suis ingénieur.
Joe	Je ne comprends pas, désolé.
Manon	"Ingénieur", en anglais, c'est Engineer.
Joe	Tu peux parler anglais?
Manon	Oui, un peu.
Joe	(commence à discuter en anglais)

## English

---

Manon	(to flight attendant) Excuse me, some water please.
Joe	Me too, please.
Flight attendant	Yes ma'am, sir.
Manon	Sorry. So, California is nice. Everybody is happy.
Joe	(laughs) Lyon is nice too. And what do you do in Lyon?
Manon	I'm an engineer.
Joe	Can you repeat?
Manon	I'm an engineer.
Joe	I don't understand. Sorry.
Manon	"Ingénieur," in English, is "engineer."
Joe	Do you know how to speak English?
Manon	Yes, a little.
Joe	(starts chatting in English)

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
l'eau	water	noun	
madame	ma'am, Mrs.	noun	feminine

monsieur	sir, Mr.	noun	masculine
être	to be	verb	
heureux/heureuse	happy	adjective	masculine / feminine
tout le monde	everybody	expression	
qu'est-ce que / qu'est-ce qu'	what	question word	
faire	to do, to make	verb	
vous	you (formal)	personal pronoun	
ingénieur	engineer	noun	masculine/feminine
comprendre	to understand	verb	
anglais(e)	English	noun	masculine/feminine
parler	to speak, to talk	verb	
un peu	a little	adverb	
moi aussi	me too	phrase	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*L'eau minérale est bonne pour la santé.*

*Bonjour Madame.*

*Je vais à Paris.*

*Monsieur Smith est invité à la conférence.*

*Monsieur Moulin est le président de l'association.*

*Il vaut mieux être seul que mal accompagné.*

*Il semble être heureux.*

*Être ou ne pas être.*

*Heureux d'être venu, il chantait à tue-tête.*

*Elle est heureuse.*

*Il semble être heureux.*

*Qu'est-ce que c'est le Louvre ?*

*Qu'est-ce que tu prépares pour ce soir ?*

*Alors, qu'est-ce que tu fais ?*

*Je fais du surf.*

*Alors, qu'est-ce que tu fais ?*

*Vous êtes ici.*

*Vous vous appelez David.*

*Il est ingénieur pour Airbus.*

*Je suis ingénieur. I am an engineer.*

"Mineral water is healthy."

"Hello, ma'am."

"I go to Paris."

"Mr. Smith is invited to the conference."

"Mr. Moulin is the president of the association."

"It is worth more to be alone than badly accompanied."

"He seems to be happy."

"To be or not to be."

"'Happy to have come,' he sang at the top of his voice."

"She is happy."

"He seems to be happy."

"What is the Louvre?"

"What are you preparing for this evening?"

"So, what are you doing?"

"I surf."

"So, what are you doing?"

"You are here."

"You are called David."

"He's an engineer for Airbus."

"I am an engineer."

*Je comprends le français.*

*Mon ami anglais vient de Londres.*

*L'anglais est la langue des affaires.*

*Tu parles espagnol ?*

*Je veux un peu de fromage.*

*Moi aussi, je suis anglais.*

"I understand French."

"My English friend comes from London."

"English is the language of business."

"Do you speak Spanish?"

"I want a little cheese."

"Me too, I am English."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is How to Ask About Professions and Describing Places.**

***Et toi, qu'est-ce que tu fais à Lyon ?***

**"And you, what do you do in Lyon?"**

---

When meeting someone for the first time after exchanging names, frequently, one of the next questions asks about the person's profession.

France's job market and job profiles differ greatly from those of other countries. Rather than specialize in one task, French jobs are usually defined by their multitasking nature. For example, *un technico-commercial*, the French equivalent of a junior sales representative, will be in charge of contacting new prospects and taking care of developing and following his existent customer database. The vertical structure of an organization is more obvious than the horizontal one.

So when you ask the question "What do you do?" to a French native, you will certainly discover some unusual work ethics, job titles, and profiles you may not have heard before.

To ask about a person's job, use the question words *qu'est-ce que* with the verb *faire*, as illustrated in the dialogue when Joe asks Manon *Et qu'est-ce que tu fais à Lyon?* to learn about she does for a living.

*Qu'est-ce que tu fais ?* ("What do you do?")

---

This very common question is part of the standard French register, and we can break it into the following parts:

1. The question word *Qu'est-ce que*. It means "what," and we can use it to ask any question to which the answer will vary according to each person or situation. This is also called an "open question" or "wh-" question in English.
2. The subject *tu*. Here, it is the pronoun *tu*, the equivalent of the informal "you."
3. The verb form *fais* (from the infinitive *faire*) conjugated at *l'indicatif présent* ("the present tense") formed according to the subject *tu* of the second person singular.

This question can vary in structure as follows:

<b>Formality</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
Formal	<i>Que fais-tu ?</i>	"What do you do?"
Informal	<i>Tu fais quoi ?</i>	"What do you do?"

**Formal:** In the first question, *qu'est-ce que* is transformed with its formal equivalent *que*, meaning "what." Note the inversion of the subject and the verb, another mark of formality in the French language.

**Informal:** In the second question above, *qu'est-ce que* is transformed with its informal question word *quoi*, meaning "what." Note here that even though the question word order (subject-verb-question word) and the use of *quoi* denote the informality of the question, the pronoun *vous* shows respect to the speaker.

**NOTE:** In order of formality from least to most:

1. Informal:

*Tu fais quoi ?*

"What do you do?"

2. Standard:

*Qu'est-ce que tu fais ?*

"What do you do?"

3. Formal:

*Que fais-tu ?*

"What do you do?"

### Dialogue Expansion: Asking About Someone's Job Formally

---

If you are in a more formal setting, simply exchange the formal "you" (*vous*) for the informal "you" (*tu*) as follows:

1. Informal:

*Vous faites quoi ?*

"What do you do?"

2. Standard:

*Qu'est-ce que vous faites ?*

"What do you do?"

3. Formal:

*Que faites-vous ?*

"What do you do?"

***Je suis ingénieur.*** ("I'm an engineer.")

If someone asks you this question, you will certainly need to give an answer. To be able to tell someone your profession, use the verb *être* in a simple phrase. We can structure this positive statement as follows:

### Subject + verb *être* + job

Note that in French, no article is necessary in front of the profession as it is in English.

### For Example:

<b>French (masculine / feminine)</b>	<b>"English"</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Un(e) secrétaire</i>	"A secretary"	<i>Je suis secrétaire.</i>	"I'm a secretary."
<i>Un(e) attaché(e) commercial</i>	"A sales representative"	<i>Je suis attaché commercial.</i>	"I'm a sales representative."
<i>Un graphiste</i>	"A graphic artist"	<i>Je suis graphiste.</i>	"I'm a graphic artist."
<i>Un directeur/une directrice</i>	"A director"	<i>Je suis directeur.</i>	"I'm a director."
<i>Un assistant/une assistante</i>	"An assistant"	<i>Je suis assistante.</i>	"I'm an assistant."
<i>Un caissier/une caissière</i>	"A cashier"	<i>Je suis caissier.</i>	"I'm a cashier."
<i>Un serveur/une serveuse</i>	"A waiter"/"waitress"	<i>Je suis serveur.</i>	"I'm a waiter."
<i>Un infirmier/une infirmière</i>	"A nurse"	<i>Je suis infirmière.</i>	"I'm a nurse."

<i>Un consultant juridique</i>	"A juridical consultant"	<i>Je suis consultant juridique.</i>	"I'm a juridical consultant."
<i>Un réceptionniste</i>	"A receptionist"	<i>Je suis réceptionniste.</i>	"I'm a receptionist."

**Note:** These are only generic jobs. If you'd like to know how to say your specific job title, leave us a comment in the lesson on FrenchPod101.com and we'll be glad to assist you.

***Tout le monde est heureux.*** ("Everybody is happy.")

To get to know someone's culture, French people often ask for descriptions of customs and people.

French people generally have great living conditions. Even though they still complain, especially when social advantages are taken away from them and the fact that they want more (but who doesn't ...), they are generally happy. The French social security system takes care of their health. Their cars are insured, they have a roof over their heads, and when they don't have a job, they get help from the government.

When describing people in your native area, you will need to use a word designating a group of people. It can be done with the word *tout*, meaning "all," followed by a noun as in the dialogue statement *Tout le monde est heureux* ("Everybody is happy").

The word *tout* followed by a noun is an indefinite adjective as it designates a whole or the integrality of something. It agrees in gender and number with the noun following it as follows:

<b>Construction</b>	<b>Form of <i>tout</i></b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
Masculine singular	<i>Tout</i>	<i>Tout le monde est heureux.</i>	"Everybody is happy."
Feminine singular	<i>Toute</i>	<i>Tout la famille</i>	"The whole family"

		<i>est contente.</i>	is happy."
Feminine or masculine plural	<i>Tous</i>	<i>Tous les gens sont heureux.</i>	"All the people are happy."
Feminine plural	<i>Toutes</i>	<i>Toutes les filles sont contentes.</i>	"All the girls are happy."

**Note:** To use "happy" in a phrase, you can replace the adjective *heureux* with *content*. Make sure that the adjectives agree in gender and number as shown below:

<b>French</b>	<b>Gender</b>	<b>Number</b>
<i>heureux</i>	masculine	singular
<i>heureuse</i>	feminine	singular
<i>heureuses</i>	feminine or masculine	plural
<i>heureux</i>	feminine	plural

<b>French</b>	<b>Gender</b>	<b>Number</b>
<i>content</i>	masculine	singular
<i>contente</i>	feminine	singular
<i>contentes</i>	feminine	plural
<i>contents</i>	masculine	plural

### Language Expansion: Using *On* ("we") instead of *Tout* ("all")

To include yourself or speak of the people in your area or country, instead of the word *tout* ("all"), you can use the word meaning "we" in informal speech, as in *On est heureux* ("We are happy.").

The pronoun *on* has the same meaning as "we" in English, but the verbs conjugated with *on* (the informal "we") take the third singular person conjugation.



**For Example:**

"We travel by plane."

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>On est heureux.</i>	"We are happy. "
<i>On parle anglais.</i>	"We speak English."
<i>On voyage en avion.</i>	"We travel by plane."

## Cultural Insight

---

### Using (But Not Overusing) English in France

English is quite popular in France.

You can encounter English in many marketing ads or signs. For example, a recent supermarket chain concept appeared in 2005 called "Simply Market." This company's name is obviously greatly inspired by the English language and the trend of using English terms among young adults. Even the company's catchphrase is in English: "Be happy, be Simply."

Many products found in homes were launched in France but have an English name, such as BlueSky, Firstline, GreenCut, Ink Set, Powder Flash, Top Bike Number One, and BootStore.

Despite this trend of using some English terms in everyday French, on the other hand, many French people who are not very good at foreign languages, including English. French people can be reluctant to speak English, especially when English speakers solicit them for help on the French territory. A good way to avoid an icy greeting is to start in French with basic French phrases and ask later on whether they can help you in English.



## Gengo French S1

You Had Better Bring a Short Sleeve T-Shirt

5

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	10

## French

---

Pilote Bonjour à tous. Ici votre commandant de bord. Bienvenue à l'aéroport Roissy-Charles de Gaulle à Paris, France. Il est 9 heures du matin, nous sommes lundi le 2 juin. La température est de 25°C. Bon séjour à tous.

Joe 25 degrés ? Ouh là. Il fait chaud.  
 Manon Oui. J'ai un T-Shirt à manches courtes.  
 Joe Pas moi.

## English

---

Pilot Hello everyone. It is the pilot. Welcome to the Roissy-Charles de Gaulle airport in Paris, France. It is nine o'clock in the morning, it is Monday, June the second. The temperature is 25°C. Have a nice stay.

Joe Twenty-five degrees? Oh. It is warm.  
 Manon Yes. I have a short sleeve t-shirt.  
 Joe Not me.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
bonjour	hello	expression	
tous	all, every	adjective, pronoun	plural
lundi	Monday	noun	masculine
le temps	climate, weather	noun	masculine
température	temperature	noun	feminine
degrés	degrees	noun	masculine
le séjour	stay	noun	masculine
avoir	to have	verb	
chaud(e)	hot, warm	adjective	masculine (feminine)
le T-shirt à manches courtes	the short sleeve t-shirt	noun	masculine
faire	to do, to make	verb	



un commandant de bord	a pilot, a captain	noun	masculine
-----------------------	--------------------	------	-----------

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

<i>Bonjour Madame.</i>	"Hello, ma'am."
<i>Ils sont tous sympas.</i>	"They are all nice."
<i>Je fais les courses tous les samedis.</i>	"I go grocery shopping every Saturday."
<i>Lundi, je vais à Paris.</i>	"I'm going to Paris on Monday."
<i>Le lundi de pâques est toujours un lundi.</i>	"Easter Monday is always on a Monday."
<i>Le temps est froid.</i>	"The climate is cold."
<i>La température dépasse les 30 degrés.</i>	"The temperature is over 30°C."
<i>La température dépasse les 30 degrés.</i>	"The temperature is over 30°C."
<i>Les étrangers vivant en France ont une carte de séjour.</i>	"Foreigners living in France have a residence permit."
<i>L'hôtel est inclus dans votre séjour.</i>	"The hotel is included in your stay."
<i>Il a une voiture.</i>	"He has a car."
<i>J'ai trente-trois ans.</i>	"I am thirty-three years old."
<i>Excusez-moi avez-vous du pain ?</i>	"Excuse me; do you have some bread?"
<i>Mon thé est trop chaud!</i>	"My tea is too hot!"
<i>Je fais un gâteau.</i>	"I am making a cake."
<i>Je peux lui montrer comment le faire.</i>	"I can show him how to do it."
<i>Le commandant de bord est compétent.</i>	"The pilote is competent."

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is on How to Say the Time, Temperature, and What You Own With the Verb *Avoir* ("to have").**

***Il est 9 heures du matin.***

**"It is nine o'clock in the morning."**

Time is a human concept shared universally. The conception of time is directly related to the conception of reality and therefore lifestyle. Because of this, we regard time differently from one country to another.

Overall, in France, time is respected in business or personal life with a tolerance from ten to fifteen

minutes. In other words, if you show up a few minutes late to a meeting or a dinner in a French household, nobody will hold it against you. On the contrary, if you regularly show up at the exact time, you may be the subject of jokes for being too rigid and not being flexible, if you are among people who feel comfortable enough around you to make fun of you.

So to make sure to understand what time it is when you ask a French speaker, follow these steps.

### Telling the Time

When telling the time, always use the neutral construction *Il est* ("it is") to announce the time as in the dialogue with *Il est 9 heures du matin*, followed by a number from one to twenty-four for the twenty-four hour time frame and from one to twelve for the twelve- hour time frame.

Number	French
1	<i>un</i>
2	<i>deux</i>
3	<i>trois</i>
4	<i>quatre</i>
5	<i>cinq</i>
6	<i>six</i>
7	<i>sept</i>
8	<i>huit</i>
9	<i>neuf</i>
10	<i>dix</i>
11	<i>onze</i>
12	<i>douze</i>
13	<i>treize</i>
14	<i>quatorze</i>
15	<i>quinze</i>
16	<i>seize</i>
17	<i>dix-sept</i>
18	<i>dix-huit</i>
19	<i>dix-neuf</i>

20	<i>vingt</i>
21	<i>vingt et un</i>
22	<i>vingt-deux</i>
23	<i>vingt-trois</i>
24	<i>vingt-quatre</i>

### Using the Twenty-Four Hour Time Frame

---

Telling the full hour: *Il est + time + heures.*

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>
<i>Il est 10 heures.</i>
<i>Il est 13 heures.</i>
<i>Il est 17 heures.</i>

Telling the time by half hour: *Il est + time + heures + et demi.*

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>
<i>Il est 11 heures et demi.</i>
<i>Il est 14 heures et demi.</i>
<i>Il est 18 heures et demi.</i>

Telling the time by quarter before the hour: *Il est + time + heures + moins le quart.*

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>
<i>Il est 15 heures moins le quart.</i>
<i>Il est 16 heures moins le quart.</i>
<i>Il est 19 heures moins le quart.</i>

Telling the time by quarter after the hour: *Il est + time + heures + et quart.*

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>
<i>Il est 20 heures et quart.</i>
<i>Il est 22 heures et quart.</i>
<i>Il est 23 heures et quart.</i>

**Using the Twelve-Hour Time Frame**

Telling the time in the morning: *Il est* + time + *heures* + *du matin*.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>
<i>Il est 6 heures du matin.</i>
<i>Il est 8 heures du matin.</i>
<i>Il est 3 heures du matin.</i>

Telling the time in the afternoon: *Il est* + time + *heures* + *de l'après-midi*.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>
<i>Il est 1 heure 10 de l'après-midi.</i>
<i>Il est 5 heures de l'après-midi.</i>
<i>Il est 2 heures de l'après-midi.</i>

**Language Focus: *Midi* ("noon") and *minuit* ("midnight") and Some Minutes**

To tell the time in the middle of the day, use *Il est midi* ("It is noon.").

To tell the time in the middle of the night, use *Il est minuit* ("It is midnight.")

To tell the exact time, use *Il est* + numbers of hours + *heures* + numbers of minutes.

**For Example:**

**1:18 am**

<i><b>French</b></i>
<i>Il est 1 heure 18.</i>
<i>Il est 13 heures 18.</i>
<i>Il est 1 heure 18 du matin.</i>

**5:44 pm**

<i><b>French</b></i>
<i>Il est 5 heure 44.</i>
<i>Il est 17 heures 44.</i>
<i>Il est 5 heures 44 du matin.</i>

For *midi* or *minuit*:

*Il est midi/minuit* + number of minutes.

**For Example:**

1. 12:12 p.m.  
*Il est midi 12.*  
"It is noon and 12 minutes."
2. 12:36 a.m.  
*Il est minuit 36.*  
"It is midnight and 36 minutes."

***La température est de 25 degrés Celsius. ("It is twenty-five degrees Celsius.")***

---

When arriving in a foreign country after hours and hours of flight, it is nice for the pilot to warn you





about the exterior temperature as we see in the dialogue. Manon is prepared, as she tells Joe she has a t-shirt after the pilot announces the temperature with *La température est de 25 degrés Celsius* ("The temperature is 25 degrees Celsius.").

To tell the temperature, use:

### Temperature above freezing:

*La température est de + number + degrés.*

#### For Example:

1. *La température est de 15 degrés.*
2. *La température est de 31 degrés.*

### Temperature below freezing:

*La température est de moins + number + degrés.*

#### For Example:

1. *La température est de moins 12 degrés.*
2. *La température est de moins 5 degrés.*

### Culture & Language Tip: Temperature equivalents - Fahrenheit vs. Celsius

°F	°C
- 40	- 40
0	-17.8

5	-15
32	0
41	5
50	10
68	20
95	35
200	93
348	175

Another way we can announce the temperature is to use *Il fait*, literally "he does" but translated as "it is," followed by the temperature.

1. Temperature above freezing: *Il fait* + number + *degrés*.
2. Temperature below freezing: *Il fait moins* + number + *degrés*.

***J'ai un T-shirt à manches courtes.* ("I have a short sleeve T-shirt.")**

After the pilot announces the temperature, once the plane has landed in Paris, Manon feels relieved that she has the right clothes as she says *J'ai un T-shirt à manche courtes*. "I have a short sleeve t-shirt." By using *J'ai*, she tells about what she possesses with the present tense form of the verb *avoir* ("to have").

In order for you to say what you possess, use:

*J'ai* + article + noun.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>J'ai une voiture.</i>	"I have a car."
<i>J'ai un fils.</i>	"I have a son."
<i>J'ai un appartement.</i>	"I have an apartment."

<i>J'ai une valise.</i>	"I have luggage."
<i>J'ai la réponse.</i>	"I have the answer."
<i>J'ai le guide Michelin.</i>	"I have the Michelin guide."

## Cultural Insight

---

### French Currency

---

The Euro is the second currency for transaction after the dollar, and since 2006 is the first in numbers of bills circulating with 610 milliards d'euros.

The euro is implemented in bills and coins quite similar to the way of the American dollar in regards to the euro division for coins being in .01, .02, .05, .10, .20, .50, 1.0, and 2.0 euro cents and bills in 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 200, and 500 euros.

While in France, you will encounter coins with one side portraying a common design and the other a specific image for each European country that distributes them. Therefore, the coins from France will be slightly different on one side from the ones originating in the other European countries. Observe them and you will learn a lot about the culture and history of the country you are in.



## Gengo French S1

Don't Miss Your Chance! How to Close the Deal in French

6

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	10

## French

---

Annonceur	Personnes avec passeports étrangers par ici.
Joe	Eh bien, enchanté.
Manon	Moi aussi, enchantée.
Joe	Au fait, voilà ma carte de visite. C'est mon adresse email, et ça, c'est mon numéro de téléphone.
Manon	Merci. J'ai une carte de visite aussi. Tiens, mon adresse email ..., mon numéro. Envoie-moi un mail.
Joe	Merci.
Manon	Merci. Bon séjour en France.
Joe	Salut.

## English

---

Announcer	Foreign passport holders this way.
Joe	Well, it was nice to meet you.
Manon	Same here. Nice to meet you.
Joe	By the way, here is my business card. Here is my e-mail address and here is my phone number.
Manon	Thank you. I have a business card too. Here you are. Send me an e-mail.
Joe	Thank you.
Manon	Thank you. Enjoy your stay in France.
Joe	Bye.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
un étranger	a foreigner	noun	masculine
un passeport	a passport	noun	masculine
tiens	here you go, here it is	expression	
un e-mail	an e-mail	noun	masculine
une adresse e-mail	an e-mail address	noun	feminine
un numéro de téléphone	a telephone number	noun	masculine
une carte de visite	a business card	noun	feminine
enchanté(e)	nice to meet you, pleased to meet you	adjective	feminine

au fait	by the way	expression	
un séjour	a stay	noun	masculine
voilà	here you are, here it is, here is	preposition	
salut	hi, bye (informal)	noun	masculine
ou	or	conjunction	
Eh bien...	well...	expression	
moi aussi	me too	phrase	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

<i>Les étrangers vivant en France ont une carte de séjour.</i>	"Foreigners living in France have a residence permit."
<i>Voici mon adresse email.</i>	"Here is my e-mail address."
<i>Je voudrais ton numéro de téléphone.</i>	"I'd like your phone number."
<i>Pour me contacter je vous donne ma carte de visite.</i>	"To contact me, I will give you my business card."
<i>Il est enchanté de vous rencontrer.</i>	"He is pleased to meet you."
<i>Elle est enchantée de vous voir.</i>	"She is pleased to see you."
<i>Au fait, tu peux aller chercher le courrier ?</i>	"By the way, can you go get the mail?"
<i>L'hôtel est inclus dans votre séjour.</i>	"The hotel is included in your stay."
<i>Voilà mon collègue préféré.</i>	"Here is my favorite co-worker."
<i>A - Tu as un euro ? B - Voilà!</i>	"A - Do you have a euro? B - There you go!"
<i>Voilà la clef de la voiture ! Elle était sur la table.</i>	"Here is the car key! It was on the table."
<i>Salut Pierre!</i>	"Hi, Peter!"
<i>Salut, Estelle.</i>	"Bye, Estelle."
<i>Je voudrais un chat ou un chien.</i>	"I'd like a cat or a dog."
<i>Eh bien...d'accord!</i>	"Well...okay!"
<i>Moi aussi, je suis anglais.</i>	"Me too, I am English."

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Stating Possession and Making Strong Suggestions.**

*Au fait, voilà ma carte de visite.*

**"By the way, here is my business card."**

---

It is my...oh...or is it yours, maybe? No, it's ours!

Everyone is in possession of something and you should be in the habit of sharing your possessions! Just be careful about the people to whom you lend your cherished possessions. Of course, other possessed objects are meant to be shared and not returned, such as business cards, for example.

In the dialogue, Joe and Manon are going their separate ways after a long flight to Paris. While exchanging farewells, they also exchange their business cards, as shown with Joe's statement *Au fait, voilà ma carte de visite. C'est mon adresse e-mail et ça c'est mon numéro de téléphone* ("By the way, here is my business card. Here is my e-mail address and here is my phone number.")

There are many ways to express possession. One common option is to use possessive adjectives, just like Joe does in the dialogue line presented above. Manon also expresses her possession through possessive adjectives by saying, *Tiens, mon adresse e-mail..., mon numéro* ("Here is my e-mail address and here is my phone number.")

### Express Possessions With Possessive Adjectives

---

To speak of what you own, use possessive adjectives as follows:

#### Possessive Adjective + Noun

To choose the correct possessive adjective, observe these steps:

**Step 1** - Determine the gender (feminine or masculine) and number (singular or plural) of the noun.

**Step 2** - Determine who possesses the object in your phrase.

**Step 3** - Choose, according to the person, gender, and number of the noun, the correct possessive

adjective, as shown in the table below:

**A single object owned:**

	<i>Masculine Possessed Object</i>	<i>Feminine Possessed Object</i>	<i>Feminine Possessed Object Starting With a Vowel</i>
First person singular	<i>mon</i>	<i>ma</i>	<i>mon</i>
Second person singular	<i>ton</i>	<i>ta</i>	<i>ton</i>
Third person singular	<i>son</i>	<i>sa</i>	<i>son</i>

	<i>Masculine Possessed Object</i>	<i>Feminine Possessed Object</i>
First person plural	<i>notre</i>	<i>notre</i>
Second person plural	<i>votre</i>	<i>votre</i>
Third person plural	<i>leur</i>	<i>leur</i>

**Several objects owned:**

	<i>Masculine Possessed Objects</i>	<i>Feminine Possessed Objects</i>
First person plural	<i>nos</i>	<i>nos</i>
Second person plural	<i>vos</i>	<i>vos</i>
Third person plural	<i>leurs</i>	<i>leurs</i>

For example, you'd like to speak about your friend Antoine's car. Knowing that "a car" is *une voiture*:

**Step 1** - The word *une voiture* is feminine (gender) and singular (number).

**Step 2** - The owner is Antoine, being third person singular.

**Step 3** - The correct possessive adjective is *sa*, as the possessed object is one item, is feminine, and is owned by only one owner, Antoine, of the third person singular.



**You'll have:** *la voiture d'Antoine - sa voiture.*

Another example is with your interlocutor Ana's keys. Knowing that "the keys" are *des clés* (spelled *une clef* or *un clé*),

**Step 1** - The word *des clés* is feminine (gender) and plural (number).

**Step 2** - The owner is your interlocutor, Ana, in the second person singular.

**Step 3** - The correct possessive adjective is *tes*, as the possessed object is several items, is plural, and is owned by only one owner, Ana, the person you are speaking to in the second person singular.

**You'll end up with:** *les clés d'Ana (with whom you are speaking) - tes clés.*

**For Example:**

<i>French</i>	"English"	<i>French Possessive</i>	"English"
<i>Le numéro de fax de Henri</i>	"The fax number of Henri"	<i>Son numéro de fax</i>	"His fax number"
<i>La ville de Sandra</i>	"The city of Sandra"	<i>Sa ville</i>	"Her city"
<i>La carte de visite de Monsieur et Madame Dupont</i>	"Mr. and Mrs. Dupont's business card "	<i>Leur carte de visite</i>	"Their business card"
<i>Les numéros de téléphone de Jean et moi</i>	"The phone numbers of Jean and me"	<i>Nos numéros de téléphone</i>	"Our phone numbers"
<i>Les e-mails de la Famille Dupont.</i>	"The Dupont family's e-mails"	<i>Leurs e-mails</i>	"Their e-mails"

*C'est mon adresse e-mail, et ça, c'est mon numéro de téléphone.*

**"Here is my e-mail address and here is my phone number."**

---

When Joe shows Manon his business card, he points out all the contacts included on it. Many pieces of information are printed on his business card, and he enumerates and emphasizes the ones he wants her to note. To enumerate the essential contacts on his business card, he uses the word *et*, meaning "and."



The word *et* ("and") is a conjunction of coordination to add one piece of information after another. Each piece of information you give can be a succession of words including the conjunction of coordination before the last one, as in the following example:

1. *Voilà ma carte de visite avec mon poste de travail, mon adresse, mon e-mail, et mon numéro de téléphone.*

"Here is my business card with my job title, my address, my e-mail, and my phone number."

We can also put two simple phrases together to form two clauses (part of a sentence) joined by the conjunction *et* ("and"). For example, take a look at these two simple phrases:

1. *C'est mon adresse e-mail.*  
"Here is my e-mail address."
2. *Ça, c'est mon numéro de telephone.*  
"Here is my phone number."

They are joined together with the conjunction *et* ("and"), as in *C'est mon adresse e-mail, et ça, c'est mon numéro de téléphone.* ("Here is my e-mail address and here is my phone number.")

To join two simple sentences together with the conjunction *et* ("and"), observe the sequence below:

**Subject + Verb + Complement + , et + Subject + Verb + Complement.**

**Note:** Notice the comma before the conjunction *et* ("and").

**For Example:**

1. *Joe donne sa carte de visite.*  
"Joe gives his business card."
2. *Manon montre à Joe son numéro de téléphone.*  
"Manon shows to Joe her phone number."

These two sentences become:

*Joe donne la carte de visite et Manon montre à Joe son numéro de téléphone.* ("Joe gives his business card, and Manon shows to Joe her phone number.")

1. *Manon remercie Joe.*  
"Manon thanks Joe."
2. *Joe dit au revoir.*  
"Joe says bye."

These two sentences become:

*Manon remercie Joe, et Joe dit au revoir.* ("Manon thanks Joe, and Joe says bye.")

### Dialogue Focus: Usage of *Voilà* and *Tiens*

To show an object or point out someone or a landmark from close or far distances, you can use *voilà* or *tiens*.

You can use *voilà*, a preposition meaning "here is," "this/that is," or "these/those are," to show something to someone, such as in the dialogue when Joe presents his business card to Manon.

In the same way, you can also use the verb form *tiens* from the infinitive verb *tenir* ("to hold") to show an object to your interlocutor. In the dialogue, Manon returns the favor and gives her business card to Joe. While handing it to him, she says *tiens*, which means "here it is" in this context, to catch Joe's attention so he can see it, accept it, and take it from her.

### Make a Strong Suggestion: *Envoie-moi un mail.*

"Send me a mail."

Once the two speakers, Joe and Manon, exchange personal contact information, Manon invites him to

send her an e-mail later on. She strongly suggests Joe to keep contact with her with the phrase *Envoie-moi un mail*. "Send me a mail."

To make strong suggestions or give orders in an informal setting, use the imperative tense at the second person singular.

To form the verb to be conjugated at the imperative tense, take the conjugated verb at the second person singular of the indicative present.

For example, if you'd like to say "take the phone number," use the verb *prendre* ("to take"). Knowing that the verb *prendre* ("to take") formed at the second person singular of the indicative present is *prends*, you'd use the verb form followed by the complement. *Prends le numéro de téléphone*.

#### **Important Note for the Verb in -er of the First Verb Group:**

If the verb you want to conjugate is a verb from the first verb group ending in *-er* at the infinitive form, eliminate the last letter *-s* of the verb form of the second person singular of the indicative present. With the verb *noter*, the conjugated verb form at the second person singular of the indicative present is *tu notes* ("you take note"). Therefore, the second person singular of the imperative of the verb *noter* ("to take note") is *note*, as in "*note l'adresse*" ("take note of the address").

#### **Sample Sentences**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
Compose le numéro de téléphone.	"Dial the phone number."
Tape l'e-mail.	"Type the e-mail."
Vérifie l'adresse.	"Check the address."

#### **Language Note: The Conjugation of *Envoie-moi***

---

To give an order with a verb followed by an indirect object, place a hyphen after the verb, followed by an indirect object pronoun.

For example, Manon says, *Envoie-moi un e-mail*. ("Send me an e-mail.") She gives a strong suggestion to Joe to send her an e-mail by using the imperative.

If she wanted to just make a statement in a simple sentence, she would say *Tu m'envoie un e-mail* ("You send me an e-mail."). The letter *m'* is the indirect object of the verb form *envoie* (from the infinitive *envoyer*, meaning "to send") representing the person speaking, Manon.

When making a strong suggestion or giving an order using the imperative tense, we replace the indirect object *m'* from the simple phrase with *moi*, an indirect object pronoun after the verb, as in the dialogue phrase *Envoie-moi un e-mail* ("Send me an e-mail.").

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Réponds-moi.</i>	"Answer me."
<i>Parle-moi.</i>	"Talk to me."
<i>Téléphone-moi.</i>	"Call me."
<i>Écris-moi.</i>	"Write to me."

## Cultural Insight

---

### ***Tu or Vous?* A Sign of Friendship in France**

---

When meeting a French native for the first time, you will only hear *vous*, the use of the polite "you."

There aren't any rules as to when to switch to the informal *tu* when you are in contact with French natives. Some will put you at ease and let you know it's fine to use *tu* after a little while. Others will use *vous* to keep a distance or your relationship at a formal level if in a business setting for example. In fact, everything depends on how you met the French person in question, the intentions of each of you, and how the relationship develops.

French people usually separate work from personal life and build a closer relationship with colleagues or acquaintances by choice and over time, sharing leisurely activities. A good acceptance sign of starting a new friendship is to be invited to a French household for dinner. Return the favor and you'll have a good chance to build a durable friendship and live the French way of living.



## Gengo French S1

Don't Answer These French Questions Incorrectly!

7

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	11

## French

---

Policier aux frontières	Passeport, s'il vous plaît.
Joe	Bonjour. Voilà.
Policier aux frontières	Durée de votre séjour ?
Joe	Vous pouvez répéter, s'il vous plaît ?
Policier aux frontières	Quelle est la durée de votre séjour ?
Joe	Deux semaines.
Policier aux frontières	Lieu de votre séjour ?
Joe	Hôtel du Louvre.
Policier aux frontières	Motif de votre séjour ?
Joe	Vous pouvez répéter s'il vous plaît ? Lentement, s'il vous plait ?
Policier aux frontières	Quel est le motif de votre séjour ?
Joe	Affaires et tourisme.
Policier aux frontières	D'accord. Merci. Bon séjour en France.

## English

---

Custom Agent	Passport, please.
Joe	Hello. Here you are.
Custom Agent	Length of stay?
Joe	Can you repeat, please?
Custom Agent	What is the length of your stay?
Joe	Two weeks.
Custom Agent	Place of stay?
Joe	Louvre Hotel.
Custom Agent	Purpose of your stay?
Joe	Can you repeat, please? More slowly?
Custom Agent	What is the purpose of your stay?
Joe	Business and sight seeing.
Custom Agent	Okay. Thank you. Enjoy your stay in France.



## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
une durée	a length	noun	feminine
une semaine	a week	noun	feminine
un motif	a reason	noun	masculine
les affaires	belongings, business	noun	feminine plural
le tourisme	the tourism	noun	masculine
Deux semaines	two weeks	phrase	
un lieu	a place	noun	masculine

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*La durée des cours est de 120 heures.*

"The course's length is 120 hours."

*Je travaille la semaine.*

"I work during the week."

*Il est resté à Bordeaux une semaine.*

"He stayed in Bordeaux a week."

*Partir en vacances pendant deux semaines, c'est génial!*

"It's great to take a two week vacation!"

*Le motif de son absence est sa maladie.*

"His reason for absence is sickness."

*L'anglais est la langue des affaires.*

"English is the language of business."

*Tes affaires sont dans la voiture.*

"Your belongings are in the car."

*Le tourisme est l'industrie du voyage.*

"Tourism is the travel industry."

*Cette ville est un lieu idéal pour se reposer.*

"This city is an ideal place to rest."

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Understanding Questions With *Quel/Quelle est* From the French Customs Agent and Asking for Clarification.**

*Passeport, s'il vous plaît.*

"Passport, please."

Going through customs when traveling to a foreign place is part of any airplane trip.

French customs passport verification is done after you exit the plane and follow the sign *Contrôle des*

*passesports* ("Passport Control"). As a foreigner, you will choose the lines *Tous passeports* translated as "All passports" instead of *Citoyens UE (Citoyens Union Européenne)*, meaning "European citizens." Before you reach the booth, you may see the signs indicating *Veillez préparer votre passeport, s'il vous plaît*, meaning "Please have your passport ready," and *Attendez derrière la ligne jaune* ("Wait behind the yellow line.") These basic rules are provided to respect the other travelers and save time.

English-speaking officers conduct the passport control; they are employed by a subdivision of the National French police called *Police aux Frontières*, meaning "Border Police," also shortened to its acronym PAF.

The police officer will ask for your passport by saying *Passeport s'il vous plaît* ("Passport please."). This is a strong suggestion or a firm request.

When asking for a document or an object that someone owns, you can make a short request demanding the object followed by a "please," making the question polite. To formulate a short request about an object another person possesses, use:

***Votre + singular noun + s'il vous plaît.***

**For Example:**

<b><i>French</i></b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Votre sac, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Your bag, please."
<i>Votre manteau, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Your coat, please."
<i>Votre carte bancaire, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Your bank card, please."
<i>Votre réservation, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Your reservation, please."

### Language Note

If you're asking for more than one object, use *vos* ("your") instead of *votre* followed by a plural noun and *s'il vous plaît* ("please") as in *Vos bagages, s'il vous plaît* ("Your luggage, please.").

If you're asking about how someone should do something, as Joe does when asking the officer to speak slowly, use:

**Adverb + *s'il vous plaît*.**

**For Example:**

<i>French</i>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Rapidement, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Fast, please."
<i>Patiemment, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Patiently, please."
<i>Sérieusement, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Seriously, please."
<i>Prudemment, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"Carefully, please."

*Quelle est la durée de votre séjour ?*

"What is the length of your stay?"

The questions the customs officer asks are identical to those you will hear in any country you are entering to verify your identity and intention for being in the territory. If asked in French by the passport control officer, you may hear questions like *Quelle est la durée de votre séjour ?* or its shortened informal version *Durée de votre séjour ?* ("Length of stay?"), which appears in the dialogue.



### Questions With *Quel/Quelle* ("which") and the Verb *être* ("to be")

To understand questions with the question word *quel*, you need to be aware of its meaning, which is literally "which." However, in many questions, such as the ones from the dialogue, we translate *quel* as "what" according to the context.

The word *quel*, when the verb *être* follows it, is an interrogative pronoun asking for information about something or someone. In the question *quel est le motif de votre séjour ?* ("What is the reason for your stay?"), the pronoun *quel* asks about the nature or type of stay the traveler intends to have.

The word *quel* agrees in gender and number with the information asked. For example, as *quel* refers to *un motif* ("a reason"), a masculine and singular noun, the pronoun *quel* has to be masculine and singular as well. To use the correct form of the word *quel*, observe the following table:

Number	Masculine	Feminine
singular	<i>quel</i>	<i>quelle</i>
plural	<i>quels</i>	<i>quelles</i>

When *quel* is placed in questions with the verb *être* ("to be") conjugated at the third person singular form, *est*, meaning "is," make sure to respect the sequence below when the two speakers know what they are speaking about:

*Quel* + *est* + definite article\* + masculine noun?

*Quelle* + *est* + definite article\* + feminine noun?

\*We can substitute the possessive adjective *votre*, meaning "your" in formal situations, for the indefinite article.

**For Example:**

When an officer looks at a passport, he may be confused by the information provided and might not be able to recognize it right away, and he might ask:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Quel est le nom de famille ?</i>	"What is the last name?"
<i>Quelle est votre adresse ?</i>	"What is your address?"
<i>Quelle est la raison ?</i>	"What is the reason?"
<i>Quelle est la date d'expiration ?</i>	"What is the expiration date?"
<i>Quel est votre numéro de passeport ?</i>	"What is your passport number?"

**Note About Question Formation**

The general question formation with *quel* and the verb form *est* presented above has versatile uses in different contexts. In the dialogue, as the officer asks about the reason of Joe's stay with *Quel est le motif de votre séjour ?* ("What is the reason of your stay?"), she adds the compound *votre séjour* ("your stay") to the noun *le motif* ("the reason") to make a clear request forming a compound noun, known in French as *un complément de nom*.

The compound noun *le motif de votre séjour* ("the reason of the stay") is composed of the noun *séjour* ("stay") modifying the noun *motif* ("reason") by adding extra information.

**Compound Nouns in French**

**Durée de votre séjour ? ("Length of stay?")**

When the police officer formulates his questions, they are clear. One way to make a precise description is to use compound nouns, also known in French as *un complément de nom*. In French, we form *un complément de nom* by adding together two nouns, with one modifying the other.

For example, reading *la durée* ("the length") and *la durée de votre séjour* ("your stay length") will provide you with slightly different information. The second word sequence provides more detailed information.

In a formal context, to form a compound noun in French about something your interlocutor possesses, use

**Definite article + noun + *de votre* + noun**

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Le numéro de votre siège</i>	"Your seat number"
<i>La confirmation de votre réservation</i>	"Your reservation confirmation"
<i>La chambre de votre hôtel</i>	"Your hotel room"
<i>Le prix de votre ticket</i>	"Your ticket price"

### Language Focus

In French, when a noun is followed by the preposition *de* and another noun forming a "compound noun" or *un complément de nom*, the preposition *de* generally expresses possession, such as *Le billet de Paola* or *le ticket de bus* ("the bus ticket"), or the origin of a trip, as in *l'avion de Paris*.

***Hôtel du Louvre.***  
**"Louvre Hotel"**

After the French custom agent asks Joe where he will stay, Joe tells him at the "Louvre hotel" with *Hôtel du Louvre*. This phrase could also be written in its more elaborate form as *L'hôtel du musée du Louvre*. In this phrase, the noun *hôtel* is a component of the noun *musée du Louvre* indicating which hotel is being talked about.

To add a component to a noun with another noun, use a contracted article.

**For Example:**

1. noun + *du* + masculine noun
2. noun + *de la* + feminine noun
3. noun + *de l'* + noun starting with a vowel
4. noun + *des* + plural noun

**Examples:**

<b><i>French</i></b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>La place de la ville</i>	"the town square"
<i>L'entrée du parking</i>	"the parking entrance"
<i>Les chambres de l'hôtel</i>	"the hotel rooms"
<i>La description des hébergements</i>	"the accommodation description"

## Language Focus

---

In *durée de votre séjour* ("length of stay") the noun *durée* ("length") refers to the noun *séjour* ("stay"). The noun *durée* is qualified with its component *votre séjour* ("your stay") composed of the possessive adjective *votre* and the noun *sejour* ("stay").

When speaking formally of something possessed and using two nouns in conjunction, use the preposition *de*, meaning "of," followed by the possessive adjective *votre*, as in the dialogue phrases *Motif de votre séjour* ("reason of your stay") and *Lieu de votre séjour* ("place of stay") as follows:

### Noun + *de votre* + Noun

***Bon séjour en France.***

**"Enjoy your stay in France."**

---

At the end of the conversation, the French custom officer wishes Joe to experience a nice stay with *Bon séjour en France*. ("Enjoy your stay in France.")

When referring to feminine countries, always use the preposition *en* as in:



**en + Feminine Country****Examples:**

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>en Belgique</i>	"in Belgium"
<i>en Suisse</i>	"in Switzerland"
<i>en Argentine</i>	"in Argentina"
<i>en Irak</i>	"in Irak"
<i>en Italie</i>	"in Italy"

---

## Cultural Insight

---

**Parisian Airports**


---

The French capital, Paris, possesses two airports.

Paris-Orly airport is located in the south of Paris, France. It has flights to cities in Europe, the Middle East, Africa, the Caribbean, and North America. This airport, which is also called *Orly* in French, is the busiest French airport for domestic traffic.

Paris-Charles de Gaulle Airport, which is *Aéroport Paris-Charles de Gaulle* in French and nicknamed *Roissy* in everyday French, is the most important airport in France. The airport serves as the principal hub for Air France and is located in the northeast of Paris.

It is named after Charles de Gaulle (1890-1970), leader of the Free French Forces during the Second

World War, who became later France's president.



## Gengo French S1

Get What You Want Using French

8

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	7

## French

---

Vendeur de ticket Bonjour.  
 Joe Je vais aux Invalides. À quelle heure est le bus ?  
 Vendeur 10h30.  
 Joe D'accord. Un ticket, s'il vous plaît.  
 Vendeur Cinq euros. Liquide ou carte ?  
 Joe Carte.  
 Vendeur Signez, s'il vous plaît.  
 Joe Le reçu, s'il vous plaît.  
 Vendeur Voici le reçu et le ticket. Arrêt quai numéro six, à dix heures trente.  
 Joe Merci.  
 Vendeur Au revoir !  
 Joe Au revoir !

## English

---

Ticket Seller Hello.  
 Joe I go to the Invalides. At what time is the bus?  
 Ticket Seller Ten-thirty.  
 Joe Okay. A ticket, please.  
 Ticket Seller One euro sixty. Cash or card?  
 Joe Card.  
 Ticket Seller Sign, please.  
 Joe The receipt, please.  
 Ticket Seller Here is the receipt and the ticket. It stops at quay number six at ten-thirty.  
 Joe Thank you.  
 Ticket Seller Bye!  
 Joe Bye!

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
un numéro	a number	noun	masculine
quel/quelle/quels/quelles	which, what	interrogative adjective	
une heure	an hour	noun	feminine

un bus	a bus	noun	masculine
un ticket	a ticket	noun	masculine
un euro	one euro	phrase	
une carte	menu, map, card	noun	feminine
un reçu	a receipt	noun	masculine
un arrêt de bus	a bus stop	noun	masculine
une ligne	a line	noun	feminine
aller à/au/aux/à la/ à l'	to go to	verb	
un	a, an	indefinite article	masculine
ou	or	conjunction	
six	six	adjective	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

<i>J'ai son numéro d'appartement, c'est le trente-six.</i>	"I have her apartment number; it's 36."
<i>Quelle heure est-il?</i>	"What time is it?"
<i>Quelle heure il est ?</i>	"What time is it?"
<i>Tu aimes quel acteur ?</i>	"Which actor do you like?"
<i>Il est dix heures dix.</i>	"It is ten-ten (10:10)."
<i>C'est l'heure de partir.</i>	"It's time to go."
<i>Le premier bus est à cinq heures du matin.</i>	"The first bus is at five o'clock in the morning."
<i>Tiens, j'ai un ticket de bus pour toi.</i>	"Here you go; I have a bus ticket for you."
<i>Ce jouet coûte un euro.</i>	"This toy costs one euro."
<i>Puis-je payer par carte bancaire ?</i>	"Can I pay by credit card?"
<i>Je suis perdu et je n'ai pas de carte !</i>	"I am lost and I have no map!"
<i>La carte des vins, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"The wine list, please."
<i>L'arrêt de bus Trocadéro est à 150 mètres.</i>	"The bus stop Trocadéro is 150 meters away."
<i>Le bus de la ligne trente va du Trocadéro à la Gare de l'Est.</i>	"The line 30 bus goes from the Trocadéro to the East Train Station."
<i>La ligne droite est interminable.</i>	"The straight line is endless."
<i>Je vais à la plage.</i>	"I go to the beach."
<i>Un peu d'eau.</i>	"a little water"
<i>Je voudrais un chat ou un chien.</i>	"I'd like a cat or a dog."
<i>Je voudrais six croissants.</i>	"I'd like six croissants."
<i>Il y a six dés dans le jeu du Yahtzee.</i>	"There are six dice in the Yahtzee game."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Indicating a Destination With the Verb *Aller* ("to go") and Asking at What Time Something Happens.**

*Je vais aux Invalides.*

"I go to the Invalides."

---

Taking the bus in Paris is not such a brainteaser once you understand its layout.

For travelers staying in Paris for a week or less, tickets called "Paris visit" are available for one, two, three, or five consecutive days. They are valid for taking either the subway (symbolized with the uppercase "M" in the middle of a circle), bus, or local suburban trains called RER (symbolized with the uppercase letters "RER" in a dark blue circle). The rate is from about forty-nine euros to ninety-nine euros, depending on the length and zones of validity. There are two delimited zones: one roughly corresponding to the city of Paris itself, and the other to the city and its suburbs, including, for example, Disneyland Park.

4

Once you purchase your transportation ticket in Paris, do not forget to grab free maps of the bus lines and of the subway network. To orient yourself while waiting to take the subway or bus, make sure to determine the number and color of the line you need to take and the final station or stop nearest your destination so you know which direction you need to go.

To express his destination in the dialogue, Joe tells the ticket seller *Je vais aux Invalides* ("I go to the Invalides."). *Les Invalides* refers to a place in Paris with various historical buildings related to French military history, which include several museums and the tomb of Napoléon Bonaparte.

### Indicating a Destination

---

To indicate a destination, use the correct verb form of *aller* ("to go") with the preposition *à* and its derivatives. To formulate the phrase, use the word order indicated and choose the appropriate conjugation of *aller* ("to go") and the correct preposition.

**Subject + Conjugated Verb *aller* + *à/au/à la/à l'/aux* + Destination**

**Verb *Aller* ("to go") at the Indicative Present:**

<b>Construction</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
First person singular	<i>Je vais</i>	"I go"
Second person singular	<i>Tu vas</i>	"You go"
Third person singular masculine	<i>Il va</i>	"She goes"
Third person singular feminine	<i>Elle va</i>	"She goes"
First person plural	<i>Nous allons</i>	"We go"
Second person plural	<i>Vous allez</i>	"You go"
Third person plural	<i>Ils vont</i>	"They go"
Third person plural feminine	<i>Elles vont</i>	"They go"

**Choose the correct preposition: *à/au/à la/à l'/aux***

According to your destination, choose the appropriate preposition:

<b>Preposition</b>	<b>+</b>	<b>Destination</b>
<i>à</i>	+	city
<i>à l'</i>	+	destination starting with a vowel
<i>au</i>	+	masculine destination
<i>à la</i>	+	feminine destination
<i>aux</i>	+	plural destination

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il va à l'avenue des Champs Elysées.</i>	"He goes to the Champs Elysées avenue."
<i>Nous allons à la station de métro.</i>	"We go to the subway station."
<i>Vous allez au stade.</i>	"You go to the stadium."
<i>Je vais à Montpellier.</i>	"I go to Montpellier."
<i>Tu vas aux spectacles de rue.</i>	"You go to the street shows."

***À quelle heure est le bus ? ("At what time is the bus?")***

You can buy a ticket for public transportation in Paris that gives you access to the subway, bus, and suburban trains in subway stations, the RER suburban train stations, and more than fifteen hundred certified businesses, such as bookstores, newspaper stands, or tobacco stores.

At the cashier window, Joe asks when is the next bus with the question *À quelle heure est le bus ?* ("At what time is the bus?")

To ask at what time something will occur, use the question word *À quelle heure* followed by the verb *être* ("to be").

***À quelle heure* + *est* + Singular Definite Article + Noun?**

**For Example:**

<b><i>French</i></b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>À quelle heure est le spectacle ?</i>	"At what time is the show?"
<i>À quelle heure est la soirée ?</i>	"At what time is the evening party?"
<i>À quelle heure est la représentation théâtrale ?</i>	"At what time is the theater representation?"
<i>À quelle heure est l'inauguration ?</i>	"At what time is the inauguration?"

**Language Focus: *Quelle heure* vs. *À quelle heure*.**

Do not confuse *Quelle heure* ("What time") with *À quelle heure* ("At what time").

We use *Quelle heure* ("What time") to ask the time of the day in *Quelle heure il est ?* or *Il est quelle heure ?* Both mean "What time is it?"



We use *À quelle heure* ("At what time") to ask when something is taking place (an event or the departure of a mode of transportation as seen in the dialogue), as in *À quelle heure est la conférence ?* ("At what time is the conference?")

---

## Cultural Insight

---

### **Navigating Paris's Charles de Gaulle Airport**

---

Paris's most important airport, called in French *aéroport Paris Charles De Gaulle* or informally Paris-Charles De Gaulle and also *Roissy*, has three terminals. They are all connected by free shuttle buses.

Terminal 1 handles international flights, excluding those of airline Air France. Terminal 2 has five separate halls denoted by the number two and an additional letter in alphabetic order from A to D and F. Terminal 2F is used exclusively for Air France flights, and the other terminals numbered 2A to 2D hold some Air France flights as well as those of other airlines flying to European destinations. Terminal 3 is where many seasonal charter flights operate from.



## Gengo French S1

Your One Stop Shop for All Your French Needs. / Possibly the Most  
Important Place in France

9

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	6

## French

---

Employé de magasin	Bonsoir.
Joe	Bonsoir.
(Il pose ses articles sur le comptoir.)	
Employé de magasin	Trois bouteilles d'eau, une cannette de jus d'orange et un sandwich. Ce sera tout ?
Joe	(Il remarque quelque chose sur le comptoir) Qu'est-ce que c'est, ça ?
Employé de magasin	Des croissants au jambon. C'est délicieux.
Joe	Alors, un croissant s'il vous plaît.
Employé de magasin	Ça fait 15 euros.
Joe	Tenez.
Employé de magasin	Votre monnaie.
Joe	Merci.

## English

---

Store clerk	Hello.
Joe	Hello.
(places items on the counter)	
Store clerk	Three bottles of water, a can of orange juice, and a sandwich. That will be it?
Joe	(notices pastries at the counter) What is this?
Store clerk	Ham croissants. It's delicious.
Joe	Well, a croissant, please.
Store clerk	It's fifteen euros.
Joe	Here.
Store clerk	Your change.
Joe	Thank you.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
--------	---------	-------	--------

trois	three	adjective	
une bouteille	a bottle	noun	feminine
les bouteilles	bottles	noun	
l'eau	water	noun	
un / une	a, an	indefinite article	
un jus d'orange	an orange juice	noun	
le jambon	the ham	noun	
ça	it, this, that	demonstrative adjective	
la monnaie	the change (coins)	noun	feminine
tenez	here you go, here it is	elocution	
un croissant au jambon	a ham croissant	compound noun	
qu'est-ce que / qu'est-ce qu'	what	question word	
Ce sera tout ?	That's it?	question	
voilà	here you are, here it is, here is	preposition	
merci	thank you	interjection	
le beurre	butter	noun	masculine

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Il a trois ans.*

*Cette bouteille coûte vingt-cinq euros.*

*Les nouveaux bouchons de bouteilles de vin sont en plastique.*

*L'eau minérale est bonne pour la santé.*

*J'ai un euro.*

*C'est une grande plage.*

*"Lonely Planet" est un bon guide de voyage.*

*Je voudrais un jus d'orange.*

*Le jambon fumé est très bon.*

*C'est quoi, ça ?*

*Ça, c'est de l'art.*

*Mademoiselle, vous avez de la monnaie ?*

*Tenez, le voilà. J'ai trouvé mon sac.*

*Nous avons des croissants nature au beurre et des croissants aux amandes.*

*Qu'est-ce que c'est le Louvre ?*

*Qu'est-ce que tu prépares pour ce soir ?*

"He is three years old."

"This bottle costs twenty-five euros."

"The new wine bottle corks are made of plastic."

"Mineral water is healthy."

"I have one euro."

"This is a large beach."

"Lonely Planet is a good travel guide."

"I'd like an orange juice."

"Smoked ham is very good."

"What is this?"

"This is art."

"Miss, do you have change?"

"Here you go, here it is. I found my bag."

"We have plain croissants filled with butter, and almond filled croissants."

"What is the Louvre?"

"What are you preparing for this evening?"

*Alors, qu'est-ce que tu fais ?*

*Voilà mon collègue préféré.*

*A - Tu as un euro ? B - Voilà!*

*Voilà la clef de la voiture ! Elle était sur la table.*

*Mille mercis.*

*Je veux de la confiture, du beurre et de l'eau.*

"So, what are you doing?"

"Here is my favorite co-worker."

"A - Do you have a euro? B - There you go!"

"Here is the car key! It was on the table."

"A thousand thanks."

"I want some jam, some butter, and some water."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Gender of French Nouns and Asking About What an Object Is Using the Demonstrative Pronoun *ça*.**

*Trois bouteilles d'eau, une cannette de jus d'orange et un sandwich.*

**"Three bottles of water, a can of orange juice, and a sandwich."**

---

Today, even though "convenience stores" or *les épiceries* are found only in one commune out of two in France due to the change in consumption habits, French people view shopping in small retail stores in downtown areas as a leisurely activity.

Some small businesses, such as privately owned grocery stores, have suffered due to the large selection large markets offer, whereas others have adapted more easily, such as florists or bakeries in France.

Specialized small food retail store chains and franchises are taking the place of the diminishing small, privately owned grocery stores. The chains specialize in offering discounted or low-priced food products in city centers and neighborhoods near people's residences.

Joe certainly made his purchases in a specialized small food retail store, such as *Shopi* or *Monoprix*.

In the dialogue, after a long ride in a plane and in a bus, Joe decides to grab a few items, which the store clerk enumerates with *Trois bouteilles d'eau, une cannette de jus d'orange et un sandwich*. ("Three bottles of water, a can of orange juice, and a sandwich.")

To designate things, we use nouns. In French, nouns have a gender, either masculine or feminine. To determine the gender of a noun, follow the guidelines below. Keep in mind that the French language has some exceptions to these rules. So don't be surprised if you encounter a noun that doesn't match one of these tips.

### Recognizing Masculine Nouns

When using French, you'll need to use nouns designating either people, objects, or ideas. When doing so, you'll have to determine the noun's gender. To make this task easier, observe the word and look at its suffix, or in other words, look at how the noun ends.

Most nouns are masculine when they end in *-ÈME*, *-ISME*, *-ASME*, *-ACLE*, *-ÈGE*, *-AGE*, or *-MENT*, or when they refer to:

1. trees
2. days, months, or seasons
3. measurements
4. metals or chemical compounds
5. languages
6. words of English origin

#### For Example:

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>un problème</i>	"a problem"
<i>un privilège</i>	"a privilege"
<i>le tourisme</i>	"tourism"
<i>le fromage</i>	"cheese"
<i>l'enthousiasme</i>	"enthusiasm"
<i>le spectacle</i>	"a show"

#### Recognizing Feminine Nouns

Most nouns are feminine when they end in *-SON*, *-ION*, *-TÉ*, *-EUR* (abstract nouns), *-ISE*, *ANCE*, *-ENCE*, *-ENSE*, *-IÈRE*, *-OIRE*, or when they relate to sciences or disciplines.

#### For Example:

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>une boisson</i>	"a drink"
<i>une affirmation</i>	"a statement"
<i>une curiosité</i>	"a curiosity"
<i>une couleur</i>	"a color"
<i>une cerise</i>	"a cherry"
<i>une distance</i>	"a distance"
<i>une expérience</i>	"an experience"

<i>une défense</i>	"a defense"
<i>une cuillère</i>	"a spoon"
<i>une poire</i>	"a pear"
<i>la grammaire</i>	"grammar"
<i>la chimie</i>	"chemistry"

### ***Qu'est-ce que c'est, ça ?* ("What is that?")**

---

At the cash register, Joe sees some pastries unknown to him. Wondering what they are, he asks *Qu'est-ce que c'est, ça ?* ("What is that?")

When confronted by something you cannot name or when pointing to something you do not recognize, use the word *ça*, meaning "it." The word *ça* is a demonstrative pronoun and is neutral and singular. You can use it to refer to an object you do not know, as illustrated in the dialogue, or to an idea or statement previously mentioned. It is the informal form of *cela*, meaning "this"/"that."

To ask about something you don't know how to name in French, use the question *Qu'est-ce que c'est, ça ?* ("What is that?")

### **Language Expansion: *Ça* and *cela***

---

You can only substitute *cela* with *ça* or vice versa when referring to something indefinite that has no gender, such as ideas, states, or events, or something you talked about previously.

#### **For Example:**

1. *Cela vous intéresse de voyager en France?*  
"Does it interest you to travel in France?"
2. *Je vais au concert. Ça t'intéresse ?*  
"I go to the concert. Does that interest you?"

## Cultural Insight

---

### **Easy Shopping in France: Two Kinds of French Convenience Stores**

---

In France, we can separate convenience stores into two classifications. *Les superettes*, or small supermarkets, are usually small retail stores selling essentially food and owned by a corporation. They are present in many neighborhoods in huge cities and offer low-priced items. Some names of these retail stores *Petit Casino*, *Franprix*, *Shopi*, *8 à huit*, and many others.

Another category of convenience stores are the ones owned privately. They are usually referred to as *une épicerie* and families own and operate them. Many of them are operated by immigrants or professional craftsmen who make their own food products from scratch and have expanded their selection of food to cater the needs of their local customers.





## Gengo French S1

How to Stay in Style While in France - Avoid the Tourist Trap

10

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	9

## French

---

Réceptionniste	Bienvenue à l'Hôtel du Louvre.
Joe	Bonsoir. J'ai une réservation.
Réceptionniste	Votre nom, s'il vous plaît ?
Joe	Joe McFly.
Réceptionniste	Vous pouvez l'épeler, s'il vous plaît ?
Joe	J O E M C F L Y
Réceptionniste	Ah oui, Monsieur McFly, vous avez la chambre vingt-trois. Voici votre clef.
Joe	Est-ce qu'il y a internet dans la chambre ?
Réceptionniste	Oui Monsieur. Voici un câble.
Joe	Et est-ce qu'il y a des serviettes ?
Réceptionniste	Oui Monsieur.
Joe	Merci. Pouvez-vous me réveiller demain matin ?
Réceptionniste	Bien sûr. À quelle heure ?
Joe	À sept heures. À quelle heure est le petit-déjeuner ?
Réceptionniste	De six heures à sept heures trente, au premier étage, dans le restaurant.

## English

---

Front desk	Welcome to the Hôtel du Louvres.
Joe	Good evening. I have a reservation.
Front desk	Your name, please?
Joe	Joe McFly.
Front desk	Can you spell it, please?
Joe	J O E M C F L Y
Front desk	Oh yes, Mr. McFly, you have room twenty-three. Here is your key.
Joe	Is there Internet in the room?
Front desk	Yes, sir. Here is a cable.
Joe	And are there towels?
Front desk	Yes, sir.
Joe	Thank you. Can you wake me up tomorrow morning?
Front desk	Of course. At what time?
Joe	At seven o'clock. At what time is breakfast?
Front desk	From six o'clock to seven-thirty, on the second floor in the restaurant.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
avoir	to have	verb	
une réservation	a reservation	noun	feminine
votre	your (formal)	possessive pronoun	masculine or feminine
un nom	a name	noun	masculine
épeler	to spell	verb	
une chambre	a bedroom, a hotel room	noun	feminine
internet	the Internet	noun	masculine
dans	in	preposition	
un câble	a wire, a cable	noun	
une serviette	a napkin, towel	noun	feminine
me / m'	me	personal pronoun of the first person singular	
se réveiller	to wake up	pronominal verb	
un petit-déjeuner	breakfast	noun	masculine
de... à...	from... to...	expression	
j'ai	I have	verb	
sept heures/ 7h	seven o'clock	phrase	
bien sûr	of course	adverb	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Il a une voiture.*

*J'ai trente-trois ans.*

*Excusez-moi avez-vous du pain ?*

*La réservation numéro 2 est confirmée.*

*Votre ami arrive.*

*J'épèle mon nom M-O-R-I-N.*

*J'épèle mon nom M-O-R-I-N.*

*La chambre est grande.*

*La moquette est posée dans la chambre.*

*J'ai internet au bureau.*

*Papa est dans la cuisine.*

*Nous sommes dans la ville de Mexico.*

*Le câble USB pour mon portable est sur la table.*

*Tu as une serviette en papier et une fourchette ?*

*Les serviettes de salle bains sont dans le placard.*

*Je m'arrête chez le boucher.*

"He has a car."

"I am thirty-three years old."

"Excuse me; do you have some bread?"

"The reservation number two is confirmed."

"Your friend is coming."

"I spell my name M-O-R-I-N."

"I spell my name M-O-R-I-N."

"The hotel room is big."

"The rug is installed in the bedroom."

"I have the Internet at the office."

"Dad is in the kitchen."

"We are in Mexico City."

"The USB cable for my cell phone is on the table."

"Do you have a paper napkin and a fork?"

"Towels are in the closet."

"I stop at the butcher."

*Je me douche le matin.*

*Je me réveille à sept heures demain.*

*Le petit-déjeuner est servi de six heures à dix-huit heures.*

*C'est ouvert de 6 h à 18 h.*

*Je vais de Toulon à Saint Tropez en bus.*

*J'ai une voiture.*

*Je me réveille à sept heures demain.*

*J'aime Paris, bien sûr!*

"I take a shower in the morning."

"Tomorrow, I am waking up at seven o'clock."

"Breakfast is served from six o'clock in the morning to six o'clock in the evening."

"It is open from six o'clock AM to six o'clock PM."

"I go from Toulon to Saint Tropez by bus."

"I have a car."

"Tomorrow, I am waking up at seven o'clock."

"I like Paris, of course!"

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Expression *il y a* and the Prepositions *dans, à, au, de...à...***

***Est-ce qu'il y a internet dans la chambre ?***

**"Is there Internet in the room?"**

---

4

In most hotels you'll stay at in France, you will have access to the Internet. Depending on your budget and the purpose of your stay in France, you can find many different types of hotels to accommodate you, from the charm of the local hotel that reflects the local architecture or bed and breakfast to a low-budget chain hotel near the freeways. To avoid tourist traps, a good tip is to ask the receptionist, a local inhabitant, where he or she likes to go to eat traditional food or about the places he or she likes to hang out. That way, you will most likely find out about the trendy places where the locals go.

When making hotel reservations or arriving in your hotel with your room voucher at hand, you'll probably want to check whether the amenities you are looking for are available. In the dialogue, Joe asks the receptionist whether there is an Internet connection in the room and whether some towels are available.

To enumerate, make an inventory in simple terms, or check the availability of amenities or services in a hotel, use the phrase *il y a*, meaning "there is" or "there are." To inquire about the availability of an object, use one of the three question structures below:

**Question with *Est-ce que*:** *Est-ce qu'il y a* + indefinite article + noun ?

- **Intonation question:** *Il y a* + indefinite article + noun ?

- **Subject-verb inversion question:** *Y-a-t-il* + indefinite article + noun ?

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Est-ce qu'il y a un réfrigérateur ?</i>	"Is there a refrigerator?"
<i>Il y a une piscine ?</i>	"Is there a swimming pool?"
<i>Y-a-t-il un sèche-cheveux ?</i>	"Is there a hair dryer?"
<i>Il y a des couvertures ?</i>	"Are there any blankets?"
<i>Est-ce qu'il y a une salle de sport?</i>	"Is there a gym?"
<i>Y-a-t-il des bouteilles de shampooing?</i>	"Are there any bottles of shampoo?"

### Language Expansion: Choosing the Correct Article Type When Talking About Countable and Non-countable Things With *Il y a*

When talking about non-countable things as shampoo, use a partitive article: *du* with masculine nouns, *de la* with feminine nouns, and *de l'* with nouns starting with a vowel.

**For Example:**

1. *Il y a du shampooing, de la crème à raser et de l'eau.*  
"There is shampoo, shaving cream, and water."

However, if you use counters (something you can count), such as a bottle or a sample, use an indefinite article: *un* ("a") with masculine singular nouns, *une* ("a") with feminine singular nouns, and *des* ("some") with plural nouns.

**For Example:**

1. *Il y a une bouteille de shampoing, un échantillon de crème à raser et des bouteilles d'eau.*  
 "There is a bottle of shampoo, a sample of shaving cream, and some bottles of water."

### *À sept heures.* ("At 7:30 a.m.")

---

To be able to talk about time, places, and locations of things, or where you are, you must use prepositions, such as *à* ("to," "at," or "in") or *dans* ("in").

Some prepositions, such as *dans* (meaning "in" or "inside of"), are easy to understand because they have only one usage. Others, such as *à*, are more complex, as we use them in a variety of contexts (e.g., *à* + city; *à* + time; *à* + distance) and grammatical structures (e.g., verb + *à*).

So you can better understand how to use prepositions, we describe them according to their functions. In this dialogue, we use prepositions to indicate time and location.

Joe indicates the time of seven-thirty a.m. to the receptionist with *À sept heures* ("At seven-thirty a.m.") to let him know to wake him up at seven in the morning. To indicate a time when something will happen, use the preposition *à* (the French equivalent of "at") in the previously mentioned context.

### **Stating The Exact Time of Events With *à* and *de...à...***

---

To state an exact time to do something or when something will happen or start, use the following construction:

#### ***à* + Hour**

**Note:** We write the hours in French on signs with the number of the hour followed by the letter *h*,

which is a contraction of the word *heure(s)*, meaning "hour(s)," and the number of minutes, as in *19h45* ("seven-forty-five p.m."), or *7h15* ("seven-fifteen a.m.").

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il commence à 9h.</i>	"He starts at nine o'clock."
<i>Il fait chaud à 13h.</i>	"It is hot at one o'clock p.m."
<i>J'écoute les informations à 19 h.</i>	"I listen to the news at seven o'clock p.m."
<i>Les français regardent le journal à 20 h.</i>	"French people watch the TV news at eight o'clock p.m."

### Stating a Limited Time Frame:

*De six heures à sept heures trente, au premier étage, dans le restaurant.* ("From 6 to 7:30, on the 2nd floor, in the restaurant.")

To state a period of time, use the preposition *de* ("from") for the start and *à* ("to") for the end, as in:

### *de* + Hour *à* + Hour

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Le restaurant est ouvert de 6h à 23h.</i>	"The restaurant is open from six o'clock a.m. to eleven o'clock p.m."
<i>Le stationnement est interdit de 8h30 à 16h30.</i>	"Parking cars is forbidden from eight-thirty a.m. to four-thirty p.m."
<i>La séance est de 20h30 à 22h15.</i>	"The session is from eight-thirty p.m. to ten-fifteen p.m."
<i>Le petit-déjeuner est servi de 6h à 7h30.</i>	"Breakfast is served from six o'clock a.m. to seven-thirty a.m."

### Stating a Location With *dans* and *au*

---

The clerk answered Joe's question about where to eat breakfast by saying *au premier étage, dans le restaurant* ("on the first floor in the restaurant") using the prepositions of location *au* and *dans*.

### Indicating That Something Is Inside of a Place

---

The preposition *dans* (translated as "in") indicates a location inside of a place. We use it in the sequence shown below:

#### *dans* + Definite Article + Place.

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>La reception est dans le hall d'entrée.</i>	"The reception is in the entry hall."
<i>Je suis dans le couloir.</i>	"I'm in the hall."
<i>L'hôtel du Louvre est dans le premier arrondissement de Paris.</i>	"The Hotel du Louvre is in the first district of Paris."

When the clerk tells Joe where the restaurant is, he tells Joe that it is situated on the first floor with *au premier étage* ("on the first floor").

### Indicating on Which Floor Something Is Located

---

To tell the location of a place on a floor of a building, use the preposition *au*, meaning "at." You can also use the preposition *au* ("at") to indicate any place with a masculine singular noun, as in *au restaurant* ("at the restaurant").



**au + Ordinal Number + étage**

**Note:** The hotel clerk could have said *Le petit-déjeuner est servi au premier étage au restaurant.* ("Breakfast is served at the restaurant on the first floor.")

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Au deuxième étage, il y a les chambres 200 à 250.</i>	"At the third floor, there are the rooms two hundred to two hundred and fifty."
<i>La salle de sport est au cinquième étage.</i>	"The gym is at the sixth floor."
<i>Au rez-de chaussée, il y a la réception.</i>	"On the first floor, there is the reception."

## Cultural Insight

---

### How the French Count Floors

---

Don't get lost or surprised when you go up or down floors and cannot find what you are searching for in France. The first floor in France is called *le rez-de-chaussée*, meaning "ground floor," which the French commonly refer to as the "first floor." So when you read *au troisième étage* on a map, make sure to go to the "fourth floor."

In other words, whenever you need to go to a certain floor in a building, add one to the French number. For example, *1er étage* would be "second floor," *3ème étage* would be "fourth floor," and so forth.



## Gengo French S1

A French National Past Time You Must Know About...Talking About the  
Weather

11

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	7

## French

---

Réceptionniste	Bonjour.
Joe	Bonjour. Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui ?
Réceptionniste	Il va faire beau ce matin, mais il va pleuvoir cet après-midi.
Joe	Ah, les jours de pluie...
Réceptionniste	Oui, mauvais temps aujourd'hui, mais vous avez de la chance. L'été est d'habitude toujours beau en juin.
Joe	Vraiment ?
Réceptionniste	Oui, il y a beaucoup de soleil, le temps est vraiment agréable.
Joe	Merci. Où sont les taxis ?
Réceptionniste	Les taxis sont devant l'hôtel.
Joe	Merci.
Réceptionniste	Bonne journée, Monsieur.

## English

---

Front desk	Hello.
Joe	Hello. What is the weather like today?
Front desk	It will be sunny this morning, but it will rain this afternoon.
Joe	Ah, rainy days...
Front desk	Yes, bad weather today, but you are lucky. Summer is usually very sunny in June.
Joe	Really?
Front desk	Yes, it is very sunny; the weather is really nice.
Joe	Thank you. Where are the taxis?
Front desk	Taxis are in front of the hotel.
Joe	Thank you.
Front desk	Have a nice day, sir.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
le temps	climate, weather	noun	masculine
aujourd'hui	today	adverb	
chaud(e)	hot, warm	adjective	masculine (feminine)
pleuvoir	to rain	verb	

la pluie	the rain	noun	feminine
beau	beautiful	adjective	masculine
un taxi	a taxi	noun	masculine
devant	in front of	preposition	
un hôtel	a hotel	noun	masculine
juin, le mois de juin	June, the month of June	noun	masculine
un/une après-midi	an afternoon	noun	either feminine or masculine
d'habitude	usually	adverb	
l'été	the summer	noun	masculine
mauvais(e)	bad	adjective	mauvaise (feminine)

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Le temps est froid.*

*Aujourd'hui, c'est lundi.*

*Aujourd'hui, c'est une journée ensoleillée.*

*Mon thé est trop chaud!*

*Il pleut sur toute la France.*

*Vous êtes beau.*

*Je suis devant le bar.*

*L'hôtel est bien situé.*

*Le mois de juin est le sixième de l'année.*

*Je travaille le matin et l'après-midi.*

*D'habitude je travaille le dimanche.*

*Le soleil brille en été.*

*Elle est mauvaise en chimie.*

"The climate is cold."

"Today is Monday."

"Today, it's a sunny day."

"My tea is too hot!"

"It's raining all over France."

"You are beautiful."

"I am in front of the bar."

"The hotel is well located."

"The month of June is the sixth of the year."

"I work in the morning and the afternoon."

"I usually work on Sundays."

"The sun shines in the summer."

"She is bad in chemistry."

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Describing the Weather, the Conjunction *Mais* and Adjectives That Qualify Nouns.**

*Il va faire beau ce matin, mais il va pleuvoir cet après-midi.*

**"It will be sunny this morning, but it will rain this afternoon."**


Weather can be a determining factor when living or traveling in France. It can make your day great or make it bad. Weather predictions can allow you to plan what you wish to do indoors or outdoors for the rest of the day.

With four types of climates in France (continental, oceanic, Mediterranean, and mountain), you can choose which suits you better according to your personal preferences, activities, and destinations and thus, where you may want to visit.

### Asking About the Weather

---

In the dialogue, Joe goes to France for business and pleasure. While working in France, he certainly wants to discover the country and area he's in. Curious about the weather and what he may plan after work, he asks the receptionist about the weather with *Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui ?* ("What is the climate like today?"), which we can also formulate as follows:

- 
1. *Quel temps il fait aujourd'hui ?*  
**or**
  2. *Il fait quel temps aujourd'hui ?*

In the dialogue, the clerk responds with the weather prediction using the near future with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, meaning "to have," and the verb *faire*, meaning "to do," with the sentence *Il va faire beau ce matin, mais il va pleuvoir cet après-midi* ("It will be sunny this morning, but it will rain this afternoon.").

### Describing the Weather

---

To describe the weather in the near future, use *Il va*, meaning "It will (be)," as in:

***Il va* + Infinitive Verb of Weather**

OR

***Il va faire* + Adjective.****For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il va givrer.</i>	"It will freeze."
<i>Il va neiger.</i>	"It will snow."
<i>Il va faire mauvais.</i>	"It will be bad."
<i>Il va faire chaud.</i>	"It will be hot."
<i>Il va faire bon.</i>	"It will be nice/warm."

**Note:** To describe sunny weather, you may hear in a formal speech *le temps est ensoleillé* ("the climate is sunny") or *la journée est ensoleillée* ("the day is sunny"). Sometimes in colloquial French, you will encounter *il fait du soleil* ("it is sunny") even though it is not correct. You should use *il y a du soleil* ("it's sunny") or most commonly *il fait beau*, implying the weather is sunny.

Another way to describe the weather is to use a noun with an adjective, as in the dialogue when the receptionist says, *mauvais temps aujourd'hui* ("bad weather today"). The place of the adjective varies according to the adjective's number of syllables or its grammatical root, or even depending upon its definition.\*

We generally place adjectives after the noun when:

**they are descriptive...****For Example:**

1. *les jours pluvieux*  
"rainy days"
2. *la matinée nuageuse*  
"a cloudy morning"

or when they have two or more syllables...

**For Example:**

1. *une apres-midi ensoleillée*  
"a sunny day"
2. *un hiver rigoureux*  
"a rigorous winter"

**\*Note:** Placing adjectives is a difficult point of the French language because we place some either before or after the noun with or without changing definition. The rules are subject to debate because they are not always clear and are quite complex. We place some adjectives before the noun and some after according to their length and whether their definitions are abstract or concrete. The real difficulty is that we place most of them after the noun, even though we place the most common ones before the noun, as in *le mauvais temps* ("the bad weather"). Keep in mind that a language is not an exact science, but a human science, and they evolve and change with society's transformation.

### Introducing a Contradictory Idea in a Phrase With the Conjunction of Coordination *Mais* ("but")

---

The sentence *Il va faire beau ce matin, mais il va pleuvoir cet après-midi* ("It will be sunny this morning, but it will rain this afternoon.") contains two opposite or contradictory ideas. The first one, *il va faire beau* ("it will be sunny"), announces beneficial weather for being outdoors. The second idea states there will be bad weather later with *il va pleuvoir* ("it will rain").

We could express each idea in two simple phrases: *il va faire beau ce matin* ("it will be sunny this morning") and *il va pleuvoir cet après-midi* ("it will rain this afternoon."). To link two simple phrases generally with a subject, a verb, and a complement expressing opposite ideas, use the conjunction *mais*, meaning "but."

**Simple Phrase 1 + , *mais* + Simple Phrase 2.**

**Note:** Be sure to use a comma before *mais*.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>L'hôtel est confortable, mais cher.</i>	"The hotel is comfortable, but expensive."
<i>La chambre est jolie, mais mal située.</i>	"The hotel room is pretty, but badly located."
<i>Le Louvre est intéressant, mais trop grand pour visiter en un jour.</i>	"The Louvre museum is interesting, but too big to visit in one day."
<i>Je travaille, mais je termine tôt.</i>	"I work, but I end soon."

## Cultural Insight

---

### The Many Climates of France

---

France's climate changes across the country with its different landscapes, which vary from coastal areas on the ocean, inland continental areas, mountain climates, and Mediterranean coasts. The climate varies in each of these landscapes due to either a stronger or weaker ocean or sea influence. For example, Paris has continental weather with cold winters and hot summers. Marseilles enjoys a milder Mediterranean climate with hot days in the summer and mild and short winters. This region of France has the most days of sunshine each year, and a strong northerly wind (the Mistral) blows through this area. It can cause periods of cold, windy weather even in late spring.

During ski season in the mountains, you can witness long and cold winters with substantial snowfall that often will not melt from the roads in high elevations until very late spring. This region has mild to warm, though short, summers.





## Gengo French S1

Get Insider Information From the French Locals

12

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	12

## French

---

Chauffeur de taxi	Bonjour. Vous allez où ?
Joe	Bonjour. Avenue Montaigne, s'il vous plaît.
Chauffeur de taxi	Quel numéro ?
Joe	Tenez.
Chauffeur de taxi	Vous parlez français ?
Joe	Non, pas vraiment. Juste un peu.
Chauffeur de taxi	(rires) Vous parlez plutôt bien !
Joe	Non, pas encore. Vous parlez anglais ?
Chauffeur de taxi	Moi ? (laughs) Non. Avenue Montaigne. Il y a un très bon restaurant par là-bas.
Joe	Comment il s'appelle ?
Chauffeur de taxi	L'Avenue.
Joe	Vous pouvez l'écrire ?
Chauffeur de taxi	Bien sûr. Un moment...dix avenue Montaigne.
(car parking sound)	
On y est. Ça fait 8 euros.	
(writing sound)	
Joe	Tenez. Merci.
Chauffeur de taxi	Votre monnaie et le nom du restaurant.
Joe	Je peux avoir un reçu, s'il vous plaît ?

## English

---

Taxi driver	Hello. Where are you going?
Joe	Hello. Avenue Montaigne, please.
Taxi driver	Which number?
Joe	Here.
Taxi driver	Do you speak French?
Joe	No, not really. Just a little. (modest expression)
Taxi driver	(laughs) You speak rather well!
Joe	No, not yet. Do you speak English?
Taxi	Me? (laughs) No. Avenue Montaigne. There is a very good restaurant over there.
Joe	How is it called?
Taxi driver	L'Avenue.
Joe	Can you write it down?

Taxi driver (car parking sound)	Of course. A moment...Ten Avenue Montaigne.
Taxi driver (writing sound)	Here we are. It is eight euros.
Joe	Here. Thank you.
Taxi driver	Your change and the restaurant name.
Joe	Can I have a receipt, please?

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
quel/quelle/quels/quelles	which, what	interrogative adjective	
une adresse	address	noun	feminine
où	where	adverb of place	
vraiment	truly, really	adverb	
plutôt	rather, instead	adverb	
bien	well, good	adverb	
très	very	adverb	
un restaurant	a restaurant	noun	masculine
un nom	a name	noun	masculine
un reçu	a receipt	noun	masculine
Où ?	Where?	question	
par là-bas	over there	phrase	
avenue Montaigne	Montaigne avenue	noun	
Non, pas vraiment.	No, not really.	phrase	
Juste un peu.	Just a little.	phrase	
Comment s'appelle... ?	What is... called?	question	
bien sûr	of course	adverb	
un moment	a moment	noun	masculine

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

<i>Quelle heure est-il?</i>	"What time is it?"
<i>Quelle heure il est ?</i>	"What time is it?"
<i>Tu aimes quel acteur ?</i>	"Which actor do you like?"
<i>Tu habites où, déjà ? J'habite à Paris.</i>	"Where do you live, again? I live in Paris."
<i>Où tu es ?</i>	"Where are you?"
<i>Oh, vraiment ?</i>	"Oh, really?"

<i>C'est vraiment le cas.</i>	"It's really the case."
<i>Je préfère plutôt me reposer.</i>	"I'd rather rest."
<i>C'est bien fait.</i>	"It's well done."
<i>On vit bien.</i>	"We live well."
<i>Tout va bien.</i>	"Everything is well."
<i>Le restaurant est très bien.</i>	"The restaurant is very good."
<i>Il parle très vite.</i>	"He speaks very quickly."
<i>Très bien.</i>	"Very good."
<i>Le restaurant est très bien.</i>	"The restaurant is very good."
<i>J'épèle mon nom M-O-R-I-N.</i>	"I spell my name M-O-R-I-N."
<i>Le vendeur me donne un reçu.</i>	"The salesperson gives me a receipt."
<i>J'aime Paris, bien sûr!</i>	"I like Paris, of course!"
<i>Vous avez un moment?</i>	"Do you have a moment?"

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Yes/No Questions, "Wh-" Questions, Questions With *Comment* and *Quel*, the Verb *Parler* ("to speak"), and Adjectives Before Nouns.**

*Vous allez où ?*

"Where are you going?"

Taking a taxi in a foreign country is probably one of the best ways to get in contact with the locals and ask about their customs. Taxi drivers know the city well and can inform you about local sightseeing opportunities. If you hail a taxi in France, pay attention to the luminous sign on the car's roof. If it is lit, the taxi is available.

In the dialogue, Joe takes the taxi from the hotel. During the ride, he makes small talk asking for information. The taxi driver's first question, *Vous allez où ?* ("Where are you going?"), requests Joe's destination. This question is an intonation question classified as a "partial" interrogation, as the information the driver requests is part of the phrase, in other words, the location where Joe wants to go.

The French question system can seem confusing at first because each question type has three different word order sequences according to the language registers, which include informal, standard, and

formal French.

### Partial Interrogation Question Word Orders

---

This type of question requests information about a part of a phrase.

#### Some Examples (among others):

1. location (*où*, meaning "where")
2. time (*quand*, meaning "when")
3. reason (*pourquoi*, meaning "why")
4. a person (*qui*, meaning "who")
5. a number (*combien*, meaning "how many\*/much")
6. something (*que, quoi, qu'est-ce que*, all meaning "what")

They include a question word (QW), a subject (S), and a verb (V), and we can arrange them as follows:

#### Standard French (question with *est-ce que*)

**QW + *est-ce que/est-ce qu'*\* + S + V ?**

1. *Où est-ce que vous allez ?*  
"Where are you going?"
2. *Comment est-ce qu'il s'appelle ?*  
"How is it called?"

#### Informal French (intonation question)

**S + V + QW ?**

1. *Vous allez où ?*  
"Where are you going?"

*Il s'appelle comment ?*

"How is it called?"

**Formal French** (subject-inverted question)

**QW + V-S\*\*?**

1. *Où allez-vous ?*  
"Where are you going?"
2. *Comment s'appelle-t-il ?*  
"How is it called?"

\* Use *est-ce qu'* when the subject starts with a vowel.

\*\* Observe the hyphen between the verb and subject. We only invert the subject in questions when the subject is a personal pronoun (*tu, il, etc.*).

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Quand tu arrives ?</i>	"When do you arrive?"
<i>Nous allons où ?</i>	"Where are we going?"
<i>Combien coûte le livre ?</i>	"How much does the book cost?"
<i>Il prend le taxi pourquoi ?</i>	"Why does he take the taxi?"
<i>Vous travaillez avec qui ?</i>	"With whom do you work?"

**Quel numéro ? ("Which number?")**

Questions with *quel(le)(s)* ("which") are also partial interrogations. They ask for information about one element (a noun) of the phrase. In *Quel numéro ?* ("Which number?"), the taxi driver's request for the number implies which number of the avenue Montaigne, a location Joe previously mentioned in the dialogue.

**Questions With *Quel(le)(s)* ("which"/"what")**

The questions with *quel(le)(s)\** have a slightly different word order. The question word *quel* is followed by a noun, as in:

**Standard French** (question with *est-ce que*)

***Quel(le)(s) + Noun + est-ce que/est-ce qu'\** + S + V ?**

1. *Quelle rue est-ce que vous cherchez ?*  
"What street are you looking for?"
2. *Quel numéro vous avez ?*  
"Which number you have?"

**Informal French** (intonation question)

**S + V + *quel(le)(s) + noun* ?**

1. *Vous cherchez quelle rue ?*  
"What street are you looking for?"
2. *Vous avez quel numéro ?*  
"Which number you have?"

**Formal French** (subject-inverted question)

***Quel(le)(s) + noun + V-S\*\** ?**

1. *Quelle rue cherchez-vous ?*  
"What street are you looking for?"
2. *Quel numéro avez-vous ?*  
"Which number you have?"

\* Use *est-ce qu'* when the subject starts with a vowel.

\*\* Observe the hyphen between the verb and subject. We only invert the subject in questions when the

subject is a personal pronoun (*tu, il, etc.*).

**Note:** In the questions with *quel(le)(s)* and *c'est* ("it is"), *ce sont* ("these"/"those are"), or the verb *être* ("to be"), the sequence of the words is different, as in *Quel est le numéro de rue ?* ("What is the street number?"). See Gengo Lesson Number 7 for more information about questions with *quel(le)(s)* and the verb *être* ("to be") or *Quel numéro est-ce ?/C'est quel numéro ?* ("Which number is it?").

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Quelle rue est-ce ?</i>	"Which street is it?"
<i>C'est quel arrondissement ?</i>	"Which district is it?"
<i>Ce sont quels monuments ?</i>	"Which are these monuments?"

**Total Interrogation**

Total interrogation questions request information referring to the whole sentence and the answer to these questions will be either affirmative or negative. Total interrogation questions correspond to closed questions in French or yes-no questions in English.

**Question Word Order**

**Standard French** (question with *est-ce que*)

*Est-ce que/est-ce qu'\** + **S** + **V** + **complement ?**

1. *Est-ce que vous parlez français ?*  
"Do you speak French?"
2. *Est-ce que vous pouvez l'écrire ?*  
"Can you write it down?"



**Informal French** (intonation question)**S + V + complement ?**

1. *Vous parlez français ?*  
"Do you speak French?"
2. *Vous pouvez l'écrire ?*  
"Can you write it down?"

**Formal French** (subject-inverted question)**V-S\*\* + complement ?**

1. *Parlez-vous français ?*  
"Do you speak French?"
2. *Pouvez-vous l'écrire ?*  
"Can you write it down?"

\* Use *est-ce qu'* when the subject starts with a vowel.

\*\* Observe the hyphen between the verb and subject. We only invert the subject and verb in questions when the subject is a personal pronoun (*tu, il, etc.*)

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>As-tu de la monnaie ?</i>	"Do you have change?"
<i>Est-ce que vous êtes disponible ?</i>	"Are you available?"
<i>Tu es à l'hôtel ?</i>	"Are you at the hotel?"
<i>Pouvez-vous appeler un taxi ?</i>	"Can you call a taxi?"

**Language Tip: The Verb *Parler* ("to speak, to talk")**


---

In the dialogue, Joe and the taxi driver ask each other whether they speak a certain language with *Vous*

*parlez français ?* ("Do you speak French?") and *Vous parlez anglais ?* ("Do you speak English?")

In French, the verb *parler* ("to speak") is the only verb we use to refer to "speaking" or "talking." There is no differentiation of context as there is in English. You can say *Je parle l'anglais* ("I speak English") as well as *Je parle au téléphone* ("I talk on the phone.").

The verb *parler* is, like all verbs ending in *-er* at the infinitive, a regular verb from the first of three French verb groups. To conjugate any verb from the first verb group, eliminate the last two letters (*-er*) from the infinitive and add the appropriate conjugation ending in bold below.

### Indicative Present *Parler* ("to speak"/"talk")

Construction	French	"English"
First person singular	<i>Je parle</i>	"I speak/talk"
Second person singular	<i>Tu parles</i>	"You speak/talk"
Third person singular	<i>Il/elle parle</i>	"He/she speaks/talks"
First person plural	<i>Nous parlons</i>	"We speak/talk"
Second person plural	<i>Vous parlez</i>	"You speak/talk"
Third person plural	<i>Ils/elles parlent</i>	"They speak/talk"

### Adjectives We Place Before a Noun

*Il y a un très bon restaurant par là-bas.* ("There is a very good restaurant over there.")

---

To be precise when we describe something, we use adjectives. In the dialogue, the taxi driver describes the restaurant on avenue Montaigne as very good when he says, *Il y a un très bon restaurant par là-bas* ("There is a very good restaurant over there.").

Placing adjectives is difficult in French and has many rules that are complex. We place most adjectives after the noun (as already mentioned in the previous lesson, Gengo Lesson 11), and we place others before the nouns.

Generally, adjectives we place before the nouns include:

1 - some short adjectives that can have different meanings and therefore are very common, as in the dialogue with the adjective *bon* ("good"): *un très bon restaurant* ("a very good restaurant").

Here are some of these common adjectives:

<b>French Feminine</b>	<b>French Masculine</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>bonne</i>	<i>bon/bel*</i>	"good"
<i>belle</i>	<i>beau</i>	"beautiful"
<i>jeune</i>	<i>jeune</i>	"young"
<i>vieille</i>	<i>vieux/ vieil*</i>	"old"
<i>petite</i>	<i>petit</i>	"small"
<i>grande</i>	<i>grand</i>	"tall"
<i>grosse</i>	<i>gros</i>	"big"/"fat"

\* The masculine adjectives *vieil* ("old") and *bel* ("beautiful") are irregular, and we use them in front of a noun starting with a vowel.

2 - ordinal adjectives, such as *premier/première* ("first"), *deuxième* ("second"), and so forth.

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>une bonne décision</i>	"a good decision"
<i>un beau garçon</i>	"a beautiful boy"
<i>une jeune employée</i>	"a young employee"
<i>un vieux château</i>	"an old castle"
<i>un vieil arbre</i>	"an old tree"
<i>une vieille maison</i>	"an old house"
<i>une petite porte</i>	"a small door"
<i>un grand arbre</i>	"a tall tree"
<i>un gros sac</i>	"a big bag"
<i>une première place</i>	"a first place"
<i>le troisième rang</i>	"the third row"

### Language Expansion: The Adverb *très* ("very")

To add a nuance of intensity, you can use the adverb *très*, meaning "very," in front of an adjective as in the dialogue phrase *un très bon restaurant* ("a very good restaurant") or as in this additional example *un chauffeur très sympathique* ("a very nice driver").

---

## Cultural Insight

---

### Where Are You Going in France?

---

He told me "15A32 is the code." No, you are not a spy in the French capital, but just getting one of the instructions on how to get in an apartment building in Paris. This strange ritual happens in every apartment building of the French capital.

12 When you are invited to someone's place, you will get instructions on how to get to the host's home. The first one is the subway station to get out and which exit to take. Some subway stations have various exits on different streets indicated by its name, or to each side of the same street differentiated with the street numbers and a sign indicating *Sortie N<sup>os</sup>\* pairs* ("Exit Even numbers") or *Sortie N<sup>os</sup>\* impairs* ("Exit Odd numbers"), each indicating a specific street sidewalk. Each exit will bring you to a particular point to choose from depending on the direction to which you are headed.

Then the host will inform you of the code to dial before entering the apartment building. It is obviously a safety precaution to prevent anyone from entering an apartment building. Each one has a doorway equipped with a numbered keypad to dial in order to be able to open the door.

If you arrive at night, use *la minuterie* or a "light switch," which will turn on the light and keep it on for a few minutes. So while going up the stairs (elevators are not always implemented), make sure to spot the light switches usually placed near an apartment entry door before the light shuts off automatically.

\* *N<sup>os</sup>* stands for *numeros* meaning numbers.



## Gengo French S1

The Proper Way to Do Business in France

13

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	6

## French

---

Réceptionniste	Bonjour, et bienvenue chez Chanel.
Joe	Bonjour, j'ai rendez-vous avec Madame Fonta à 9h.
Réceptionniste	Votre nom ?
Joe	Joe McFly.
Réceptionniste (elevator music)	Un instant, Monsieur McFly.
Réceptionniste	M. McFly, merci d'avoir patienté. Par ici.
Directrice	M. McFly, ça fait un bail !
Joe	Oui ça fait longtemps. Trop longtemps ! Voici un petit quelque chose des Etats-Unis.
Directrice	Merci, vous n'auriez pas dû. Vous avez l'air en forme ! Comment ça va ?
Joe	Ca va bien. Et vous ? Vous avez l'air en forme aussi.
Directrice	Je vais très bien. Beaucoup de travail, mais ça va. Aujourd'hui c'est chargé. Très chargé. Vous êtes prêt ?
Joe	Oui.

## English

---

Receptionist	Good morning, and welcome to Chanel.
Joe	Hello, I have an appointment with Mrs. Fonta at nine o'clock in the morning.
Receptionist	Your name?
Joe	Joe McFly.
Receptionist (elevator music)	Just a moment, Mr. McFly.
Receptionist again	Mr. McFly, thank you for waiting. This way.
Manager	Mr. McFly, it's been a while!
Joe	Yes, it's been a while. Too long! Here's a little something from the United States.
Manager	Thank you, you shouldn't have. You look great! How are you?
Joe	I'm fine. And you? You also look good.
Manager	I'm very good. A lot of work, but good. Today is busy. Very busy. Are you ready?
Joe	Yes.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
un rendez-vous	a date, an appointment	noun	masculine
avec	with	preposition	
un instant	a moment, an instant	noun	
patienter	to wait	verb	
longtemps	long	adverb	
quelque chose	something	noun	masculine
Les États-Unis	The United States	noun	
bien	well, good	adverb	
beaucoup de travail	lots of work	phrase	
chargé(e)	busy, in charge	adjective	masculine
un jour	a day	noun	masculine
lire	to read	verb	
par ici	over here	phrase	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Le rendez-vous est repoussé à demain.*

"The appointment has been pushed back to tomorrow."

*C'est avec intérêt que je vous écoute.*

"I listen to you with interest."

*Je suis avec Frédéric.*

"I am with Frederic."

*Un instant, s'il vous plaît.*

"One moment, please."

*Je patiente jusqu'à l'été.*

"I wait until the summer."

*Je veux quelque chose de frais, comme un coca!*

"I want something refreshing, like a coke!"

*Les enfants boudent lorsqu'ils n'aiment pas quelque chose.*

"Kids refuse to talk (sulk) when they don't like something."

*Le séisme a ravagé le sud des Etats-Unis.*

"The earthquake ravaged the southern United States."

*C'est bien fait.*

"It's well done."

*On vit bien.*

"We live well."

*Tout va bien.*

"Everything is well."

*Les jours fériés sont agréables.*

"Holidays are nice."

*Il adore lire le journal le dimanche matin.*

"He loves to read the newspaper on Sunday morning."

## Grammar Points



---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Describing a Person's Appearance With *Avoir l'air* and the Adverb *Très*.**

*Je vais très bien.*

"I'm very well."

---

Considering that Americans are direct, explicit, and positive valuing both the present and the future, they excel in action. On the other hand, French people are implicit, and they are rather negative through their values of the past, which allows them to be better at analysis and criticism. Therefore, you can imagine how many times in firms French colleagues find themselves misunderstanding each other, especially in highly stressful business situations.

Joe will certainly experience it, even though he just arrived in France and started his business trip. When people describe what they do or how they are, they describe actions. In the dialogue, after Joe and the store manager meet again and exchange greetings, they ask each other how they are. The manager says *Je vais très bien* ("I'm very well.") using the word *très* to add information to the adjective *bien* ("well") when responding how she is.

To add information to a phrase or say precisely how something is done, we use an adverb to slightly modify the definition of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. In the phrase *Je vais très bien* ("I'm very well.") in the dialogue, the adverb *très* ("very") adds information to the adverb *bien* ("good") modifying the verb *aller* ("to go"), giving a precise answer about how the manager is. Another phrase in the dialogue illustrates the use of *très* ("very"), *Aujourd'hui c'est chargé. Très chargé.* ("Today is busy. Very busy."), where the adverb *très* modifies the adjective *chargé* ("busy").

### Using Adverbs in a Phrase

---

To place an adverb in a phrase, place it generally after the verb. When the adverb modifies an adjective or another adverb, place the adverb before them in most cases.

#### Subject + Verb + Adverb

##### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il travaille efficacement.</i>	"He works efficiently."
<i>Joe parle rapidement.</i>	"Joe speaks quickly."
<i>La gérante accueille chaudement Joe.</i>	"The manager warmly greets Joe."

**Subject + Verb + Adverb + Adjective/Adverb****For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il parle très vite.</i>	"He speaks very fast."
<i>Elle est vraiment occupée.</i>	"She is really busy."
<i>Ce vendredi est extrêmement fatiguant.</i>	"This Friday is extremely tiring."

**Language Expansion**

---

We can form most French adverbs with the ending *-ment*, as in *correctement* ("correctly"), *rapidement* ("fast"), *dangereusement* ("dangerously").

***Vous avez l'air en forme !*****"You look great!"**

---

During their greeting, Joe and the manager reconnect by commenting on each other's appearance and health. The manager comments on Joe's healthy appearance with *Vous avez l'air en forme !* ("You look great!") using the verb *avoir l'air*, meaning "to look like."

Joe returns the compliment by responding *Vous avez l'air en forme aussi* ("You look great too.").

To describe someone's physical or emotional appearance formally, use the verb *avoir l'air* ("to look like").

***Vous avez l'air* + Adjective.**

**Note:** Use *en forme* or *en bonne santé*, meaning "in good health," to say that the person looks great or healthy.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Vous avez l'air fatigué.</i>	"You look tired."
<i>Vous avez l'air énergique.</i>	"You look energetic."
<i>Vous avez l'air content.</i>	"You look happy."
<i>Vous avez l'air malade.</i>	"You look sick."
<i>Vous avez l'air stressé.</i>	"You look stressed."

## Cultural Insight

---

### **How to Dress for Success in France**

---

When meeting your peers in a business situation, make sure to be properly dressed. How to dress in business is understated and stylish. The French like the finer things in life, so wear good quality clothing or accessories and avoid synthetic material, for example. Men should wear dark-colored and rather conservative business suits for the initial meeting. Later on, you can adapt to the personality of the company with which you are conducting business. Women should wear either business suits or elegant dresses in soft colors.

During the first contact with a French business, people exchange business cards. There aren't any particular formal rituals about it. A good idea to demonstrate your sensitivity to the French culture is to add on the other side of your business card the French translation. This will be greatly appreciated and act as a positive reinforcement of who you are, and it will start your business relationship on good note.



## Gengo French S1

Making the Most of Your Time in France

14

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	10

## French

---

Directrice	Voici ma secrétaire, Mme Vannet. Elle a le planning d'aujourd'hui.
Assistante de direction	Bonjour. Je suis Valérie. Enchantée.
Joe	Enchanté.
Assistante de direction	Voilà le planning d'aujourd'hui - Vendredi 6 juin. Vous avez un meeting avec Mme Laforge de Paris Communication aux Champs-Élysées à 10h. À midi, vous déjeunez au Fouquet's avec Mme Gontran de Elle. Après ça vous avez une réunion avec M. Georges au siège de Canal Plus. Ensuite, vous allez visiter l'usine Confection Etoile. Enfin, vous avez le dîner de l'entreprise à l'Avenue à 20H30.
Joe	Ouh là là, c'est ce que j'appelle une journée chargée.
Directrice	Et elle commence dès maintenant.

## English

---

Manager	This is my secretary, Mrs. Vannet. She has today's schedule.
Executive Assistant	Hello. I am Valerie. Nice to meet you.
Joe	Nice to meet you.
Executive Assistant	Here's today's schedule - Friday, June the sixth. You have a meeting with Mrs. Laforge of Paris Communication at the Champs-Élysées at ten o'clock. At noon, you have lunch at Fouquet's with Mrs. Gontran of Elle. After that, you will meet Mr. Georges at Canal Plus headquarters. Then, you will visit the Star Confection factory. Finally, you have the company dinner at L'Avenue at eight-thirty in the evening.
Joe	Wow, that is what I call a busy day.
Manager	And it starts right now.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
un/e secrétaire	a secretary	noun	both
aujourd'hui	today	adverb	
un planning	a schedule	noun	masculine
une réunion	a meeting	noun	feminine
dix heures	ten o'clock		

à	at, to, in	preposition	
midi	noon	noun	masculine
manger	to eat	verb	
un déjeuner	a lunch	noun	masculine
avec	with	preposition	
visiter	to visit	verb	
ensuite	then		
une usine	a factory	noun	feminine
vingt heures trente 20h30	8:30 pm	time expression	
une entreprise	a company, an enterprise	noun	feminine
maintenant	now	adverb	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Julien est secrétaire chez Peugeot.*

*Aujourd'hui, c'est lundi.*

*Aujourd'hui, c'est une journée ensoleillée.*

*Le planning est prêt.*

*J'ai une réunion ce matin.*

*Il est dix heures.*

*Je suis à la maison.*

*J'habite à Sidney.*

*Je vais à la campagne.*

*À midi je mange chez moi.*

*Il est midi.*

*Je mange un sandwich.*

*Vous mangez le déjeuner à midi ?*

*C'est un déjeuner agréable.*

*C'est avec intérêt que je vous écoute.*

*Je suis avec Frédéric.*

*J'ai visité le musée Grévin.*

*Quelle ville tu visites ?*

*Il a mangé. Ensuite, il a parlé.*

*Je mange, ensuite je pars.*

*Je travaille à l'usine.*

*Je viens à 20h30.*

*Peugeot est une entreprise française.*

*L'entreprise fait faillite.*

*Tu viens maintenant ?*

"Julien is a secretary at Peugeot."

"Today is Monday."

"Today, it's a sunny day."

"The schedule is ready."

"I have a meeting this morning."

"It's ten o'clock."

"I am at home."

"I live in Sydney."

"I go to the countryside."

"For lunchtime, I eat at home."

"It's noon."

"I am eating a sandwich."

"You eat lunch at noon?"

"This is a nice lunch."

"I listen to you with interest."

"I am with Frederic."

"I visited the Grévin museum."

"Which city are you visiting?"

"He ate. Then, he spoke."

"I eat, then I leave."

"I am working at the factory."

"I am coming at 8:30."

"Peugeot is a French company."

"The company is bankrupted."

"Are you coming now?"

*Maintenant, c'est un nouveau départ.*

"Now, it's a new start."

---

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Word Order in a Statement, the Prepositions *Avec* ("with") and *à/au* ("at"), and Indicators of Time.**

*Vous avez un meeting avec Mme Laforge de Paris Communication aux Champs-Élysées à 10h.*

**"You have a meeting with Mrs. Laforge of Paris Communication at the Champs-Élysées at ten o'clock."**

---

The French do not organize meetings to reach a decision; they meet to use their creativity, skills, and exchange information. The person in charge then makes the decision. If a problem occurs or an important decision must be made, they plan a business lunch, which is an integral part of corporate communication.

4

This is what Joe should know to be well-prepared to start his first business day in France. The manager's secretary tells him about his various appointments and meetings of the day, just one of which is illustrated by the sentence *Vous avez un meeting avec Mme Laforge de Paris Communication aux Champs-Élysées à 10h* ("You have a meeting with Mrs. Laforge of Paris Communication at the Champs-Élysées at ten o'clock.").

This sentence is a statement including an indication of the times and locations where Joe needs to be.

### **Formulating a Statement With a Precise Time and Location**

In French, we can position the indication of time and location in different places in a sentence. However, the subject always precedes the verb, which is followed by a complement, as we see in this order:

### Subject-Verb-Complement

We can place the time and location either at the beginning or the end of the sentence, giving the opportunity to choose from various word orders. We illustrate some potential choices for you below:

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Complement</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Time</i>
<i>Vous</i>	<i>avez</i>	<i>un meeting avec Mme Laforge de Paris Communication</i>	<i>aux Champs-Elysées</i>	<i>à 10h.</i>

"You have a meeting with Mrs. Laforge of Paris Communication at the Champs-Elysées at ten o'clock."

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Complement</i>	<i>Time</i>	<i>Location</i>
<i>Vous</i>	<i>avez</i>	<i>un meeting avec Mme Laforge de Paris Communication</i>	<i>à 10h</i>	<i>aux Champs-Elysées.</i>
<i>Elle</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>le planning</i>	<i>d'aujourd'hui.</i>	<i>- / -</i>

"You have a meeting with Mrs. Laforge of Paris Communication at ten o'clock at the Champs-Elysées."

"She has today's schedule."

<i>Time</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Complement</i>	<i>Location</i>
<i>À 10h</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>Avez</i>	<i>un meeting avec Mme Laforge de Paris Communication</i>	<i>aux Champs-Elysées</i>
<i>À midi,</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>déjeunez- / - *</i>		<i>au Fouquet's avec Mme Gontran de Elle.</i>



"At ten o'clock, you have a meeting with Mrs. LaForge of Paris Communication at the Champs-Élysées."

"At noon, you have lunch at Fouquet's with Mrs. Gontran of *Elle*."

<i>Location</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Complement</i>	<i>Time</i>
<i>Aux Champs-Élysées</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>avez</i>	<i>un meeting avec Mme Laforge de Paris Communication</i>	<i>à 10h</i>

"At the Champs-Élysées, you have a meeting with Mrs. Laforge of Paris Communication at ten o'clock."

\*In the sentence, *À midi, vous déjeunez au Fouquet's avec Mme Gontran de Elle* ("At noon, you have lunch at Fouquet's with Mrs. Gontran of *Elle*."), there isn't any complement of the verb *déjeuner* ("to have lunch").

### Indicating Who a Person Is With the Preposition *Avec* ("with") to Express Being Accompanied by Another Person

---

During her description of Joe's schedule, the assistant tells Joe in whose company he will be for most of the planned events. She tells him that he will meet Mrs. Laforge, Mrs. Gontran, and Mr. Georges at separate times throughout the day.

To express the fact that one person accompanies another person, use the preposition *avec*, meaning "with," and either:

#### - a person's name, as shown in the dialogue with:

1. *Vous avez un meeting avec Mme Laforge.*

"You have a meeting with Mrs. Laforge."

- *Vous déjeunez au Fouquet's avec Mme Gontran.*

"You have lunch at Fouquet's with Mrs. Gontran."

- *Vous avez une réunion avec M. Georges.*

"You have a meeting with Mr. Georges."

**- a noun:**

1. *Vous avez un meeting avec la représentante de Elle.*

"You have a meeting with the *Elle* representative."

2. *Vous déjeunez avec le directeur.*

"You have lunch with the Director."

**- a pronoun**

1. *Vous avez une réunion avec elle.*

"You have a meeting with her."

2. *Vous déjeunez avec lui.*

"You have lunch with him."

## Indicating a Time Using the Preposition *à* to Express Time

---

For each meeting and other professional planned activity, the assistant tells Joe the time when it occurs. In each phrase, the assistant indicates the time by using the preposition *à* followed by the hour when the activity will take place, as in *à 10h* ("at ten o'clock"), *à midi* ("at noon"), and *à 20h30* ("at eight-thirty p.m.").

To express an exact time in hours and minutes for an event or the time of the day, use the preposition *à* followed by the hour and minutes as follows:

**When speaking:** *à* + number of hours *heures(e)* numbers of minutes.

**When writing:** *à* + *h*

**For Example:**

<i>Written Form</i>	<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>à 11h</i>	<i>à onze heures</i>	"at eleven o'clock"
<i>à 13h30</i>	<i>à treize heures trentes</i>	"at one-thirty"
<i>à 2h15</i>	<i>à deux heures quinze</i>	"at two-fifteen"

### Indicating a Location Using the Prepositions *Au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux* ("at") to Express Location

In the dialogue, Joe learns where he needs to be for each of his appointments. The conversation indicates locations with the prepositions *au*, *à l'* and *aux*. We see the preposition *au* in *au Fouquet's*\* ("at Fouquet's") and in *au siège de Canal Plus* ("at the Canal Plus headquarters"); the preposition *à l'* in *à l'avenue* ("on the avenue"); and the preposition *aux* in *aux Champs-Élysées* ("at the Champs-Élysées").

\* (see Cultural Tip)

To tell a location, do not forget to use one of the following prepositions:

<i>Preposition</i>	Type of Noun
<i>Au</i> +	masculine noun
<i>Aux</i> +	plural noun
<i>À la</i> +	feminine noun
<i>À l'</i> +	feminine noun starting with a vowel

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>J'ai un rendez-vous au restaurant.</i>	"I have a meeting at the restaurant."
<i>À la maison, nous avons notre voiture.</i>	"At home we have our car."
<i>Monsieur Georges téléphone à l'entreprise.</i>	"Mr. Georges calls the company."
<i>Il y a des animations aux jardins botaniques.</i>	"There are activities in the botanical gardens."

### Cultural Tip

---

*Le Fouquet's* is a well-known Parisian pub in Paris located in a rare, preserved historic building on the Champs Elysées. It is the place where many stars and celebrities from the seventh art (cinema) meet. For more than a century, people have gone to the bar *l'Escadrille* to enjoy fine and prodigious wine as well as original and refined dishes on the first floor or on the patio from eight o'clock p.m. to two o'clock a.m. with a menu starting at seventy-eight euros in the luxurious French pub atmosphere.

9

### Indicating Time: Expressions of Time

---

During the schedule presentation in the dialogue, the assistant enumerates everything Joe must do in chronological order. To give a sequence of events in time, the words *après ça* ("after that"), *ensuite* ("then"), and *enfin* ("finally") appear in the conversation. They all are related to a moment in time according to another event.

To express time with a sense of sequence, use any of the words from the table below that match what you'd like to say.

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>après ça</i>	"after that"
<i>après</i>	"after"
<i>ensuite, puis, ultérieurement</i>	"then," "next" to express posterity
<i>avant, auparavant</i>	"before" to express anteriority
<i>plus tard</i>	"later" to express posterity in the near future
<i> finalement, enfin</i>	"finally" to express that the event is the last one

## Cultural Insight

---

### Doing Business in French May Be a Source of Surprises

French people are very affective and loyal to their company. Therefore, you rather develop relations instead of procedures when working in French companies. The French do not like clear procedures: they want to maintain some form of "gray zone" and do not believe that it is always right to use one and only way to do all things. If you give too clear and specific directions, it means that you do not acknowledge the professionalism of the staff and don't allow them to express their ability. French would rather have various tasks than a linear responsibility of doing the same task over and over. They love to do several things at the same time and they are good at it. For example, job's missions are organized in such a way as to give employees responsibilities.





## Gengo French S1

Wow the Crowd With These Fine Lines for Meetings or Public Events

15

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	9

## French

---

Directrice (bonjour collectif)	Bon travail tout le monde. Je vous présente Joe, des Etats-Unis.
Directrice	Joe, je vous en prie.
Joe	Bonsoir tout le monde. Je m'appelle Joe McFly, je suis de Californie. Je suis consultant en marketing. Et j'aime la France.
Groupe	Bonsoir, enchanté.
Directrice	Merci Joe. Je vous en prie, asseyez-vous.
Franck	Joe, je suis Franck. Enchanté.
Joe	De même.
Franck	Vous aimez le foie gras ?
Joe	Non, je n'aime pas. (pause) J'adore. (rires)
Franck	Et les escargots ? Vous aimez ?
Joe	Hmmm...qu'est-ce que c'est ?
Franck	Ah, les escargots, c'est délicieux. Vous allez adorer. C'est très français.
Joe	D'accord. Vous avez d'autres suggestions ?
Franck	OK, laissez-moi faire. Oh, et vous voulez boire...?
Joe	Ah ben je vous laisse faire.
Franck	Très bien ! (il appelle la serveuse) S'il vous plaît ?

## English

---

Manager (group hello)	Great job, everyone. This is Joe from the United States.
Manager	Joe, please.
Joe	Hello, everyone. My name is Joe McFly; I am from California. I am a marketing consultant. And I like France.
Group	Good evening, nice to meet you.
Manager	Thank you, Joe. Please have a seat.
Frank	Joe, I'm Frank. Nice to meet you.
Joe	Same here.
Frank	Do you like goose liver?
Joe	No, I don't like it. (pause) I love it. (laughter)
Frank	What about snails? Do you like snails?
Joe	Hmmm...what is it?
Frank	Oh, snails are delicious! You'll love it! It's very French!
Joe	Okay, do you have any other suggestions?



Frank                    Okay, leave it to me. Oh, and you want to drink...?  
 Joe                        I leave it to you.  
 Frank                    Great! (calls out a waitress) Please?

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
vraiment	truly, really	adverb	
aimer	to like	verb	
une suggestion	a suggestion, a recommendation	noun	feminine
un escargot	a snail	noun	masculine
être	to be	verb	
vous	you (formal)	personal pronoun	
très	very	adverb	
autre	other	determiner	masculine or feminine
boire	to drink	verb	
laisser faire quelqu'un	to leave it to someone	phrase	
Bon travail.	Good job.	phrase	
Je vous en prie.	You are welcome, please	expression	
Et...?	What about...?	question	
vouloir	to want	verb	
adorer	to be fond of, to love	verb	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Oh, vraiment ?*

*C'est vraiment le cas.*

*J'aimerais une bière s'il vous plaît.*

*Elle aime discuter au bistrot.*

*Vous avez une suggestion ?*

*Les escargots ont une coquille.*

*Il vaut mieux être seul que mal accompagné.*

*Il semble être heureux.*

*Être ou ne pas être.*

*Vous êtes ici.*

*Vous vous appelez David.*

"Oh, really?"

"It's really the case."

"I would like a beer, please."

"She likes to chat at the bistro."

"Do you have a suggestion?"

"Snails have a shell."

"It is worth more to be alone than badly accompanied."

"He seems to be happy."

"To be or not to be."

"You are here."

"You are called David."

*Le restaurant est très bien.*

*Il parle très vite.*

*Très bien.*

*Vous avez un autre vin blanc ?*

*Elle aurait voulu faire un autre métier.*

*Il boit mais il a encore soif.*

*A: Tu ne bois pas un café ? B: Si, avec du sucre.*

*Je laisse faire Vincent.*

*Nous avons fini. Bon travail.*

*Je vous en prie, entrez.*

*Et le vin ? Tu aimes le vin ?*

*Elle veut manger.*

*Elle te veut.*

*J'adore le français.*

*Il adore sa femme.*

"The restaurant is very good."

"He speaks very quickly."

"Very good."

"Do you have another white wine?"

"She would have wanted to do another job."

"He drinks, but he's still thirsty."

"A: You aren't drinking coffee, are you? B: Yes, with some sugar."

"I leave it to Vincent."

"We are done. Good job."

"Please, come in."

"What about wine? Do you like wine?"

"She wants to eat."

"She wants you."

"I love French."

"He's fond of his wife."

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Likes and Dislikes and the Verb *Laisser faire* ("to leave something to someone").**

*Vous aimez le foie gras ?*

**"Do you like goose liver?"**

The French taste for food focuses on keeping all of the flavor to make food that looks as beautiful as it tastes. French palates enjoy combining a few flavorful ingredients (such as an appetizer with four ingredients: grilled asparagus served with arugula salad, truffle oil dressing, and parmesan shavings) and various textures (the crispy and creamy *crème brûlée*) without any overpowering flavors, such as strong spices.

The French prepare their meals from scratch using fresh ingredients. From regional hearty food to lighter dishes mixing French traditional recipes with original twists, such as the *choucroute aux poissons* ("sauerkraut with fish") derived from the hearty traditional *choucroute* made with pork, or Chicken Tagine inspired by northern African cuisine, French dishes reflect the multicultural influences in today's France.

Joe is going to experience French cuisine and is confident in his friend Frank's choices, even though some ingredients such as snails or *foie gras* may not be too attractive. In the dialogue, Frank asks Joe about his taste for *foie gras* with *Vous aimez le foie gras ?* ("Do you like goose liver?")

### Asking About Preferences

To ask about likes, use the verb *aimer*, which literally means "to love" but also means "to like" when referring to preferences. To formulate a question requesting formally whether your interlocutor likes something, use:

#### *Est-ce que vous aimez/Vous aimez + Definite Article + Noun ?*

**Note:** The question with *Est-ce que* is standard French, and the one without it is, in theory, informal. However, people use both equally in everyday French in formal or informal situations, making both structures acceptable in any situation.

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Vous aimez les rillettes* ?</i>	"Do you like <i>rillettes</i> ?"
<i>Est-ce que vous aimez le poisson ?</i>	"Do you like fish?"
<i>Vous aimez le boeuf bourguignon* ?</i>	"Do you like beef bourguignon?"
<i>Est-ce que vous aimez le veau ?</i>	"Do you like veal?"

\*See cultural tip.



## Cultural Tip

---

*Les rillettes* is a traditional country-style appetizer and a pâté made of different pork parts and pork fat from Le Mans, a city about a hundred miles west of Paris.

*Le boeuf bourguignon* is also a very traditional stew of braised beef in red wine and beef broth, generally flavored with garlic, onions, carrots, and a *bouquet garni* (usually parsley, thyme, and bay leaf), onions, and mushrooms.

## Expressing Likes With the Verb *Aimer* ("to love") *Et j'aime la France.* ("And I like France.")

---

Joe expresses that he likes France to the group with *Et j'aime la France* ("And I like France.") and that he likes French food to Frank by responding to his question about *foie gras* with *Non, je n'aime pas. J'adore* ("No, I don't like it. I love it.").

You can use the verb *aimer* ("to love") in French not only to declare your love to your future spouse, but also to express what you like or don't like, as Joe does in the dialogue.

To tell what you like or someone else likes, use the verb *aimer* in a statement as follows:

**Subject + Conjugated Verb *aimer* + Article + Noun.**

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>J'aime le foie gras.</i>	"I like foie gras."
<i>Tu aimes les saucisses.</i>	"You like sausages."
<i>Elle aime les rillettes.</i>	"She likes rillettes."

If you want to tell that you are fond of or love something, use the verb *adorer* ("to be fond of") instead of *aimer* ("to love").

**Subject + conjugated verb *adorer* + article + noun.**

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Nous adorons les escargots.</i>	"We love snails."
<i>Vous adorez les crustacés.</i>	"You love shellfish."
<i>Ils adorent les frites.</i>	"They love french fries."

**Expressing Dislikes:**

***Non, je n'aime pas.* ("No, I don't like it.")**

---

In the dialogue, Joe says about *foie gras*, *Non, je n'aime pas. J'adore* ("No, I don't like it. I love it."). He ironically uses the negative phrase *Non, je n'aime pas* ("No, I don't like it.") to lead his audience in error and make them think that he doesn't like *foie gras*.

The easiest way to state your dislikes is to use the previous statement with the verb *aimer* ("to love") presented above and add the negative form to create negative statements. Insert the negative form *ne* or *n'* before the conjugated verb and *pas* after the verb.

**Subject + *ne/n'* + Conjugated Verb *aimer* + *pas* + Article + Noun**

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Joe n'aime pas le canard.</i>	"Joe doesn't like duck."
<i>Je n'aime pas la pastèque.</i>	"I don't like watermelon."
<i>Ils n'aiment pas les</i>	"They don't like hot

<i>épices fortes.</i>	spices."
-----------------------	----------

**Okay, laissez-moi faire. ("Okay, leave it to me.")**

In the conversation, we discover that Joe doesn't know much about French cuisine and seems reluctant to taste snails as he asks Frank for suggestions. Frank takes the task to choose Joe's main dish by saying *OK, laissez-moi faire* ("Okay, leave it to me. ") while giving Joe the option to choose his drink by saying *Oh, et vous voulez boire...?* ("Oh, and you want to drink...?") Joe, who is in need of help, gives up the option of choosing by telling Joe, *Je vous laisse faire* ("I leave it to you.").

To formally delegate responsibilities and tasks previously mentioned to your interlocutor, use the verb *laisser faire* ("to leave something to someone"), as in the statement *Je vous laisse faire* ("I leave it to you.").

On the other hand, if you want to take the responsibility for doing something already mentioned, use the statement *Laissez-moi faire* ("Leave it to me.").

### For Example:

1. *Je dois taper ce rapport.*  
"I need to type this report."
2. *Laissez-moi faire.*  
"Leave it to me."

1. *C'est une décision importante.*  
"It is an important decision."
2. *Je vous laisse faire.*  
"I leave it to you."



## Cultural Insight

---

### **Do You Know What You're Paying for at Your Favorite French Restaurant?**

---

Getting together at a restaurant for dinner in groups is very frequent in France.

While going through a French restaurant, you will certainly notice small rooms reserved for groups, or panels dividing a dining room for business meals or festive feasts among family and friends.

Stumbling upon a table of four, six, ten, or more people is quite common in a restaurant or on the *terrasse* ("patio") in summer. You may hear either students or a group of friends gathered in a low-priced restaurant, singing and laughing while enjoying their meal. The waiter will certainly ask the group if he should bill individuals separately or as a whole group. Most commonly, the cost is shared per person - especially when a wine bottle was shared. However, sometimes each pays what he or she has consumed.

Even if the services are included along with the taxes in the pricing shown on the menu or sign displayed, tipping is a custom but not an obligation. The French law requires including a 15% included services charge in each restaurant bill. However, the owner can choose to keep it all, share part of it, or redistribute all of it every day among waiters. Tipping ranges from a couple of euro dimes to one or five euros for a big tip. Giving 10 to 15% of the bill amount as a tip is considered a great appreciation of the service rendered by the waiter.



## Gengo French S1

Fitting in and Making Friends - Several Surefire Phrases to Help Your  
Social Life

16

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	7



## French

---

Serveuse	Tenez ... le foie gras, les escargots, l'entrecôte de boeuf, les bouchées à la reine, et le steak tartare.
Franck	Santé !
Joe	Santé !
Directrice	Bon appétit.
Franck	Joe, essayez ça.
Joe	D'accord. Qu'est-ce que c'est ?
Directrice	Un steak tartare.
(Joe le goûte)	
Franck	Alors, qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?
Joe	C'est très bon. Délicieux.
Franck	Il aime ! Essayez ça.
Joe	Hmmm...c'est pas mauvais.
Directrice	Ahah, il n'aime pas !
Franck	Tu es libre demain ? On se dit "tu", d'accord ?
Joe	D'accord. Oui, je suis libre demain.
Directrice	On va jouer aux courses. Tu veux venir ?
Joe	D'accord.
Franck	On a rendez-vous à 11h Place de l'Etoile. Tiens, mon numéro de téléphone.
Joe	Très bien ! Merci.

## English

---

Waitress	Here...goose liver, snails, ribeye steak, queen's bites, and steak tartare.
Frank	Cheers!
Joe	Cheers!
Manager	Enjoy your food!
Frank	Joe, try this!
Joe	Okay. What is this?
Manager	Steak tartare.
(Joe tries it)	
Frank	Well, what do you think?
Joe	It's very good. It's delicious.
Frank	He likes it! Try this one.
Joe	Hmmm...it's not bad.

Manager Ah ah, he doesn't like it!  
 Frank Are you free tomorrow? We can say "tu" to each other, okay?  
 Joe Okay. Yes, I'm free tomorrow.  
 Manager We're going to a horse race. Do you want to come?  
 Joe Okay.  
 Frank We'll meet at the Place de L'Etoile at eleven o'clock in the morning.  
 Here is my phone number.  
 Joe Very good!

### Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
une entrecôte de boeuf	a ribeye steak	nominal group	feminine
les bouchées à la reine	regional dish with heavy cream and mushrooms	nominal group	feminine
un steak tartare	steak tartare	nominal group	masculine
essayer	to try	verb	
ça	it, this, that	demonstrative adjective	
penser	to think	verb	
maintenant	now	adverb	
demain	tomorrow	adverb	
on	we	personal pronoun	
se dire	to say to each other	phrase	
aller	to go	verb	
venir	to come	verb	
jouer aux courses	betting on the horses	verbal phrase	
d'accord	okay	adverb, interjection	
avoir rendez-vous (avec quelqu'un)	to meet (someone)	phrase	
à	at, to, in	preposition	
mon	my	singular possessive adjective	masculine or feminine
un numéro de téléphone	a phone number	noun	masculine
santé	cheers	elocution	
bon appétit	Enjoy your meal.	phrase	
bon	good	adjective or adverb	masculine
mauvais	bad		
pas	not	adverb	
libre	free	adjective	both

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

<i>Je voudrais une entrecôte de boeuf, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"I would like a rib eye steak, please."
<i>Je voudrais des bouchées à la reine, s'il vous plaît.</i>	"I would like some <i>bouchées à la reine</i> please."
<i>J'aime le steak tartare en France.</i>	"I like steak tartare in France."
<i>Je veux essayer ce plat.</i>	"I would like to try this dish."
<i>C'est quoi, ça ?</i>	"What is this?"
<i>Ça, c'est de l'art.</i>	"This is art."
<i>Il pense à elle.</i>	"He thinks about her."
<i>Il pense que c'est une négociation difficile.</i>	"He thinks that it is a difficult negotiation."
<i>Je pars maintenant.</i>	"I'm leaving now."
<i>Demain je vais à la piscine.</i>	"Tomorrow, I'm going to the swimming pool."
<i>À quelle heure tu viens demain ?</i>	"What time are you coming tomorrow?"
<i>On est occupé le mardi.</i>	"We are busy on Tuesday."
<i>On se dit bonjour.</i>	"We say 'hi' to each other."
<i>Marie va en Egypte.</i>	"Mary goes to Egypt."
<i>Je viens bientôt!</i>	"I am coming soon!"
<i>L'ambulance est venue tout de suite.</i>	"The ambulance came right away."
<i>Le dimanche, il joue aux courses.</i>	"He bets on the horses on Sundays."
<i>On y va ? D'accord !</i>	"Let's go? Okay!"
<i>Non, je ne suis pas d'accord.</i>	"No, I don't agree."
<i>J'ai rendez-vous avec Bob.</i>	"I am meeting Bob."
<i>Marc et Julie ont rendez-vous aujourd'hui.</i>	"Marc and Julie are meeting today."
<i>Je suis à la maison.</i>	"I am at home."
<i>J'habite à Sidney.</i>	"I live in Sydney."
<i>Je vais à la campagne.</i>	"I go to the countryside."
<i>Dans mon bateau, j'ai une baignoire.</i>	"In my boat, I have a bathtub."
<i>C'est mon père.</i>	"It's my father."
<i>C'est une jolie armoire. C'est mon armoire.</i>	"It's a nice wardrobe. It's my wardrobe."
<i>Voilà mon numéro de téléphone.</i>	"Here is my phone number."
<i>À votre santé les nouveaux mariés.</i>	"Cheers to the newlyweds."
<i>Santé, Maurice !</i>	"Cheers, Maurice!"
<i>Bon appétit !</i>	"Enjoy your meal!"
<i>C'est un bon livre.</i>	"It is a good book."
<i>Le chocolat, c'est bon.</i>	"Chocolate is good."
<i>Ce steak est mauvais.</i>	"This steak is bad."
<i>Je ne suis pas français.</i>	"I am not French."
<i>Tu es libre demain ?</i>	"Are you free tomorrow?"

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Asking and Giving an Opinion With the Verb *Penser* ("to think"), and Extending a Simple Invitation.**

*Alors, qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?*

**"Well, what do you think?"**

---

When asked for their opinion, French people love to debate and demonstrate their ability to argue. They often interrupt each other to make a point and debate an idea because it is seen as a form of entertainment in a informal situation, such as a dinner among friends, or as a display of one's ability to analyze and argue in a more formal business setting.

In the dialogue, after Joe tries a *steak tartare* ("raw ground meat with a blend of spices"), Frank asks him about his opinion with *Alors, qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?* ("Well, what do you think?").

### Asking for an Opinion:

To ask for a judgment from the person you're speaking with in any situation, use the question *Qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?* ("What do you think of it?")

The pronoun *en* will refer to whatever subject you spoke about previously.

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Ce journal est peu intéressant. Qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?</i>	"This newspaper is not very interesting. What do you think of it?"
<i>J'aime cette idée. Qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?</i>	"I like this idea. What do you think of it?"
<i>Ces grèves sont inacceptables. Qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?</i>	"These strikes are unacceptable. What do you think of it?"

### Giving Your Opinion

*Alors, qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?* ("Well, what do you think?")

---

Joe tells Frank what he thinks of the dish with the simple phrase *C'est délicieux* ("It's delicious.")

To give a simple opinion, you can use *c'est* as Joe does with the sequence:

### ***C'est* + Adjective**

#### **For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Ce journal est peu intéressant. Qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?</i>	"This newspaper is not very interesting. What do you think of it?"
<i>C'est amusant.</i>	"It's entertaining."
<i>J'aime cette idée. Qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?</i>	"I like this idea. What do you think of it?"
<i>C'est innovant.</i>	"It's innovative."
<i>Ces grèves sont inacceptables. Qu'est-ce que vous en pensez ?</i>	"These strikes are unacceptable. What do you think of it?"
<i>C'est inutile.</i>	"It's useless."

### **Language Expansion: Give Your Opinion with *Je crois que* and *Je pense que***

To make a full statement when giving your opinion, you can either use the verb *penser* ("to think") or *croire* ("to believe") in the structures *Je pense que/Je crois que* followed by *c'est* and an adjective.

#### **For Example:**

1. *Je pense que c'est inutile.*  
"I think it's useless."

You can also formulate your opinion with *Je pense que/Je crois que* followed by a subject and a verb conjugated at the indicative present.

#### **For Example:**

1. *Je pense que les grèves sont inutiles.*  
"I think that strikes are useless."

### Extending a Simple Invitation: *Tu veux venir ?* ("Do you want to come?")

---

After Joe tastes a few dishes, Bertrand tells him that he, Bertrand, and Mrs. Gontran (the manager) will go to the horse races. Bertrand invites Joe to go along with *Tu veux venir ?* ("Do you want to come?")

Once you have spoken about an event and you wish to extend an invitation to someone you are speaking with, use the phrase *Tu veux venir ?* ("Do you want to come?")

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Demain c'est la journée des sciences au parc La Villette. Tu veux venir ?</i>	"Tomorrow is science day at La Villette park. Do you want to come?"
<i>Il y a le film de Luc Besson. Tu veux venir ?</i>	"There is Luc Besson's movie. Do you want to come?"
<i>Je vais au cours de boxe. Tu veux venir ?</i>	"I go to the boxing class. Do you want to come?"

### Language Expansion: Come With Us.

---

To extend an invitation to one or more people to an activity you've already mentioned, you can also say *Allons-y ensemble*. ("Let's go together.").

Use *Viens avec nous* ("Come with us.") to extend an invitation to your interlocutor to go with you and someone else. If you are on your own, use *Viens avec moi* ("Come with me.").

### Dialogue Expansion: *Place de l'Étoile in Paris*

---

*Place de l'Étoile* in the heart of Paris is a large meeting point of twelve straight avenues, including the Champs-Élysées, forming a star. At its center lies the *Arc de Triomphe*. Cars navigate between about ten lines on the traffic circle around the *Arc de Triomphe*. No matter what the circumstances of an accident occurring on *Place de L'Étoile*, insurance companies share the damage between the parties fifty/fifty. It is the only place in Paris that falls under this clause.

## Cultural Insight

---

Nuit blanche "white night" means to spend the whole night awake doing whatever you feel like to do

except sleeping.

Paris organizes beginning of October in 2009 the 8th edition of the Nuit blanche "white night" event. This celebration lasts the whole night and consists of highlighting the urban environment through contemporary art at night time. The goal is to create a moment of conviviality in strategic points of the capital and other nearby cities by offering an itinerary to see and admire artists' work, animation, light shows, expositions, video projections, dances, story telling and much more. The concept is so successful that some European cities do not join the celebration as Tel Aviv and Amsterdam.

So if you plan on going in Paris in October ask for the Nuit Blanche art celebration usually the first week end of the month.



## Gengo French S1

Tame Talking On The Big Bad Telephone in French With These Tips

17

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	7



## French

---

(Joe appelle Frank sur son téléphone)

- Franck Allô ?
- Joe Bonjour Frank, c'est Joe.
- Franck Joe, où es-tu ?
- Joe Je ne sais pas.
- Franck On ne te voit pas.
- Joe Et je ne vous vois pas. Vous êtes où ?
- Franck On est devant le parc.
- Joe Euh...devant le parc ?
- Franck OK...qu'est-ce que tu vois ?
- Joe Je vois un grand panneau "Zara". Et l'Arc de Triomphe. Et un MacDonald.
- Franck Je vois où tu es. Tu es sur les Champs-Élysées. Attends là-bas. On arrive.
- Joe Merci, désolé.
- Franck Pas de problème. Ne bouge pas !
- (Cinq minutes plus tard)
- Franck Te voilà !
- Joe Encore désolé.

## English

---

(Joe calls Frank on his phone.)

- Frank Hello?
- Joe Hello, Frank, it's Joe.
- Frank Joe, where are you?
- Joe I don't know.
- Frank We don't see you.
- Joe And I don't see you. Where are you guys?
- Frank We are in front of the park.
- Joe Uh...in front of the park?
- Frank Okay...what do you see?
- Joe I see a big "Zara" billboard. And the Arc of Triumph. And a McDonald's.
- Frank I see where you are. You are on the Champs-Élysées. Wait there. We're coming.

Joe Thank you, sorry.  
 Frank No problem. Don't move!  
 (Five minutes later)  
 Frank There you are!  
 Joe Sorry, again.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
voir	to see	verb	
devant	in front of	preposition	
un parc	a park	noun	masculine
grand(e)	big, large, tall	adjective	
un panneau	a billboard	noun	masculine
attendre	to wait	verb	
là-bas	there, over there	locution	
arriver	to arrive	verb	
Allô	hello (on the phone)	interjection	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

<i>Tu vois la Tour Eiffel?</i>	"Do you see the Eiffel Tower?"
<i>Vous voyez la colline ?</i>	"Do you see the hill?"
<i>Je suis devant le bar.</i>	"I am in front of the bar."
<i>Je vais au parc samedi.</i>	"I'm going to the park on Saturday."
<i>Il est grand.</i>	"He's tall."
<i>J'ai une grande maison.</i>	"I have a big house."
<i>J'ai des grands pieds.</i>	"I have big feet."
<i>Ce panneau "Zara" est énorme.</i>	"This 'Zara' billboard is huge."
<i>J'attends le bus.</i>	"I am waiting for the bus."
<i>Je déteste attendre les gens.</i>	"I hate to wait for people."
<i>Il est ici? -Non, il est là-bas.</i>	"Is he here? No, he's over there."
<i>J'arrive bientôt!</i>	"I'll be there soon!" (Literally, "I arrive soon!")
<i>Il arrive à toute allure.</i>	"He arrives at top speed."
<i>Allô, c'est Paul!</i>	"Hello, it's Paul!"
<i>Allô qui est à l'appareil ?</i>	"Hello, who is on the phone?"

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Telling What You Know or Don't With the Verb *Savoir*.**

*Je ne sais pas.*

"I don't know."

---

Meeting people in a foreign place can be a challenge! Thankfully, getting live directions through cell phones is a time and headache saver. Famous places to meet in Paris are *place du Tertre*, where many artists gather in summer, *Montmartre*, the elevated neighborhood with the Sacre-Coeur basilica and its great view over the city, and the *pont Neuf*, the oldest bridge in Paris. Some also walk along the canal Saint-Martin or on the Saint-Louis Island with its narrow pedestrian streets and typical French food restaurants.

In the dialogue, Joe meets his friend Frank, but he has a hard time orienting himself to reach the rendezvous point. Frank calls him to ask where he is, and Joe says he doesn't know with the phrase *Je ne sais pas* ("I don't know.").

In French, to tell that you have knowledge of something (in other words, that you know a fact or something by heart) or how to do something (in other words, that you have an ability), use the verb *savoir* ("to know"). As Joe doesn't know where he is, he uses the verb *savoir* ("to know").

To conjugate the verb *savoir* ("to know") at the indicative present, use the construction in the table below:

Construction	French	"English"
First person singular	<i>Je sais</i>	"I know"
Second person singular	<i>Tu sais</i>	"you know"
Third person singular	<i>Il/elle sait</i>	"he/she knows"
First person plural	<i>Nous savons</i>	"we know"
Second person plural	<i>Vous savez</i>	"you know"
Third person plural	<i>Ils/elles savent</i>	"they know"

**For Example:**

French	"English"

<i>Je sais que tu es américain.</i>	"I know that you are American."
<i>Il sait où aller.</i>	"He knows where to go."
<i>Elle sait parler anglais.</i>	"She knows how to speak English."
<i>Nous savons ton numéro de telephone par coeur.</i>	"We know your phone number by heart."

### Language Expansion: The Verb "to Know"

#### *Savoir vs. Connaître*

To say that you know someone or that you're familiar with someone or something, use the verb *connaître* ("to know") as in *Je connais cet acteur* ("I know this actor."). However, notice the difference with *Je connais cette chanson* and *Je sais cette chanson*, which are both translated as "I know this song." The sentence with the verb *connaître* means "I'm familiar with this song," and the other one with the verb *savoir* means "I know this song by heart."

### Telling Someone That You "Don't Know"

To say that you "don't know," use the negation form. The easiest way is to say that you don't know about whatever was said previously with *Je ne sais pas*. ("I don't know.").

### Language Expansion: Precisely What You Don't Know

To tell precisely that you don't know a fact or something by heart or that you don't know how to do something, use *Je ne sais pas* followed by a complement to tell what you don't know.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je ne sais pas où je suis.</i>	"I don't know where I am."
<i>Je ne sais pas parler russe.</i>	"I don't know how to speak Russian."
<i>Je ne sais pas ce poeme par coeur.</i>	"I don't know this poem by heart."
<i>Je ne sais pas si tu arrives.</i>	"I don't know if you are arriving."

***On ne te voit pas.* ("We don't see you.")**


---

While on the phone, Joe and Frank try to spot each other in the street, but they cannot see each other. They affirm this fact with the statements *Et je ne vous vois pas* ("And I don't see you.") and *On ne te voit pas* ("We don't see you.").

To tell informally that you and your friends cannot see another person, use the negative form with the verb *voir* ("to see"), as in *On\* ne te\*\* voit pas* ("We don't see you.").

If you and your peers are in a formal situation or are trying to look for more than one person, you'd say *On\* ne vous voit pas* ("We don't see you.")

\*The personal pronoun *on* demonstrates that the French used is informal, as we only use this pronoun among people who know each other well in informal situations. It means "we" and belongs to the third person singular.

\*\*The pronoun *te* tells us that the speakers are familiar with each other and use *tu*, the informal "you."

***Ne bouge pas !* ("Don't move!")**

Once Frank spots Joe, he commands him to not move with *Ne bouge pas !* ("Don't move!") so he can join him.

To forbid your interlocutor to move or to give the order to someone to stay put, use the imperative tense with the verb *bouger* ("to move") at the negative form with the command *Ne bouge\* pas !* ("Don't move!")

### Conjugation Tip: Imperative Tense

---

When conjugating a verb from the first verb group such as *bouger* ("to move"), use the verb stem from the indicative present. However, make sure at the second person singular to eliminate the letter *-s* from the verb ending.

At the indicative present second person singular, the verb conjugation of *bouger* ("to move") is *bouges*. To spell the imperative conjugation at the same person correctly, write *bouge*.

Note the difference in spelling in the question *Tu bouges ta chaise, s'il te plait?* (indicative present) ("You move your chair, please?") and the sentence *Bouge ta chaise* (imperative) ("Move your chair.").

## Cultural Insight

---

### Getting a Busy Signal in France?

---

When calling someone in France and that person answer, you will almost always hear *Allô?* Then the French phone etiquette requires you to introduce yourself and present the reason for your call or ask for the person you'd like to talk to.

If you get a voicemail or an answering machine, the most classical greeting you'll listen to is

1. *Je ne peux pas vous répondre pour l'instant. Veuillez laisser un message après le bip sonore. Merci.*  
"I can't answer you for the moment. Please leave a message after the beep. Thank you." or
2. *Vous êtes bien sur le repondeur de (name). Je suis indisponible pour le moment. Merci de laisser un message après le bip sonore.*  
"You're on the answering machine of (name). I'm not available for the moment. Thank you for leaving a message after the beep."

If the cell phone you're trying to reach is out of the coverage zone, you'll hear: *Le numéro de votre correspondant est indisponible pour le moment, veuillez rappeler ultérieurement.* ("Your correspondent's phone number is not available for the moment, please call back later.")



## Gengo French S1

Pick Up Lines That Don't Work, And Ones That Do!

18

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	12



## French

---

Joe	Encore merci. Vous faites ça souvent ?
Franck	En général une fois par mois. Eh ! Qu'est-ce que c'est ?
Joe	Ça ? C'est juste un livre.
Franck	"Leçons de séductions à la française". Passe !
Joe	Tiens.
Directrice	"Vous avez du feu Mademoiselle ?" (rires). Joe, vilain garçon !
Joe	Non ...
Franck	(rires) Je plaisante. "Vous êtes charmante." (rires)
Directrice	Ça ne va jamais marcher.
Joe	Qu'est-ce que vous dites alors ?
Franck	Parfois, je dis "Ca vous a fait mal quand vous êtes tombeé du ciel?". Pas "Vous êtes charmante."
Directrice	Moi les mecs me disent toujours, "Tu as un plan ? Je me suis perdu dans tes yeux."
Joe	Ça marche, ça ?
Franck	Ça marche toujours !

## English

---

Joe	Thank you again! Do you do this often?
Frank	In general, once a month. Hey, what's this?
Joe	This? Oh, it's just a book.
Frank	"Seduction Lessons-The French Way." Pass it over!
Joe	Here you go.
Manager	"Do you have a light, Miss?" (laughing). Joe, naughty boy.
Joe	No...
Frank	Just kidding. "You are charming." (laughing)
Manager	That will never work.
Joe	Then what do you say?
Frank	I sometimes say, "Did it hurt when you fell out of the sky?" Not "You are charming."
Manager	Men always tell me, "Do you have a map? I got lost in your eyes."
Joe	That works?
Frank	It always works!

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
souvent	often	adverb	
en général	generally, usually	adverb	
par	per (referring to frequency)	preposition	
un mois	a month	noun	masculine
juste	just	adverb	
livre	book	noun	masculine
passer (quelque chose)	to pass (something) over	verb	
la séduction	seduction	noun	feminine
une leçon	a lesson	noun	feminine
parfois	sometimes	adverb	
à la française	the French way	phrase	
toujours	always, anyway, still	adverb	
marcher	to work, to walk	verb	
vilain(e)	naughty	adjective	
un garçon	a boy	noun	masculine
tomber	to fall	verb	
le ciel	sky	noun	masculine
quand	when	adverb	
charmant(e)	charming	adjective	
un plan	a map	noun	masculine
se perdre	to get lost	verb	
un oeil / des yeux	an eye/eyes	noun	masculine

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Il triche souvent quand il joue aux cartes.*

"He often cheats when he plays cards."

*Il a souvent raison.*

"He is often right."

*Je suis souvent en retard.*

"I'm often late."

*En général, je suis timide.*

"Usually, I'm shy."

*Je vais à la campagne une fois par mois.*

"I go to the country once a month."

*Il part faire du ski une fois par an.*

"He leaves to go skiing once a year."

*Je vais au cinéma tous les mois.*

"I go to the movies every month."

*Le mois de mai est le mois des jours fériés.*

"The month of May is the month of holidays."

*J'ai juste deux euros.*

"I just have two euros."

*L'accident est juste arrivé.*

"The accident just happened."

*J'aime les livres d'Histoire.*

"I like history books."

*J'ai lu tous les livres d'Agatha Christie.*

*L'auteur de ce livre est très populaire.*

*Passe le sel!*

*Il parle avec séduction.*

*La leçon de français est facile.*

*Je suis parfois en retard.*

*Il mange à la française.*

*Il mange toujours au restaurant.*

*Le lundi de pâques est toujours un lundi.*

*Mon téléphone marche bien.*

*C'est un vilain garçon.*

*C'est un garçon charmant.*

*Tomber de haut, ça fait mal.*

*Le ciel est bleu.*

*Quand je suis à Paris, je fume.*

*Quand est-ce que tu viens ?*

*C'est une femme extrêmement charmante.*

*Je me perds dans la ville.*

*Son oeil est ouvert.*

*Il a les yeux bleus.*

"I've read all the books by Agatha Christie."

"The author of this book is very popular."

"Pass the salt!"

"He talks with seduction."

"The French lesson is easy."

"I am sometimes late."

"He eats the French way."

"He always eats at the restaurant."

"Easter Monday is always on a Monday."

"My telephone works well."

"He is a naughty boy."

"He is a charming boy."

"Fall from a high point; it hurts."

"The sky is blue."

"When I am in Paris, I smoke."

"When do you come?"

"She is an extremely charming woman."

"I get lost in the city."

"His eye is open."

"He has blue eyes."

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Telling What You Would Say With *Dire* ("to say") and Talking About Habits and Frequencies While Seducing Someone**

*Parfois, je dis "Ça vous a fait mal quand vous êtes tombée du ciel ?" Pas "Vous êtes charmante."*

"I sometimes say, 'Did it hurt when you fell out of the sky?' Not 'You are charming.'"

Getting complimented always involves a warm feeling.

*La drague* or *flirter*, informal French words that mean "flirting," can be disastrous and nerve racking as often as they are exciting and successful when you are trying to seduce someone.

French people like to flirt and do it with humor, class, and sincerity. Well, that would be a perfect scenario, but perfection in seduction or in any other matter doesn't exist. The French film *L'Art (délicat) de la séduction* ("The (Delicate) Art of Seduction") portrays this truth with Patrick Timsit, a French comic, acting in this touching and humorous story of seducing and first dates.

### **Telling What You Would Say With *Dire* ("to say")**

---

In the dialogue, Frank notices that Joe carries a book about seducing someone the French way. He reads the title aloud and asks Frank to pass it on to him with *Leçons de séductions à la française. Passe !* With *Tiens* ("Here you go."), the dialogue gives the hint that Joe gives Frank the book.

Then the manager intervenes by saying an old-fashioned and common pick up line with "*Vous avez du*

*feu Mademoiselle ?" she found in Joe's book and used to ask for a light to light up a cigarette. Then she makes fun of Joe, pretending Joe would use that line and accusing him of being a "bad boy" with *vilain garçon* ! Frank goes on with the scenario and adds what Joe would say following the request for a light by pretending he is joking and telling the imaginary girl she "is charming" with *Vous êtes charmante*.*

To exchange tips on pick up lines, Frank uses *Je dis* ("I say") to introduce what they would say to start flirting with someone. To tell someone what you would say in a particular situation, use the verb *dire* ("to say") followed by the statement.

Conjugate the verb *dire* ("to say") in *le présent de l'indicatif* ("the indicative present") as follows:

***Je dis* ("I say ") + phrase.**

**For Example:**

1. *Je dis "Cupidon a un message: Il a besoin que tu lui redonnes mon coeur."*  
"I say, 'Cupid has a message: he needs you to give him my heart back.'"
2. *Je dis "Excusez-moi, comment je peux aller jusqu'à...hmmm...votre coeur?"*  
"I say, 'Sorry, how can I go to...hmm...your heart?'"

### Language Expansion: Making Plans About What You Will Say

---

To make a projection in the future of what you will say, use a verb in *le futur proche* ("near future" tense), as in *Je vais dire* followed by the phrase. An example is *Je vais dire "Cupidon a un message: Il a besoin que tu lui redonnes mon coeur* ("I'm going to say 'Cupid has a message: he needs you to give him my heart back.'").



*Moi les mecs me disent toujours "Tu as un plan ? Je me suis perdu dans tes yeux."*  
 ("Men/Guys always tell me, "Do you have a map? I got lost in your eyes.")

---

In the scene, Frank, the manager and Joe make references to how often things happen or how often they say a specific pick up line.

7

First, Joe asks how often they go to the horse races with the frequency term *souvent*, meaning "often" in the question *Vous faites ça souvent ?* ("Do you do this often?").

Then Frank replies "about once a month" with *En général une fois par mois*.

Later on, the manager refers to frequency with *jamais* ("never") when he says that Joe's imaginary pick up line\* won't work, using the phrase *Ça ne va jamais marcher*.

After that, Frank comments on which pick up line he "sometimes" uses with *Parfois, je dis* ("I sometimes say"), while the manager adds what she's "always" told by men with *Moi les mecs me disent toujours* ("Men/Guys always tell me").

The last reference to frequency occurs when Frank states that his line "always" functions with *Ça marche toujours !* ("It always works!")

\*Joe's imaginary pick up line is *Vous avez du feu Mademoiselle ? Non je plaisante. Vous êtes charmante*, meaning "'Do you have a light, Miss?' Just kidding. 'You are charming.'"

## Expressing Frequencies

To talk about frequency, place the adverbs of frequency after the verb.

Frequency adverbs that mean "one hundred percent" to "zero percent" of the time appear in the table below.

<b>French</b>	<b>Frequency</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>toujours</i>	100%	"always"
<i>habituellement</i>	80%	"routinely"
<i>souvent</i>	60%	"often"
<i>quelquefois</i>	30%	"sometimes"
<i>parfois</i>	30%	"sometimes"
<i>rarement</i>	10%	"rarely"
<i>presque jamais</i>	5%	"almost never"
<i>jamais</i>	0%	"never"

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Jamais, je ne dis ça.</i>	"I never say that."
<i>Nous parlons souvent.</i>	"We often talk."
<i>Il est toujours charmant.</i>	"He is always charming."
<i>Elle téléphone quelquefois.</i>	"She calls sometimes."

**Language Focus: Use the Negative Form With the Frequency Adverb *jamais* ("never")**

---

When using the adverb of frequency *jamais* ("never"), make sure to also use the *ne/n'* of the negative form to say you never do something. Place *ne* in front of the verb starting with a consonant and the *n'* with verbs starting with a vowel.

**For Example:**

- 9
1. *Il ne parle jamais avec moi. Il n'est jamais disponible.*  
"He never talks to me. He is never available."

***Ça ne va jamais marcher.* ("That will never work.")**

---

The manager realistically notes that Joe's imaginary pick up line won't function when attempting to seduce someone with *Ça ne va jamais marcher*. ("That will never work.")

This phrase contains the word *ne* marking the negation and *jamais*, the frequency adverb meaning "never."



To express that something will never happen or that you will never do something in the future, we use the *l'indicative futur* ("near future") verb tense with the auxiliary verb *aller* ("to go") followed by the main verb at the infinitive form in a negative statement.

### Telling That Something (Already Mentioned) Won't Happen

---

***Ça ne + va + jamais + verb at the infinitive.***

<b>Subject</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
Talking about clothing:	<i>Ça ne va jamais aller.</i>	"It won't fit."
Talking about a car:	<i>Ça ne va jamais démarrer.</i>	"It won't start."
Talking about a picture on a camera screen:	<i>Ça ne va jamais apparaître.</i>	"It won't appear."
Talking about a belated	<i>Ça ne va jamais</i>	"It won't begin."



show:	<i>commencer.</i>	
-------	-------------------	--

### Saying That You Will or Will Not Say Something

To say you will say something, use:

***Je vais dire* + Phrase/Word.**

To say you won't say something, use:

***Je ne vais pas dire* + Phrase/Word.**

**For Example:**

<b><i>French</i></b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je ne vais pas dire "Elle est jolie."</i>	"I won't say, 'She is pretty.'"
<i>Je vais dire "Elle est belle."</i>	"I will say, 'She is pretty.'"
<i>Je ne vais pas dire "C'est ordinaire."</i>	"I won't say, 'It's ordinary.'"
<i>Je vais dire "C'est original."</i>	"I will say, 'It's eccentric.'"

<i>Je ne vais pas dire "Adieu."</i>	"I won't say, 'bye forever.'"
<i>Je vais dire "Au revoir."</i>	"I will say, 'bye.'"

## Cultural Insight

---

### The Top Ten French Pick Up Lines

The ten most commonly used French pick up lines are (be sure to choose with discretion!):

1. *Est-ce que ton père est un voleur ? Parce qu'il a volé les étoiles du ciel pour les mettre dans tes yeux.*  
"Is your father a robber? Because he stole the stars from the sky to put in your eyes."
2. *Tu n'as pas eu mal quand tu es tombée du ciel ?*  
"You didn't get hurt when you fell from the sky?"
3. *Tu dois être fatiguée parce que tu as trotté dans ma tête toute la journée.*  
"You must be exhausted. You strolled all day in my head."
4. *Excuse-moi. On dirait que j'ai perdu mon numéro de téléphone... Est-ce que je pourrais emprunter le tien ?*  
"Sorry, it seems that I lost my phone number... Could I borrow yours?"
5. *Est-ce que tu crois au coup de foudre au premier regard ou est-ce que je dois repasser ?*  
"Do you believe in love at first sight or should I come back?"
6. *Excuse-moi. Est-ce que tu embrasses les inconnus ? Non ? Donc, je me présente.*

"Sorry. Do you kiss strangers? No? So, I'll introduce myself..."

- *Tes pieds doivent sûrement te faire mal, parce que tu t'es promenée dans mes rêves toute la nuit.*

"Your feet must hurt, because you had to walk all night in my dreams."

- *Je viens d'arriver dans ta ville. Est-ce que tu pourrais m'indiquer le chemin jusqu'à ton appartement ?*

"I just arrived in your city. Could you tell me the way to your apartment?"

- *Attention, vous m'avez fait tomber mon coeur.*

"Be careful, you made my heart fall."

- *La seule chose que tes yeux ne me disent pas, c'est ton nom.*

"The only thing your eyes don't say is your name."



## Gengo French S1

### 5 Places You Have to See When in Paris

19

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	9

## French

---

Joe                    Encore merci !  
 Frank                Donc, Joe, qu'est-ce que tu fais cette semaine ?  
 Joe                    Je ne sais pas encore. Lundi et mardi je vais chez les amis de mes parents, donc j'ai mercredi, jeudi et vendredi. Je veux aller au Louvre.  
 Frank                Le Louvre, c'est super ! Tu vas aller au Centre Pompidou ?  
 Joe                    Sûrement. Je veux vraiment y aller.  
 Frank                Et la Cité des Sciences ?  
 Joe                    Peut-être, mais je ne sais pas. C'est un peu loin.  
 Franck              Et Montmartre ?  
 Joe                    Sûrement pas. Je voudrais bien, mais je n'ai pas le temps.  
 Bertrand            Oh ! Et l'Institut du Monde Arabe ?  
 Joe                    Qu'est-ce que c'est ?  
 Bertrand            C'est un musée sur la culture arabe dans le monde.

## English

---

Joe                    Thank you again!  
 Frank                So, Joe, what are you doing this week?  
 Joe                    I don't know yet. On Monday and Tuesday, I'm going to my parents' friends, so I have Wednesday, Thursday, and Friday. I want to go to the Louvre.  
 Frank                The Louvre is great! Will you go to the Pompidou Center?  
 Joe                    Probably. I really want to go.  
 Frank                What about the City of Science?  
 Joe                    Maybe, but I don't know. It's a little far.  
 Frank                And Montmartre?  
 Joe                    Probably not. I would like to, but I don't have time.  
 Bertrand            Oh! What about the Arabic World Institute?  
 Joe                    What is this?  
 Bertrand            It's a museum about Arabic culture in the world.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
une semaine	a week	noun	feminine

lundi	Monday	noun	masculine
mardi	Tuesday	noun	masculine
mercredi	Wednesday	noun	masculine
jeudi	Thursday	noun	masculine
vendredi	Friday	noun	masculine
un(e) ami(e)	a friend	noun	masculine/feminine
les parents	parents	noun	always plural
un jour	a day	noun	masculine
vouloir	to want	verb	
chez	at (someone's home)		
encore	yet, again	adverb	
peut-être	maybe	adverb	
sûrement	probably	adverb	
avoir le temps	to have time	phrase	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Je travaille la semaine.*

"I work during the week."

*Il est resté à Bordeaux une semaine.*

"He stayed in Bordeaux a week."

*Partir en vacances pendant deux semaines, c'est génial!*

"It's great to take a two week vacation!"

*Lundi, je vais à Paris.*

"I'm going to Paris on Monday."

*Le lundi de pâques est toujours un lundi.*

"Easter Monday is always on a Monday."

*Tu travailles mardi?*

"Are you working on Tuesday?"

*On est occupé le mardi.*

"We are busy on Tuesday."

*Je vais à la piscine le mercredi.*

"I am going to the pool on Wednesdays."

*Le marché aux fruits est le jeudi.*

"The fruit market is on Thursday."

*Ce vendredi est chargé.*

"This Friday is busy."

*Vendredi treize est considéré néfaste.*

"Friday the 13th is considered dangerous."

*Jean, c'est mon ami.*

"Jean is my friend."

*Marie est mon amie.*

"Mary is my friend."

*Les parents de Robert sont heureux.*

"Robert's parents are happy."

*C'est un jour important.*

"It's an important day."

*C'est le jour de la fête des mères.*

"It's Mother's day."

*Elle veut manger.*

"She wants to eat."

*Elle te veut.*

"She wants you."

*Je suis chez Cécile aujourd'hui.*

"I'm at Cécile's place today."

*Chez elle, c'est joli.*

"It's pretty at her place."

*Je ne suis pas encore là.*

"I'm not there yet."

*Peut-être que le film est intéressant.  
Il est sûrement gentil.  
J'ai le temps de manger aujourd'hui.*

"Maybe the movie is interesting."  
"He's probably nice."  
"I have time to eat today."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Making Plans With the Future Tense and Expressing Wishes With *Je veux/voudrais*.**

***Donc, Joe, qu'est-ce que tu fais cette semaine ?***

**"So, Joe, what are you doing this week?"**

---

Visiting Paris is a never-ending experience. Paris is a city with many things to do and offers temporary expositions, conferences, and festivals. It is always evolving and changing. But Paris is not the only place of interest in France.

Each capital city of the twenty-one regions of France has its own identity and history. If you are fond of sports, technology, old stones, beaches, cultural events, authentic food, and the genuine French lifestyle, there is something for you.

Skiing and rock climbing is popular in the French Alps in the huge Chamonix Valley that France, Italy, and Switzerland share.

You can discover how Kronenbourg beer is manufactured in Strasbourg or how the French harness the power of the tide to produce electricity near Saint-Malo in Brittany, or you can visit the buildings that showcase how miners extracted coal for three centuries near Pas-de-Calais in an eight-hectare space (the equivalent of about twenty acres).

Then, be sure to stop in a village cafe for lunch or pick up a pastry in a bakery to taste the authentic



regional food so you can be part of the French lifestyle.

Frank, curious about Joe's entertainment schedule, asks him what he has planned for the coming week with the question: *Donc, Joe, qu'est-ce que tu fais cette semaine ?* ("So, Joe, what are you doing this week?") In this sentence, we conjugate the verb *faire* ("to do" or "to make") at the *présent de l'indicatif* with the context clearly demonstrating that we are referring to a future time frame.

### Asking About Your Interlocutor's Future Plans

To ask the person you're speaking with what he or she will do in the near future, use the verb *faire* ("to make" or "to do") conjugated to the *présent de l'indicatif*:

***Qu'est-ce que + tu fais + Time Expression ?***

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Qu'est-ce que tu fais demain?</i>	"What are you doing tomorrow?"
<i>Qu'est-ce que tu fais ce week-end?</i>	"What are you doing this weekend?"
<i>Qu'est-ce que tu fais samedi?</i>	"What are you doing Saturday?"
<i>Qu'est-ce que tu fais la semaine prochaine?</i>	"What are you doing next week?"

**Language Expansion: Asking What a Person Will Do With *le futur proche* ("the near future")**

---

To know what your interlocutor will do in the coming days or weeks, you can also use *le futur proche* ("the future tense") by using the auxiliary verb *aller* ("to go") followed by the main verb *faire* ("to do") at the infinitive form, as in *qu'est-ce que tu va faire cette semaine ?* ("What are you doing this week?")

### Conjugating a Verb at the Near Future

---

After Frank asks him about Joe's schedule, Joe let him know that he will be going to his friends' parents home with the phrase *Lundi et mardi je vais chez les amis de mes parents* ("On Monday and Tuesday I'm going to my parents' friends."). To tell what he will do in the near future, Joe uses *le futur proche* ("the near future").

To conjugate a verb at *le futur proche* ("the near future") tense, we conjugate the auxiliary verb *aller* ("to go") at the *présent de l'indicatif* in conjunction with the main verb at the infinitive form.

**Step 1** - Conjugate the auxiliary verb *aller* ("to go") at *le présent de l'indicatif*:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je vais</i>	"I go"
<i>Tu vas</i>	"You go"
<i>Il/elle va</i>	"He/she goes"
<i>Nous allons</i>	"We go"
<i>Vous allez</i>	"You go"
<i>Ils/elles vont</i>	"They go"

**Step 2** - Add the main verb at the infinitive after the auxiliary *aller* ("to go") in a statement as follows:

**Subject + *aller* (at the indicative present) + Main Verb at the Infinitive Verb**

**For Example:**

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>Je vais visiter le musée des Beaux- Arts.</i>	"I'm going to the art museums."
<i>Il va voir le musée de l'automobile.</i>	"He's going to see the automobile museum."
<i>Nous allons jouer au foot.</i>	"We're going to play soccer."

### Language Expansion

To tell you won't do something, say *Je ne vais pas* ("I'm not going to") followed by the infinitive verb as in *Je ne vais pas aller au Centre Georges Pompidou* ("I'm not going to go to the Georges Pompidou Center.").

Make sure to place the auxiliary verb *aller* ("to go") between the negation form *ne/n'* and *pas* and add the main infinitive verb:

**Subject + *ne/n'* + *aller* at le présent de l'indicatif + *pas* + Infinitive Verb**

**Tell What You Want With *Je veux* ("I want")**

After Joe states what he will do on Monday and Tuesday and which days he is free, he expresses what he wants to do with *Je veux aller au Louvre* ("I want to go to the Louvre museum."). To express what you or someone else needs, use the verb *vouloir*, meaning "to want." When using *Je veux*, be aware that it is a firm statement expressing strong desires. You can tone it down by using a soft tone.

To state that you need something, use:

### ***Je veux* + Article\* + Noun**

**\*Note:** Use the indefinite article *un, une, or des* to speak about an unspecified object. Use the definite article *le, la, or les* with a specific thing and the partitive article *du, de la, de l', or des* when speaking of non-countable things.

#### **For Example:**

<b><i>French</i></b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je veux une glace.</i>	"I want an ice cream."
<i>Je veux du chocolat.</i>	"I want some chocolate."
<i>Je veux de la limonade.</i>	"I want some lemon soda."
<i>Je veux un verre de jus de citron.</i>	"I want some lemonade."

To tell you want to do something, use

### ***Je veux* + Infinitive Verb**

#### **For Example:**

<b><i>French</i></b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je veux boire un café glacé.</i>	"I want to drink an iced coffee."
<i>Je veux voir la Cathédrale Notre-Dame.</i>	"I want to see the Notre-Dame Cathedral."
<i>Je veux faire du vélo dans Paris.</i>	"I want to bike in Paris."

<i>Je veux m'arrêter au bistrot.</i>	"I want to stop at the pub."
--------------------------------------	------------------------------

### Language Expansion: Express Wishes With *Je voudrais* ("I would like")

---

In the dialogue, Frank suggests that Joe go see Montmartre, a famous neighborhood and the Basilica Sacre-Coeur, which is located at the highest point of Paris. Joe expresses that he would like to see it, but that he doesn't have time by stating *Je voudrais bien, mais je n'ai pas le temps*, meaning "I'd like to, but I don't have time." In this statement, he states that he wishes to go to Montmartre rather than saying he needs to go visit it.

To express what you wish for and not firm needs, you can use the "would like" form in French, which is the verb *vouloir* ("to want") at the present conditional with *Je voudrais* ("I would like"), as in *Je voudrais un espresso* ("I'd like an espresso.") or *Je voudrais aller au concert de jazz* ("I'd like to go to a jazz concert.").

## Cultural Insight

### Famous Must-See Destinations in Paris

---

In the dialogue, the speakers refer to some famous points of interest to visit in Paris. They are:

#### ***La Cité des Sciences*, "The City of Sciences"**

This is the biggest science museum in Europe. Founded by the French government it is a public establishment of an industrial and commercial character specializing in scientific and technical culture.

It aims to spread scientific and technical knowledge among the public, particularly youth, and to create public interest in science, research, and industry. Located in Parc de la Villette in the nineteenth arrondissement of Paris, France, it features a planetarium, a submarine (called the *Argonaute*), an IMAX theatre (referred as *La Géode*), and special activities and experiments for children and teenagers.

***L'Institut du Monde Arabe, "The Arab World Institute"***

The *Institut du Monde Arabe*, or "Arab World Institute" in English, was established by eighteen Arab countries (now it has twenty-two members) who have an agreement with France to educate the public about the Arab world's cultural and spiritual values, to research its civilization, culture, and language, and to promote cooperation in the scientific and technical domain. To do so, the institute opened a library, a museum spread on four floors, and a multimedia library.

***Le Centre national d'art et de culture Georges Pompidou, "The George Pompidou National Center of Art and Culture"***

*Le Centre national d'art et de culture Georges Pompidou* in Paris is an eccentric cultural institution devoted to the modern and contemporary creations of the twentieth and twenty-first century. With its mission of an interdisciplinary vision, it offers a modern and contemporary art collection, a library with a general documentation on twentieth-century art, movie theaters, showrooms, a musical research institute where the arts of sculpting and painting are in conjunction with the art of acting, music, literature presented through thirty expositions yearly, dance shows, conferences, concerts, pedagogic activities, and much more.

Easily recognizable, the architecture of the *Centre national d'art et de culture Georges Pompidou* is flanked by tubular tunnels shading stairs and resembling a scaffold.



## Gengo French S1

You Better Ask Before You Do This in France

20

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	8

## French

---

Joe	Excusez-moi, vous ouvrez à quelle heure ?
Agent d'accueil	À dix heures.
Joe	Et quelle heure est-il ?
Agent d'accueil	Neuf heures cinquante.
Joe	D'accord, je vais attendre.
(10h)	
Joe	Un ticket, s'il vous plaît.
Agent d'accueil	Ça fait cinq euros.
Joe	Tenez.
Agent d'accueil	Cinq euros tout juste. Bonne visite.
Joe	Excusez-moi, je peux prendre des photos ?
Sécurité	Désolé, pas de photos.
Joe	Et une vidéo ?
Sécurité	Euh...Oui, c'est bon, je pense. Allez-y.

## English

---

Joe	Excuse me, what time do you open?
Staff	At ten.
Joe	What time is it?
Staff	Nine-fifty.
Joe	Okay, I'll wait.
(Ten o'clock a.m.)	
Joe	One ticket, please.
Staff	That's five euros.
Joe	Here you are.
Staff	Five euros exactly. Enjoy your visit.
Joe	Excuse me; can I take pictures?
Security	Sorry, no pictures.
Joe	How about a video?
Security	Hmmm...yes, it's okay I think. Go ahead.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
--------	---------	-------	--------



quel/quelle/quels/quelles	which, what	interrogative adjective	
l'heure	time (on the clock)	noun	feminine
ouvrir	to open	infinitive verb	
dix heures	ten o'clock		
attendre	to wait	verb	
cinq	five	adjective	
tout juste	exactly	adverb	
prendre	to take	verb	
une photo (photographie)	a photo	noun	feminine
une vidéo	a video	noun	feminine
penser	to think	verb	
bon	okay	adjective	
euh...	well...	interjection	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Quelle heure est-il?*

*Quelle heure il est ?*

*Tu aimes quel acteur ?*

*C'est l'heure de dormir.*

*C'est l'heure de partir.*

*Tu ouvres la porte?*

*Tu peux ouvrir le pot de confiture ?*

*Il est dix heures.*

*J'attends le bus.*

*Je déteste attendre les gens.*

*J'ai cinq voitures !*

*J'ai cinq euros tout juste.*

*Il prend le train jeudi.*

*Il a pris le train.*

*Le paparazzi acharné attend patiemment de prendre une photo.*

*Il est à gauche sur la photo.*

*La photo est nette.*

*J'ai une vidéo du Tour de France.*

*Il pense à elle.*

*Il pense que c'est une négociation difficile.*

*Bon. On est prêts.*

*Euh...pourquoi pas?*

"What time is it?"

"What time is it?"

"Which actor do you like?"

"It's time to sleep."

"It's time to go."

"Can you open the door?"

"Can you open the marmalade jar?"

"It's ten o'clock."

"I am waiting for the bus."

"I hate to wait for people."

"I have five cars!"

"I have exactly five euros."

"He takes the train on Thursday."

"He took the train."

"The fierce paparazzi wait patiently to take a picture."

"He is on the left in the picture."

"The picture is clear."

"I have a video of the Tour de France."

"He thinks about her."

"He thinks that it is a difficult negotiation."

"Okay. We're ready."

"Well...why not?"

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Giving Time, Asking at What Time Things Are Done, and the Imperative *Allez-y* ("Go ahead").**

*Excusez-moi, vous ouvrez à quelle heure ?*

"Excuse me, what time do you open?"

---

Time can be precious.

The French respect time, but they are flexible and tolerate a fifteen-minute belated arrival among friends or in formal or business-like situations. Anything can happen, and not being in control of unpredictable events is a given. However, if you will be later than the tolerated fifteen minutes, make a call to let the other party know you will be late.

4

In the dialogue, Joe goes to a tourist place and finds himself in front of closed doors. He asks the staff at the cashier at what time the premises will open with the question *Excusez-moi, vous ouvrez à quelle heure ?* ("Excuse me, what time do you open?").

### **Asking About When Something Will Happen**

---

To ask when something will occur or when someone will do something, use the question word *à quelle heure* with a verb at *le présent de l'indicatif* with the signification of the future time frame in one of the sequences below:

1. Subject + verb + *à quelle heure* ?
2. *À quelle heure* + subject + verb ?
3. *À quelle heure* + verb-personal pronoun\* ?

**\*Note:** make sure when using the subject and verb inversion to use a personal pronoun, such as *tu* ("you") or *nous* ("we"), and add a hyphen between the verb and pronoun. [The subject-verb inversion is almost never done with the personal pronoun *je* ("I").]

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>À quelle heure finissez-vous ?</i>	"At what time do you finish?"
<i>La séance est à quelle heure ?</i>	"At what time is the session?"
<i>À quelle heure travaillent-elles ?</i>	"At what time do they work?"
<i>À quelle heure tu pars ?</i>	"At what time do you leave?"
<i>Vous venez à quelle heure ?</i>	"At what time do you come?"
<i>À quelle heure les magasins ferment ?</i>	"At what time do the stores close?"

**Telling the Time Before the Hour:**  
*Neuf heures cinquante.* ("Nine-fifty.")

---

After Joe asks the staff member the time with *Quelle heure est-il ?* ("What time is it?"), he learns that it is nine-fifty with the phrase *Neuf heures cinquante* ("Nine-fifty").

To tell the time a couple of minutes before the hour, you can choose between two ways of formulating the French phrase, as in English.

The easiest expression to use to tell the time when it is a few minutes before the hour is to tell the hour first and then the minutes in the phrase:

*Il est\* heure(s) .*

**For Example:**

<b>Time</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
2h40	<i>Il est deux heures quarante.</i>	"It is two-forty."
16h50	<i>Seize heures cinquante.</i>	"Four-fifty."
10h45	<i>Il est dix heures quarante-cinq.</i>	"It is ten forty-five."
8h55	<i>Huit heures cinquante-cinq.</i>	"Eight fifty-five."

The other way is to tell how many minutes are missing before the hour, as in *Il est\* heure(s) moins .*

**\*Note:** You can omit the form *Il est* ("it is") to indicate the time.

**For Example:**

<b>Time</b>	<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
2h40	<i>Il est trois heures moins vingt.</i>	"It is twenty to three."
16h50	<i>Cinq heures moins dix.</i>	"Ten to five."
10h45	<i>Il est onze heures moins le quart.</i>	"It is quarter to eleven."
8h55	<i>Neuf heures moins cinq.</i>	"Five to nine."

**Language Focus: Saying it Is a Quarter to the Hour**

To tell the time fifteen minutes to the hour, you can say as presented above, *Il est onze heures moins le quart* ("It is a quarter to eleven."), using the group of words *moins le quart* ("minus a quarter").

### Dialogue Focus: *Allez-y* ("Go Ahead")

---

At the end of the dialogue, the security guard lets Joe enter the place by saying *allez-y*, meaning "go ahead." We can also interpret it as giving him his consent or permission to enter.

The phrase *allez-y* ("go ahead") is very commonly used in everyday French and includes the verb *aller* ("to go") at the imperative tense and the pronoun *y*, referring to a place.

To formally let someone do something or show the way to go to, use the verb *aller* ("to go") at the imperative form of the second person plural with *allez-y*.

If you are in an informal situation, you may hear or would say *vas-y* ("Go ahead") with the verb *aller* ("to go") conjugated at the imperative tense at the second person singular.

**Note:** In the phrases *allez-y* ("go ahead") and *vas-y* ("go ahead"), notice that we form the imperative tense in French in a phrase without a subject. It is the only tense where we omit the subject.

## Cultural Insight

---

## Top Ten Sites Where You'll Wait in Line With Other French Tourists

---

The top ten most visited paid-entry tourist sites in France in 2007 (Source: French National Statistical Office) appear in the list below.

### 1. Versailles Castle, Paris

Versailles Castle is a royal castle in Versailles, located near Paris. Louis XIV chose a site where he could organize and completely control a French government, and he settled on the royal hunting lodge at Versailles. Over the following decades, he expanded it into one of the largest palaces in the world (Félibien, 1703; Marie, 1972; Verlet, 1985). Versailles is therefore famous not only as a building, but also as a symbol of the system of absolute monarchy of the *Ancien Régime*.

### 2. Orsay Museum, Paris

This museum, located in the former railway station, the *Gare d'Orsay*, presents mainly French art dating from 1848 to 1915, including paintings, sculptures, furniture, and photography. It is probably best known for its extensive collection of impressionist masterpieces by such painters such as Monet, Degas, Renoir, and Cezanne.

### 3. Cité des Sciences et de l'Industrie, Paris

(See description in Gengo Lesson 19.)

### 4. Astérix Park, Plailly

Astérix Park is an amusement park based on the stories of Asterix, a Gaulish man living in the last

Gaulish village during the Roman Empire (written by Albert Uderzo and René Goscinny). It is situated approximately 35 km (22 miles) north of Paris. It is especially well known for its large variety of roller coasters, and it has begun incorporating rides and themes from historic cultures, such as the Romans and the ancient Greeks.

### **5. Futuroscope Park, Poitiers**

Futuroscope Park is a theme park based on multimedia, cinematographic, and audio-visual techniques. It boasts several 3-D cinemas along with other attractions and shows, some of which are unique in the world.

### **6. Triumph Arch, Paris**

The Triumph Arch is a monument in Paris located in the centre of the Place Charles de Gaulle, also known as the *Place de l'Étoile*. It honors those who fought for France, particularly during the Napoleonic Wars. On the inside and the top of the arc are all of the names of generals and the wars in which they fought. Underneath is the tomb of the Unknown Soldier from World War I.

### **7. Quai Branly Museum, Paris**

The Quai Branly Museum is a museum in Paris that features indigenous art and artifacts of cultures and civilizations from Africa, Asia, Oceania, and the Americas.

### **8. National Museum of Natural History, Paris**

The National Museum of Natural History has many popular sites in France, including the Plant Garden and the Evolution Gallery in Paris. These galleries showcase wonders of the natural world and trace the historic processes and mutations that species have undergone through the process of evolution. When you visit, you will see exhibits showing how living creatures interact with their environments and reconstructing of the genealogies of various species.

### **9. Abbaye Mont Saint-Michel, Normandy**

The French built this Benedictine abbey on a rocky, tidal island. The construction of the first monastic establishment on the island began during the eighth century.

**10. *Le Puy du Fou* ("The Podium of Insanity"), Les Epesses**

*Le Puy du Fou* is a historical theme park in Les Epesses in the heart of the Vendée region of Western France featuring shows and attractions based on knights, the Vikings, the gladiators, falcons, and Richelieu's Musketeers.





## Gengo French S1

### Getting the Best Table and Dish in Town

21

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	9

## French

---

Serveuse	Bonjour Monsieur.
Joe	Une table pour une personne, s'il vous plaît.
Serveuse	Fumeur ou non fumeur ?
Joe	Non fumeur.
Serveuse	Par ici. Voilà.
Joe	Euh ... je peux m'asseoir là ?
Serveuse	Bien sûr.
(10 minutes plus tard)	
Serveuse	Vous désirez ?
Joe	Qu'est-ce que vous recommandez ?
Serveuse	Le homard est très bon.
Joe	Je vais prendre ça. Et ça, qu'est-ce que c'est ?
(Il montre ce qu'un autre client mange)	
Serveuse	C'est une salade campagnarde.
Joe	Je vais prendre ça aussi.
Serveuse	Très bien. Et pour accompagner ?
Joe	De l'eau. Merci.

## English

---

Hostess	Hello, sir.
Joe	A table for one, please.
Hostess	Smoking or nonsmoking?
Joe	Nonsmoking.
Hostess	Right this way. Here you are.
Joe	Hmmm...can I sit here?
Hostess	Of course.
(Ten minutes later)	
Hostess	What would you like?
Joe	What do you recommend?
Hostess	The lobster is very good.
Joe	I'll have that. And this, what is this?
(He points to what a customer is eating.)	
Hostess	It's a country salad.
Joe	I'll also have that.

Hostess                      Very well. And to accompany?  
 Joe                              Water. Thanks.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
fumeur (restaurant)	smoking (restaurant)	adjective	
non fumeur	non-smoking	adjective	
s'asseoir	to sit	verb	
là	there, here	adverb of place	
recommander	to recommend	verb	
un homard	a lobster	noun	masculine
aussi	too, also	adverb	
campagnard(e)	from the country	adjective	masculine/feminine
désirer	to desire, to want	verb	
pour	for, to	preposition	
accompagner	to accompany	verb	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Je n'aime pas les restaurants fumeurs.*

*J'aime les restaurants non fumeurs.*

*Tu t'assoies ici.*

*Nous nous asseyons au premier rang.*

*Il est là.*

*Je recommande ce film, il est très bien.*

*Je mange un homard délicieux.*

*Elle apprend aussi le français.*

*Elle apprend aussi le français.*

*C'est un plat campagnard.*

*Vous désirez?*

*Je désire aller à Bordeaux le week-end prochain.*

*Pour aller à Paris, je prends le train.*

*C'est pour toi.*

*Il étudie la chimie pour être pharmacien.*

*Quel vin pour accompagner?*

*Il vaut mieux être seul que mal accompagné.*

"I don't like smoking restaurants."

"I like non-smoking restaurants."

"You sit here."

"We sit in the first row."

"He is there."

"I recommend this movie; it's very good."

"I'm eating a delicious lobster."

"She also learns French."

"She learns French too."

"It's a dish from the country."/"It's a country dish."

"What do you want?"/"What would you like?"

"I'd like to go to Bordeaux next weekend."

"To go to Paris, I take the train."

"This is for you."

"He studies chemistry to be a pharmacist."

"Which wine to accompany?"

"It is worth more to be alone than badly accompanied."

---

## Grammar Points

---

### **The Focus of This Lesson Is an Introduction to French Reflexive Verbs.**

*Euh...je peux m'asseoir là ?*

"Hmmm...can I sit here?"

---

Another common dish, apart from *la salade campagnarde* ("the country salad"), you will find in France is *un steak au poivre, frites et salade* ("peppered steak, French fries, and salad"). You can order this national dish anywhere in France, and it is the most classical main dish. It is not associated with a particular region and is not considered as a fancy or difficult recipe. The sauce restaurants serve with the steak is usually made of one to three different kinds of peppers, whether black, green, white, or pink, with some heavy cream, cognac, and the leftover seared steak juices and condiments from the bottom of the pan.

Often children's menus include a similar meal, but instead of a steak, restaurants serve a patty of ground meat. If you are not a fan of lightly cooked steak, such as *un steak bleu* ("rare steak") or *un steak saignant* ("medium rare steak"), ask either for *un steak à point* ("a medium steak") or *un steak bien cuit* ("a well-done steak").

In the dialogue, Joe is in a restaurant and orders a very common French dish. Beforehand, he asks the waitress whether he can sit at a particular table with the question *Euh...je peux m'asseoir là ?* ("Hmmm...can I sit here?") He uses the verb *ir s'asseoir*, meaning "to sit," which is a reflexive verb.

### **French Pronominal Verbs**

---

In French, we call "pronominal verbs" (also called "reflexive verbs") *les verbes pronominaux*. There are two types of pronominal verbs in French: *les verbes pronominaux réfléchis* ("pronominal reflexive verbs") and *les verbes pronominaux réciproques* ("pronominal reciprocal verbs").

### 1 - *Les verbes pronominaux réfléchis* ("pronominal reflexive verbs")

The first type classifies reflexive verbs in French that express reflexive actions where the subject performs the action on itself, as with the verb *s'appeler* ("to be called") or *s'asseoir* ("to sit"). In both cases, the two verbs indicate an action the subject does upon itself.

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>s'appeler</i>	"to be called"
<i>se regarder</i> (in the mirror)	"to look at oneself (in the mirror)"
<i>s'arrêter</i>	"to stop"
<i>se brosser</i>	"to brush"
<i>se coucher</i>	"to go to bed"
<i>s'habiller</i>	"to get dressed"
<i>se laver</i>	"to wash"

### 2 - *Les verbes pronominaux réciproques* ("pronominal reciprocal verbs")

---

These verbs express a reciprocal action between two or more persons, as with the verb *se téléphoner* ("to call one another").

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>s'amuser</i>	"to have fun"
<i>se regarder (les uns les autres)</i>	"to look at each other"
<i>se dépêcher</i>	"to hurry"
<i>s'endormir</i>	"to fall asleep"
<i>s'ennuyer</i>	"to be bored"
<i>s'entendre</i>	"to get along"
<i>se reposer</i>	"to rest"

**Conjugating Pronominal Reflexive Verbs**

In the dialogue, the speakers use the pronominal reflexive verb *s'asseoir* ("to sit"). It is a reflexive verb or *un verbe pronominal réfléchi*, as the subject does the action of sitting by him- or herself.

To conjugate a pronominal reflexive verb in the present tense (such as the verb *s'asseoir*, "to sit" in the dialogue), you need to pay attention to the personal pronoun (the subject of the verb) and the verb form.

**Step 1 - Determine the subject's person:**

When conjugating a pronominal verb, you need to determine the person of the subject (first person plural or second person singular, for example) to conjugate the verb at the correct form. All the conjugated pronominal verb forms (either reflexive or reciprocal) are composed of a reflexive pronoun (*me, te, se, nous, vous, se*) and the conjugated verb itself.

### For Example:

1. *Joe (s'amuser) au restaurant.*  
 "Joe ("to have fun") at the restaurant."  
 The subject "Joe" is third person singular.

### Step 2 - Choose the correct reflexive pronoun:

Once you've found the subject's person, you need to choose the reflexive person according to it.

Person and Number	French
First person singular	<i>me/m'*</i>
Second person singular	<i>te/t'*</i>
Third person singular	<i>se/s'*</i>
First person plural	<i>nous</i>
Second person plural	<i>vous</i>
Third person plural	<i>se/s'*</i>

\***Note:** Use *m'/t'/s'* with verbs when the verb form starts with a vowel.

### For Example:

1. *Joe (s'amuser) au restaurant.*  
 "Joe ("to have fun") at the restaurant."  
 The reflexive pronoun is *se* or *s'*, as the subject "Joe" is third person singular.

### Step 3 - Conjugate the verb:

Conjugate the verbs normally (as an example, the verb *s'amuser* ending in *-er* from the first verb group) and add the reflexive pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous, and se*.

**For Example:**

*s'amuser* ("to have fun")

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>je m'amuse</i>	"I have fun"
<i>tu t'amuses</i>	"you have fun"
<i>il/elle s'amuse</i>	"he/she has fun"
<i>nous nous amusons</i>	"we have fun"
<i>vous vous amusez</i>	"you have fun"
<i>ils/elles s'amusent</i>	"they have fun"

**For Example:**

1. *Joe s'amuse au restaurant.*  
"Joe has fun at the restaurant."

**Language Note: Conjugating the Verb *s'asseoir***


---

*S'asseoir at le présent de l'indicatif*

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>je m'assois</i>	"I sit"
<i>tu t'assois</i>	"you sit"
<i>il/elle s'assoit</i>	"he/she sits"
<i>nous nous asseyons</i>	"we sit"
<i>vous vous asseyez</i>	"you sit"
<i>ils/elles s'asseoient</i>	"they sit"

**Note:** You may also hear the informal form: *je m'assieds*, *tu t'assieds*, *il/elle s'assied*, or *ils/elles s'asseient*.



**For Example:**

1. *Joe s'assied au restaurant.*  
"Joe sits at the restaurant."
2. *Joe s'asseoit au restaurant.*  
"Joe sits at the restaurant."

---

## Cultural Insight

---

### Salad Days in France

*La salade campagnarde* ("the country salad") can vary from one region to another or the season.

It usually includes some cold meats, such as cooked bacon bits or white chicken meat, ham or hard-cured sausage such as salami, some lettuce, cheese, hard-boiled eggs, carrot, and onions with a mustard vinaigrette. The recipe's multiple versions are as numerous as you can imagine according to the local produce in season. The French always serve it with some bread.

In the same food style, you can also order *une assiette campagnarde* ("a country plate"), including a pâté and a cold meat that is the specialty of the region, with a piece of the local cheese served with small dill pickles, butter, and bread slices. If you'd like to sample the typical popular French food of a region, this last dish is the way to go.





## Gengo French S1

You Paid What?! The Best Place to Shop in France

22

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	8

## French

---

(Ambiance de marché)

Vendeur 1      Le beau poisson ! Qui veut mon poisson ?  
 Vendeur 2      Elle est belle, la salade, elle est belle !!!  
 Joe              Excusez-moi, qu'est-ce que c'est, ça ?  
 Vendeur 1      Du lapin à la moutarde.  
 Joe              Qu'est-ce qu'il y a dedans ?  
 Vendeur 1      Du lapin, de la moutarde, et de la crème fraîche.  
 Joe              Combien ça coûte ?  
 Vendeur 1      Cinq euros la pièce, quinze euros les cinq.  
 Joe              Et ça, qu'est-ce que c'est ?  
 Vendeur 1      Des blocs de chèvres. Trois euros la pièce.  
 Joe              Je vais prendre un de chaque.  
 Vendeur 1      Voilà, ça fait huit euros.  
 Joe              Voilà cinq cent euros.  
 Vendeur 1      Vous avez un billet plus petit ?  
 Joe              Non, désolé.  
 Vendeur 1      Voilà votre monnaie.  
 Joe              Merci.

## English

---

(Market ambiance)

Salesperson 1      Nice fish here! Who wants my fish?  
 Salesperson 2      Beautiful salad! The salad is beautiful!!  
 Joe                  Excuse me, what is this?  
 Salesperson 1      Rabbit with mustard.  
 Joe                  What's in it?  
 Salesperson 1      Rabbit, mustard, and heavy cream.  
 Joe                  How much does it cost?  
 Salesperson 1      Five euros each. Fifteen euros for five.  
 Joe                  And this, what is this?  
 Salesperson 1      Goat cheese blocks. Three euros each.  
 Joe                  I'll take one of each.  
 Salesperson 1      Here you are. That's eight euros.  
 Joe                  Here are five hundred euros.  
 Salesperson 1      Do you have a smaller bill?

Joe Sorry.  
 Salesperson 1 Here is your change.  
 Joe Thank you.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
un poisson	a fish	noun	masculine
une salade	a salad	noun	feminine
la moutarde	mustard	noun	feminine
la crème fraîche	heavy cream	noun	feminine
le lapin	rabbit (food)	noun	masculine
le chèvre (cheese)	goat cheese	noun	masculine
beau	beautiful	adjective	masculine
belle	beautiful	adjective	feminine
chaque	each	adjective	
plus	more (comparison form -er)	adverb of quantity	
Eh bien...	well...	expression	
qui	who	pronoun	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Le poisson est dans l'aquarium.*

*J'achète une salade.*

*J'aime la moutarde de Dijon.*

*Je fais la cuisine à la crème fraîche.*

*Le lapin à la moutarde est un plat français.*

*Ce chèvre est délicieux.*

*Vous êtes beau.*

*Cette région est belle.*

*Chaque personne est unique.*

*Chaque fois que je peux je joue aux cartes.*

*Tu as un T-Shirt plus grand?*

*Tranquil Emile est plus calme que toi.*

*Eh bien...d'accord!*

*Qui veut un café?*

"The fish is in the aquarium."

"I'm buying a salad."

"I like Dijon mustard."

"I cook with heavy cream."

"Mustard rabbit is a French dish."

"This goat cheese is delicious."

"You are beautiful."

"This region is beautiful."

"Each person is unique."

"Each time I can, I play cards."

"Do you have a bigger t-shirt?"

"Tranquil Emile is calmer than you."

"Well...okay!"

"Who wants a coffee?"

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Expressing What You Need With *Vouloir* ("want") and Making Comparisons With *Plus* ("more") or *Moins* ("less").**

*Qui veut mon poisson ?*

"Who wants my fish?"

---

Going to the open-air market in France is a weekly routine to get fresh fruits, vegetables, and also to buy the local and artisanal produce, such as cheese or prepared meals.

French farmers' markets usually occur once or twice a week where local producers or family-owned food retail businesses sell their products. They can offer lower-priced items than supermarkets, but they also offer more expensive ones depending on the production scale and the quality. A rule of thumb is that cold meats and cheeses aren't as economical; however, they are of the best quality and produced locally. Therefore, buying your cheeses and cold meats from a market is a must while in France so you can discover the taste of local French food in the town you are visiting.

4 In the dialogue, Joe goes to an open-air market somewhere in Paris and dives into the atmosphere of the popular French custom of strolling through the market displays. Salespeople loudly announce their products, as one does in the conversation with *Le beau poisson ! Qui veut mon poisson ?* ("Nice fish here! Who wants my fish?") while asking "who wants I't with the verb *vouloir* ("to want") to solicit the potential customers.

### Stating Needs and Wishes With *Vouloir* ("to want")

---

To express needs or wishes in a direct manner, use the verb *vouloir*, meaning "want," at *le present de l'indicatif*.

Conjugation of *vouloir* at the indicative present ("to want")

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>je veux</i>	"I want"
<i>tu veux</i>	"you want"
<i>il/elle veut</i>	"he/she wants"
<i>nous voulons</i>	"we want"
<i>vous voulez</i>	"you want"
<i>ils/elles veulent</i>	"they want"

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Le vendeur veut trois euros pour le fromage de chèvre.</i>	"The salesperson wants three euros for the goat cheese."
<i>Joe veut payer avec un billet.</i>	"Joe wants to pay with a bill."
<i>Tu veux boire ?</i>	"Do you want to drink?"
<i>Je veux du jambon fumé.</i>	"I want smoked ham."

**Language Expansion: Expressing Needs or Making Requests in a Subtle and Polite Manner**

To express needs or make requests in a less direct manner than with the verb *vouloir* at the indicative present, but rather with a more polite and subtle approach as with the English verb form "would like," conjugate the verb *vouloir* at *le présent du conditionnel* ("the conditional present").

*Vouloir* at the indicative present ("to want")

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>je voudrais</i>	"I would like"
<i>tu voudrais</i>	"you would like"
<i>il/elle voudrait</i>	"he/she would like"
<i>nous voudrions</i>	"we would like"
<i>vous voudriez</i>	"you would like"
<i>ils/elles voudraient</i>	"they would like"

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>

<i>Joe voudrait savoir le prix du lapin à la moutarde.</i>	"Joe would like to know the price of the rabbit with mustard."
<i>Les vendeurs voudraient tout liquider.</i>	"Salespeople would like to clear everything."
<i>Je voudrais le prix du kilo de tomates.</i>	"I'd like the price per kilo of tomatoes."

### Cultural Tip: The Metric System

---

When purchasing foods by weight in France, ask for quantities using grams or kilos. One kilo is about two pounds, and one hundred grams is about three and a half ounces.

### *Vous avez un billet plus petit ? ("Do you have a smaller bill?")*

---

After Joe asks for what he wants to buy in the market, he hands a five hundred euros bill to the merchant. The salesperson, seeing the bill, makes a comparison with a bill he'd like to get from Joe by asking for a smaller one with the question *Vous avez un billet plus petit ?* ("Do you have a smaller bill?") Here, the speaker implies the comparison of the bill shown with another one. If he were to mention the bill he makes the comparison with, he could say *Vous avez un billet plus petit que celui-ci ?* ("Do you have a smaller bill than this one?")

The merchant makes the comparison between the bill Joe gives and the one the merchant would like using the adverb of comparison *plus* ("more") and the adjective *petit* ("small") qualifying the noun *billet*, meaning "bill."

### Making Comparisons of Superiority With *Plus* ("More")



To compare two things and express superiority, use the adverb *plus* ("more") followed by an adjective or adverb.

***plus + adjective/adverb + que***

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Ce bloc de chèvre est plus grand que celui-ci.</i>	"This block of goat cheese is bigger than this one."
<i>Le poisson au supermarché est plus cher.*</i>	"The supermarket fish is more expensive."
<i>Ce vendeur parle plus forttement que les autres.</i>	"This salesman speaks louder than the others."
<i>Joe marche plus doucement au marché que dans la rue.</i>	"Joe walks slower in the market than in the street."

\*In this phrase, the speaker implies that the supermarket fish is more expensive than the fish where the speaker is. To do so, he could use the phrase *le poisson au supermarché est plus cher que celui du marchand.\** ("The supermarket fish is more expensive than the merchant one.")

### **Making Comparisons of Inferiority With Moins ("less")**

To compare two things and express inferiority, use the adverb *moins* ("less") followed by an adjective or adverb.

***moins + adjective/adverb + que***

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>

<i>Ce marché est moins grand que l'autre.</i>	"This market is smaller than the other one."
<i>Les fruits sont moins frais que les légumes.</i>	"Fruits are less fresh than vegetables."
<i>Ce vendeur discute moins longtemps avec les clients que les autres.</i>	"This salesperson talks less with his clients than the others."
<i>Les clients dépensent moins que l'année dernière.</i>	"Clients spend less than last year."

## Cultural Insight

---

### To Market, to Market in France

---

Markets with fresh fruit and vegetables are an integral part of the French tradition of eating home-prepared meals and the French appreciation of good food that never died. That is why it is an exclusive and authentic French experience to discover the markets while in France.

Both local sellers and a range of specialized ones attend the large weekly markets. Specialty sellers will set up their stalls in a different market each day of the week. Very often, the larger towns will have their weekly markets on Saturdays. Smaller cities will usually have them on the other days.

Larger markets have a wider range of specialized booths, offering organic vegetables, food specialties from the region such as olives, and Mediterranean specialties from Southern France or from other countries, such as *merguez*, which is a thin, spicy sausage made of lamb and beef adopted from Northern Africa, as well as tools, clothes, secondhand books, garden plants, wine straight from the

producer, jewelry, trendy accessories, toys, and a lot more.

A few specialized markets are well known all over France, such as the famous flea market at the *Porte de Clignancourt* in Paris, the flower market in Nice, the Christmas markets in Strasbourg, the olive markets in Provence, and the fish market around the old port in Marseilles. There are wine markets in Bordeaux, and famous gastronomic markets in Perigueux, which is the birthplace of French truffles and *foie gras*. However, as most markets offer local products, their reputations reflect the local needs of the surrounding residents as they are part of their day-to-day living.



## Gengo French S1

Take Charge of the Situation Using Your French

23

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	7

## French

---

Annonce	Prochain arrêt, Cambronne.
Joe	Excusez-moi, quel est cet arrêt ?
Passager	C'est Cambronne.
Joe	Quel est le prochain arrêt ?
Passager	Bir Hakeim, la Tour Eiffel.
Joe	Merci.
Passager	De rien.
Annonce	Bir Hakeim.
(La porte du train se ferme et le train part)	
(Dans la rue)	
Joe	Excusez-moi, où est la Tour Eiffel ?
Piéton	Allez tout droit, puis tournez à gauche au prochain feu. Ensuite allez tout droit et tournez à droite à la prochaine intersection. Elle est sur la droite.
Joe	Merci.
Piéton	Je vous en prie.

## English

---

Train announcement	Next stop, Cambronne.
Joe	Excuse me, what stop is this?
Passenger	This is Cambronne.
Joe	What's the next stop?
Passenger	Bir Hakeim.
Joe	Thank you.
Passenger	You're welcome.
Train announcement	Bir Hakeim.
(Sound of bus closing doors and pulling away)	
(On street)	
Joe	Excuse me, where is the Eiffel Tower?
Pedestrian	Go straight, and turn left at the first light. Then go straight and turn right at the next intersection. It's on the right.
Joe	Thank you.
Pedestrian	You're welcome.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
prochain(e)	next	adjective	
un arrêt	a stop	noun	masculine
où	where	adverb of place	
tout droit	straight ahead	expression	
tourner	to turn	verb	
à gauche	left, on the left, to the left		
le feu	the traffic light	noun	masculine
premier/première	first	adjective	masculine/feminine
deuxième	second	adjective	
une intersection	an intersection	noun	feminine
ce/cet	this, that	demonstrative adjective	masculine
sur	on, by, about, over	preposition	
Je vous en prie.	You are welcome, please	expression	
de rien	you're welcome	phrase	
à droite	right, on the right, to the right	expression	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

<i>Le prochain train est à 9h.</i>	"The next train is at 9:00."
<i>Je désire aller à Bordeaux le week-end prochain.</i>	"I'd like to go to Bordeaux next weekend."
<i>L'arrêt de bus est ici.</i>	"The bus stop is here."
<i>Tu habites où, déjà ? J'habite à Paris.</i>	"Where do you live, again? I live in Paris."
<i>Où tu es ?</i>	"Where are you?"
<i>La place? C'est tout droit.</i>	"The square? It's straight ahead."
<i>Il va tout droit.</i>	"He goes straight ahead."
<i>Tournez à droite.</i>	"Turn right."
<i>Tournez à gauche.</i>	"Turn left."
<i>La banque est à gauche.</i>	"The bank is on the left."
<i>Le feu est vert.</i>	"The traffic light is green."
<i>C'est la première fois.</i>	"It's the first time."
<i>C'est le premier jour de pluie.</i>	"It's the first day of rain."
<i>Je bois un deuxième martini.</i>	"I am drinking a second martini."
<i>Je bois une deuxième bière.</i>	"I am drinking a second beer."
<i>Il tourne à l'intersection.</i>	"He's turning at the intersection."
<i>Cet animal est dangereux.</i>	"This animal is dangerous."
<i>Je veux ce chat.</i>	"I want this cat."

*Le livre est sur la table.*

"The book is on the table."

*La banque est sur la droite.*

"The bank is on the right."

*Ce tapis fait trois mètres sur cinq mètres.*

"This rug is three meters by five meters."

*Je vous en prie, entrez.*

"Please, come in."

*Merci. - De rien.*

"Thank you. - You're welcome."

*Tournez à droite.*

"Turn right."

*La poste est à droite.*

"The post office is on the right."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Understanding and Giving Directions With the Imperative.**

*Allez tout droit, puis tournez à gauche au prochain feu.*

**"Go straight, and turn left at the next light."**

---

Whether you're on a subway or in a car, getting to your destination and heading in the correct direction involve knowing which main reference points you need to follow.

When you pass through the subway entrance and walk through the maze of corridors to reach the subway station, you will need to follow signs to get on the correct subway platform. Each subway line has two major destinations, referred to as a particular location, such as a street or square name [subway station: the Bastille, as in *la place de la Bastille* ("Bastille Square"), or a famous monument (subway station: the Louvre). Locate where you are on a subway map, where you want to go, and the last subway station of the subway line to figure out which direction you need to take to get to the correct platform and reach your destination.

You will need to follow the same process when driving on highways in France. You need to determine the closest main city to your destination and follow the road signs indicating it to travel in the correct direction.

In the dialogue, Joe is in the subway and asks another passenger which station they are in and the next one coming to make sure he does not miss his destination, the Eiffel Tower. Once out in the street, to orient himself, he asks someone the directions to *la Dame de fer* ("the iron lady"), which is a nickname for the Eiffel Tower, and the pedestrian replies *Allez tout droit, puis tournez à gauche au prochain feu. Ensuite allez tout droit et tournez à droite à la prochaine intersection. Elle est sur la droite* ("Go straight, and turn left at the next light. Then go straight and turn right at the next intersection. It's on the right."). In these phrases, the speaker uses the verbs *aller* ("to go") and *tourner* ("to turn") to describe directions in the imperative tense.

### Understanding and Giving Directions

---

When giving someone directions, always use the imperative in French. The imperative tense is a very direct way to give an order, make suggestions, or even express strong desires, advice, or recommendations.

5

You conjugate the imperative only at three persons (second person singular or plural and first person plural), as you can only give orders to a third party, an audience of two or more persons, or the individual(s) you are speaking with, including yourself.

To conjugate any verb (regardless of the verb group it belongs to) at the imperative tense, the formation is based upon *le présent de l'indicatif* ("present indicative"), but without subject pronouns. This particularity is what makes it easy for us to identify the imperative tense.

### Conjugating a First Verb Group Verb at the Imperative Tense.



---

For the verbs ending in *-er* from the first verb group, the verb *aller* ("to go"), and all the verbs that end in *-es* when conjugated at the *tu* form, follow these steps:

**Step 1** - Take the *présent de l'indicatif* form for the second person singular, second person plural, and first person plural.

**Step 2** - Eliminate the personal pronouns (*tu*, *vous*, and *nous*).

**Step 3** - For the second person singular, drop the final *-s*.

For example, let's look at the French verb *tourner* ("to turn").

<i>Indicative Present</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	"English"
<i>tourner</i>	<i>tourner</i>	"to turn"
<i>tu tournes</i>	<i>tourne</i>	"turn"
<i>nous tournons</i>	<i>tournons</i>	"let's turn"
<i>vous tournez</i>	<i>tournez</i>	"turn"

<i>Indicative Present</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	"English"
<i>aller</i>	<i>aller</i>	"to go"
<i>tu vas</i>	<i>va</i>	"go"
<i>nous allons</i>	<i>allons</i>	"let's go"
<i>vous allez</i>	<i>allez</i>	"go"

**Conjugation Focus: Keep the Final -s of the *tu* Form With the Pronouns *en* and *y* at the Imperative.**

---

When the verb forms are followed by the pronoun *y* or *en*, we reattach the *-s* of the second person

singular verb form for pronunciation purposes, such as in *Mange des légumes. Manges-en !* ("Eat some vegetables. Eat some!") or in *Va dehors. Vas-y !* ("Go outside. Go there!")

---

## Cultural Insight

---

### **The Underground Art You'll Find in Paris**

7

---

The Parisian subway is unique and has its charm and cultural mission. In fact, we recommend that you take a tour of the Parisian subway stations! Some Parisian subway lines and stations are worth visiting for their decor, mini expositions, and environment.

For example, between the subway station Passy and the one mentioned in the dialogue, Bir-Hakeim, the subway will go outdoors and cross on the aerial line 6 a bridge offering an exceptional view of the Eiffel Tower. It's especially beautiful at night when the Eiffel Tower, also known as the iron lady, is illuminated.

In the Varenne subway station, line 13, you will be able to sample the art of the famous sculptor Rodin. It is featured through pictures, molds of the artist's art, and bas-reliefs on the station floor!

The long diplomatic relationship between the French and Americans is even illustrated in the Chaussée d'Antin-Lafayette station with a fresco. American artist Hilton McConnico painted it on metal covering the vaulted ceiling, representing Lafayette and the American Revolution, on line 7.





## Gengo French S1

Don't Miss Your Big Chance to Start Speaking French!

24

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	7

## French

---

Joe Vous attendez quelqu'un ? Eh bien, je suis là !  
 Manon Hein ? Joe ? Qu'est-ce que tu fais là ?  
 Joe (rires) Je fais du tourisme. Et toi, qu'est-ce que tu fais là ?  
 Manon Je travaille. J'attends un client. Alors, c'est comment, la France ?  
 Joe C'est super. Vraiment, c'est incroyable.  
 Manon Ah, c'est mon client, là-bas. J'aimerais bien te parler de ton voyage, mais...  
 Joe Tu as un moment ce week-end ?  
 Manon Oui. Demain ?  
 Joe Demain, je vais à Vincennes avec les amis de mes parents, pour la Fête de la Musique.  
 Manon C'est si français. Et dimanche ?  
 Joe Parfait.  
 Manon Je t'envoie un mail.  
 Joe Super. À dimanche.  
 Manon Ciao.

## English

---

Joe Are you waiting for someone? Well, I'm here.  
 Manon Huh? Joe? What are you doing here?  
 Joe (laughs) I'm sightseeing. And you, what are you doing here?  
 Manon I'm working. I'm waiting for a client. So, how is France?  
 Joe It's great. Really, it's incredible.  
 Manon Oh, that's my client over there. I would like to talk to you about your trip, but...  
 Joe Do you have a moment this weekend?  
 Manon Yes. Tomorrow?  
 Joe Tomorrow, I'm going to Vincennes with my parents' friends for the Music Festival.  
 Manon That's so French. And Sunday?  
 Joe Perfect.  
 Manon I'll send you an e-mail.  
 Joe Great. See you Sunday.  
 Manon Bye.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
quelqu'un	someone	pronoun	
hein?	what? huh?	interjection	
faire du tourisme	sightseeing	phrase	
travailler	to work	verb	
un client	a client	noun	masculine
alors	then, so	adverb	
super	great	interjection	
vraiment	truly, really	adverb	
incroyable	incredible	adjective	feminine or masculine
aimer	to like	verb	
te/t'	you (informal)	pronoun	
parler	to speak, to talk	verb	
parler de	to talk about	verb	
mais	but, however	coordinate conjunction	
un moment	a moment	noun	masculine
le week-end	weekend	noun	masculine
une fête	a party, a celebration	noun	feminine
si	so	adverb	
parfait(e)	perfect	adjective	masculine/feminine
envoyer	to send	verb	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Je parle à quelqu'un.*

"I am talking to someone."

*Quelqu'un frappe à la porte.*

"Someone is knocking on the door."

*Hein? Tu peux répéter?*

"What? Can you repeat?"

*J'aime faire du tourisme.*

"I like sightseeing."

*Je ne veux pas travailler.*

"I don't want to work."

*Le client signe le contrat.*

"The client signs the contract."

*Alors, qu'est-ce que tu fais ?*

"So, what are you doing?"

*Super! Je vais à New York!*

"Great! I'm going to New York!"

*C'est super d'être dans un pays exotique.*

"It's great to be in an exotic country."

*Oh, vraiment ?*

"Oh, really?"

*C'est vraiment le cas.*

"It's really the case."

*Cette montre est incroyable.*

"This watch is incredible."

*Incroyable, mais vrai.*

"Incredible, but true."

*J'aimerais une bière s'il vous plaît.*

"I would like a beer, please."

*Elle aime discuter au bistrot.*

*Je te parle!*

*Je t'aime à ma façon.*

*Tu parles espagnol ?*

*Je parle de la France à tout le monde.*

*J'aime les chiens, mais je suis allergique.*

*Il va venir, mais plus tard.*

*Vous avez un moment?*

*Le week-end est fini.*

*Je fais une fête chez moi.*

*New York, c'est si grand!*

*C'est si facile.*

*Mon mari est parfait.*

*J'envoie un mail à Cécile.*

*J'envoie une lettre à ma mère.*

"She likes to chat at the bistro."

"I'm talking to you!"

"I love you in my own way."

"Do you speak Spanish?"

"I talk about France to everybody."

"I like dogs, but I am allergic."

"He is coming, but later."

"Do you have a moment?"

"The weekend is over."

"I'm having a party at my place."

"New York is so big!"

"It's so easy."

"My husband is perfect."

"I'm sending an e-mail to Cécile."

"I am sending a letter to my mother."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Indicating Location With the Adverb of Location *là* ("there") and Using the Adverbs *sitellement* ("so, such").**

***Vous attendez quelqu'un ? Eh bien, je suis là !***

**"Are you waiting for someone? Well, I'm here."**

Buying a coffee or drinking some coffee at home two or three times a day or in the afternoon is a French ritual. It is the booster when fatigue shows up at work or, on the weekend, a time to get together and exchange the events of the day.

The coffee trend at home is espresso and 100% Arabica\* coffee products. Generally, French people most prefer by taste Robusta\*\* coffee, which originates from the Ivory Coast and Cameroon. They often mix it in the espresso machine to produce foam when they pour the beverage. Ground coffee is mainly sold in vacuum-packed bricks. Some popular brands you'll find in the French markets are Jacobs Suchard, Jacques Vabre (Extensions-Gringo, Nectar, Regal, Degustation Douce, Mid-Minuit) or Grand-Mère.

\*Arabica is a variety of coffee from Ethiopia and Yemen considered of better quality than Robusta.

\*\*Robusta coffee is a variety of coffee that has its origins in western Africa.

In the dialogue, Joe meets Manon, his flight companion when traveling to France, again. They are in a coffee shop surprisingly at the same and recognize each other. Joe, the first to see her, humorously asks *Vous attendez quelqu'un ? Eh bien, je suis là !* ("Are you waiting for someone? Well, I'm here.") to let her know he is there. To indicate his location, he uses the adverb of location *là*, meaning "there."

### Indicating the Location Where You Stand or Near You With *là*

To indicate a location where you are (or where someone else is), a location more or less around you, or a place that you are pointing out, you can use the adverb of location *là* ("there").

Linguistically, the adverb *là* marks a place or space where the speaker is more or less as the adverb "there" does in English. However, you can also use it to indicate the location where the speaker is. In everyday French, people commonly use *là* ("there") to indicate the location where they are in the same way the you would use the word "here," as shown in the dialogue when Manon asks Joe: *Hein ? Joe ? Qu'est-ce que tu fais là ?* meaning "Huh? Joe? What are you doing here?"

### Indicating a Further Location With *là-bas* ("over there")

However, if you wish to designate a place further away than you are, use *là-bas*, meaning "over there," as in the dialogue sentence *Ah, c'est mon client là-bas* ("Oh, that's my client over there.").

You should place an adverb of location after the verb, as in the dialogue sentence *Eh bien, je suis là !* ("Well, I'm here.").

You should place the adverb of location at the beginning or end of a statement when the adverb determines and modifies the whole phrase, as in the statement *Ah, c'est mon client, là-bas* ("Oh, that's





my client over there.") from the dialogue.

In this phrase, note that when we place the adverb of location at the end of a phrase, we add a comma before the adverb. But when we place the adverb at the beginning of a phrase, add a comma after the adverb, as with *Ah là-bas, c'est mon client* ("Oh over there, that's my client.").

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Manon discute là avec Joe.</i>	"Manon talks there with Joe."
<i>Joe achète un café, là.</i>	"Joe buys a coffee here."
<i>Je suis là.</i>	"I'm here."
<i>Je vois le bus arriver. Le bus est là.</i>	"I see the bus coming. The bus is there."
<i>Là, regarde les étoiles.</i>	"There, watch the stars."

### Language Expansion: Adverbs of Location

If you want to be clear and indicate the location where you are, use the adverb *ici*, meaning "here." *Ici* is an adverb of location stating a place where the speaker is, as with *Je suis ici* ("I'm here.") or a close location that the speaker points out, as with *Le restaurant est ici sur votre droite* ("The restaurant is here on your right.").

### Expressing an Idea of Intensity

Trying to see each other again, Joe and Manon attempt to find a time to meet. While deciding on a day, Joe tells Manon that he will go to Vincennes with his parents' friends for the Music Festival the next day. Manon comments about it by saying that it is very French with *C'est si français* ("That's so French."). She adds a high degree of intensity to her remark about this outing when she says it is "highly French" with the word *si*, meaning "so much" or "such."

To add a higher degree of intensity to something featured, use the adverb of intensity, *si*, ("so, such") before an adjective, as in:

**Noun,\* + *c'est si* + adjective.**

**\*Note:** Observe the comma after the noun.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Le café, c'est si bon.</i>	"The coffee, it is so good."
<i>Paris, c'est si cher.</i>	"Paris, it is so expensive."
<i>Le Louvre, c'est si grand.</i>	"The Louvre, it's so huge."
<i>Le métro, c'est si pratique.</i>	"The subway, it's so convenient."

### Language Expansion: Synonyms of *si* ("such") the Adverb *Tellement*

To vary your vocabulary and expression, use *tellement* instead of *si*. The adverb *tellement* is also an adverb expressing a high degree of intensity, meaning "so" or "such," as in *Je suis tellement fatigué* ("I'm so tired.").

## Cultural Insight

**It's Summertime, and the Living is Easy in France**

Summer is a great time to visit France.

The best month is in June, at the beginning of the warm season, when the weather is nice and not too hot as it can be in the continental climate of Paris. At that time of year, the French start to organize a lot of activities and to install amenities in the capital for everyone to enjoy.

People who are passionate about gliding sports or beach volleyball, bikers, roller skaters, and fans of these sports can have fun on the temporary ramps and equipment installed on the green grass of Reuilly in the twelfth district in August for free.

Fans of music can enjoy the Chopin festival, which takes place from mid-June to mid-July in *l'Orangerie de Bagatelle*, or the jazz festival at the floral park in June and July. Finally, for those who appreciate nature and who want to discover the secret places of Paris on foot, take *la promenade plantée* ("the planted promenade"), an ancient railway that linked the Bastille to Saint Maur until 1969. The French have converted the railway into a pathway bordered with gardens, viaducts, and tunnels in the twelfth Parisian district.



## Gengo French S1

The Best French House You'll Ever Visit

25

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	8

## French

---

Épouse	Bonjour Joe ! Et bienvenue chez nous !
Joe	Bonjour !
Épouse	Je suis Catherine. Et voici Yves, mon mari.
Joe	Enfin je vous rencontre !
Mari	Entre, fais comme chez toi. Tu veux boire quelque chose ?
Joe	Oui, s'il vous plaît.
Épouse	Je vais apporter du jus d'orange.
Joe	Cette maison est jolie. C'est une photo de famille ?
Mari	Oui, c'est notre fils, et nos deux filles. Ils habitent tous à Strasbourg.
Épouse	Ahh...nos bébés ! Joe, comment vont tes parents ? Et ton frère et ta soeur ?
Joe	Ils vont bien. Ils disent bonjour.

## English

---

Wife	Hello, Joe! And welcome to our place!
Joe	Hello!
Wife	I'm Catherine. And this is Yves, my husband.
Joe	I finally meet you!
Husband	Come in, make yourself at home. Do you want something to drink?
Joe	Yes, please.
Wife	I'll bring some orange juice.
Joe	This is a pretty house. Is this a family picture?
Husband	Yes, this is our son, and our two daughters. They all live in Strasbourg.
Wife	Oh...our babies! Joe, how are your parents? And your brother and sister?
Joe	They're good. They say hello.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
bienvenu(e)	welcome	adjective	bienvenue (feminine)
nous	us	indirect and direct pronoun	
voici	here is, this is	preposition	
un mari	a husband	noun	masculine

enfin	finally	adverb	
vous	you (formal)	direct pronoun	
rencontrer	to meet	verb	
entrer	to enter	verb	
comme	as, like	conjunction	
vouloir	to want	verb	
boire	to drink	verb	
quelque chose	something	noun	masculine
apporter	to bring	verb	
du/de la/de l'	some	partitive article	
le jus d'orange	orange juice	noun	masculine
cette	this, that	demonstrative adjective	feminine
une maison	a house	noun	feminine
très	very	adverb	feminine
joli(e)	pretty	adjective	
une famille	a family	noun	feminine
notre	our	possessive adjective	
un fils	a son	noun	masculine
nos	our (with plural nouns)	possessive adjective	
une fille	a daughter	noun	feminine
habiter	to reside, to live	verb	
tous	all, every	adjective, pronoun	plural
un bébé	a baby	noun	masculine
un frère	a brother	noun	masculine
une soeur	a sister	noun	feminine
dire	to say	verb	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Marie, bienvenue dans ma demeure !*

*Il est chez nous.*

*Il est avec nous.*

*Je suis Françoise, et voici Julien.*

*Regardez ! Voici la Tour Eiffel.*

*Mon mari s'appelle Marc.*

*Je suis enfin là!*

*Je vous aime.*

*Il est enchanté de vous rencontrer.*

*Je rencontre des gens à mon travail.*

"Mary, welcome in my home!"

"He is at our place."

"He is with us."

"I am Françoise, and this is Julien."

"Look! Here is the Eiffel Tower."

"My husband's name is Marc."

"I am finally here!"

"I love you."

"He is pleased to meet you."

"I meet people at my work."

<i>J'entre dans la maison.</i>	"I am entering the house."
<i>Je suis comme toi: j'aime le chocolat.</i>	"I'm like you; I like chocolate."
<i>Comme tu vois, ce n'est rien.</i>	"As you see, it's nothing."
<i>Elle veut manger.</i>	"She wants to eat."
<i>Elle te veut.</i>	"She wants you."
<i>Je bois de l'eau minérale.</i>	"I'm drinking mineral water."
<i>Je veux quelque chose de frais, comme un coca!</i>	"I want something refreshing, like a coke!"
<i>Les enfants boudent lorsqu'ils n'aiment pas quelque chose.</i>	"Kids refuse to talk (sulk) when they don't like something."
<i>Ce soir j'apporte le vin.</i>	"Tonight, I bring the wine."
<i>Je mange du pain.</i>	"I'm eating some bread."
<i>Je veux de la confiture, du beurre et de l'eau.</i>	"I want some jam, some butter, and some water."
<i>Je veux du jus d'orange.</i>	"I want some orange juice."
<i>J'aime le jus d'orange.</i>	"I like orange juice."
<i>Cette association est très utile.</i>	"This association is very useful."
<i>La maison est grande.</i>	"The house is big."
<i>Il parle très vite.</i>	"He speaks very quickly."
<i>C'est une jolie maison.</i>	"This is a pretty house."
<i>C'est un joli collier.</i>	"It's a pretty necklace."
<i>La famille de Julie habite à Lyon.</i>	"Julie's family lives in Lyon."
<i>Notre compte en banque est à zéro.</i>	"Our bank account is at zero."
<i>J'ai un fils, il a 13 ans.</i>	"I have a son; he's thirteen."
<i>Nos parents sont loin.</i>	"Our parents are far."
<i>Ma fille a 2 ans.</i>	"My daughter is two."
<i>J'habite seul.</i>	"I live by myself."
<i>En 2000, Alice habitait dans un appartement.</i>	"In 2000, Alice lived in an apartment."
<i>Ils sont tous sympas.</i>	"They are all nice."
<i>Je fais les courses tous les samedis.</i>	"I go grocery shopping every Saturday."
<i>Ce bébé est mignon.</i>	"This baby is cute."
<i>J'ai deux frères.</i>	"I have two brothers."
<i>Ma soeur habite à Boston.</i>	"My sister lives in Boston."
<i>Il dit quelque chose d'important.</i>	"He's saying something important."

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Referring to an Undetermined Quantity With Partitive Articles and Possession With Possessive Adjectives.**

*Et voici Yves, mon mari.*

**"And this is Yves, my husband."**

---

French families have on average two children. They frequently leave the house later than other children, when they are around twenty-five years old if studying, or they live in a separate apartment in the parents' home if possible. This delayed departure is explained by a longer study period and a high unemployment rate. However, once actively working, even though the average French family earns an income lower than that of other productive countries, families are willing to accept the trade-off for more time and vacation with family and friends. It translates into a moderate personal consumption, such as owning small cars and smaller housing.

In the dialogue, Joe meets his parents' friends. The house hostess introduces her husband Yves to Joe with *Et voici Yves, mon mari* ("And this is Yves, my husband."). She presents her life companion with the possessive adjective *mon* ("my"). Then Yves tells Joe about the couple's children with the possessive adjectives *notre/nos* ("our") in the sentences *Oui, c'est notre fils, et nos deux filles* ("Yes, this is our son, and our two daughters.") and *Ahh...nos bébés !* ("Oh...our babies!") In return, the hostess asks Joe about his family with *Joe, comment vont tes parents ? Et ton frère et ta soeur ?* ("Joe, how are your parents? And your brother and sister?") with the possessive adjectives *tes, ton, and ta* ("your").

### Expressing Possession With Possessive Adjectives

To speak of your or another person's family members, use possessive adjectives followed by a noun, as described in the three steps below.

Observe these steps to choose the correct possessive adjective:

**Step 1** - Determine the gender (feminine or masculine) and number (singular or plural) of the noun.

**Step 2** - Determine who possesses the object or who is talking about his/her family in your phrase.



**Step 3** - Choose the correct possessive adjective according to the person (first, second, or third singular or plural) of the possessor and the gender and number of the noun (referring to the object possessed), as shown in the tables below:

A single object owned (or one family member talked about):

<b>Person and Number</b>	<b>Masculine Possessed Object</b>	<b>Feminine Possessed Object</b>	<b>Feminine Possessed Object Starting With a Vowel</b>
First person singular	<i>mon</i>	<i>ma</i>	<i>mon</i>
Second person singular	<i>ton</i>	<i>ta</i>	<i>ton</i>
Third person singular	<i>son</i>	<i>sa</i>	<i>son</i>

<b>Person and Number</b>	<b>Masculine Possessed Objects</b>	<b>Feminine Possessed Objects</b>
First person plural	<i>notre</i>	<i>notre</i>
Second person plural	<i>votre</i>	<i>votre</i>
Third person plural	<i>leur</i>	<i>leur</i>

Several objects owned (or several family members talked about):

<b>Person and Number</b>	<b>Masculine Possessed Objects</b>	<b>Feminine Possessed Objects</b>
First person plural	<i>nos</i>	<i>nos</i>
Second person plural	<i>vos</i>	<i>vos</i>
Third person plural	<i>leurs</i>	<i>leurs</i>

For example, you'd like to speak of your friend Ana's aunt and uncle. Knowing that "uncle" is *oncle*

and "aunt" is *tante* in French, apply the following steps:

**Step 1** - The word *oncle* is masculine (gender) and singular (number) and *tante* is feminine (gender) and singular (number).

**Step 2** - The owner is your friend, Ana, a second person singular noun.

**Step 3** - The correct possessive adjective is *mon* for the word *oncle* and *ma* for the word *tante*.

You'll end up with *mon oncle* , *ma tante* ("my uncle, my aunt").

**Note:** Make sure to use *mon* ("my"), *ton* ("your"), or *son* ("his"/"her") when the feminine noun starts with a vowel, as in *mon idée* ("my idea"), *ton orange* ("your orange"), or *son oreille* ("his ear").

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>une amie de Henri</i>	"a friend of Henri"
<i>son amie</i>	"his girlfriend"
<i>les cousins de Magali et Jean</i>	"Magali and Jean's cousins"
<i>leurs cousins</i>	"their cousins"
<i>il a un frère</i>	"he has a brother"
<i>son frère</i>	"his brother"
<i>une automobile ancienne</i>	"an ancient car"
<i>mon/ton/son automobile ancienne</i>	"my/your/his or her ancient car"

### Expressing an Undetermined Quantity

As all hostesses do, Yves's wife offers Joe something to drink by stating she is going to bring some orange juice with *Je vais apporter du jus d'orange* ("I'll bring some orange juice."). When doing so, she doesn't tell how much she will bring; she refers to an indefinite amount with the partitive article *du* , meaning "some."

To refer to a quantity of uncountable nouns or to countable things but without precision, use a partitive article followed by a noun.

<b>Partitive Article</b>	<b>+</b>	<b>Noun Type</b>
<i>du</i>	+	masculine noun
<i>de la</i>	+	feminine noun
<i>de l'</i>	+	noun starting with a vowel
<i>des</i>	+	plural nouns

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je voudrais des verres.</i>	"I'd like some glasses."
<i>Tu veux de la crème brûlée ?</i>	"Do you want some crème brûlée?"
<i>Il y a du vin.</i>	"There is some wine."
<i>Il a de l'armagnac*.</i>	"He has some armagnac."

\*Armagnac is a distinctive kind of brandy or *eau de vie* produced in the Armagnac region in Gascony in southwest France. It is distilled from wine and usually made from a blend of grapes aged in oak barrel.

## Cultural Insight

---

### City Living in France

---

The average French families in the cities live in apartments.

Apartment sizes vary and are referred to as F1, F2, or F3 in classified ads in newspapers. F1, F2, or F3 identifies the number of rooms as living spaces (living room, dining room, etc.). Kitchens and bathrooms are not included in this coding. Therefore, an apartment with a living room and two bedrooms is an F3.

You can also find the word *un studio*, which refers to a room integrating a kitchen, living room, and bedroom area together. The bathroom, however, is separate. In other words, this type of lodging is one main room with a small room equipped as a bathroom often with a toilet, sink, and shower.

Outside of urban areas in villages, families often live in their houses they inherit from family. Low-income families have access to financial housing programs implemented to allow them to acquire their own small homes. They are usually built in neighborhoods on the edge of towns and often have a similar design, but with enough variety that it doesn't appear too much as an uniform housing development.



## Gengo French S1

The Best French Dish You'll Ever Have

26

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	9

## French

---

Yves                    À table !  
 Joe                     Ce repas est vraiment incroyable !  
 Catherine            Oui, j'ai un mari exceptionnel. J'ai beaucoup de chance.  
 Joe                     Une belle maison, un repas délicieux, c'est le paradis !  
 Catherine            Oh, arrête. Alors dis-moi, c'est comment la France ?  
 Joe                     Oh, c'est génial ! Les gens sont sympas, et c'est magnifique.  
 Yves                   Et comment c'était, l'hippodrome de Longchamp ?  
 Joe                     C'était vraiment génial. Et il faisait très beau.  
 Catherine            Ah ! L'hippodrome de Longchamp ! Nous avons beaucoup de souvenirs là-bas.  
 Yves                   Mais c'était il y a longtemps ...  
 Catherine            À propos, nous allons à Vincennes\* demain.  
 Joe                     Ah oui, j'ai hâte !

\*Vincennes east of Paris is now a suburb of the French capital where the château de Vincennes is located, a massive 14th and 17th century royal castle.

## English

---

2

Yves                    Dinner is ready!  
 (Sound of people eating at a table)  
 Joe                     This meal is really incredible!  
 Catherine            Yes, I have an outstanding husband. I'm very lucky.  
 Joe                     A beautiful house, a delicious meal, it's paradise!  
 Catherine            Oh, stop it. So tell me, how is France?  
 Joe                     Oh, it's great! People are nice, and it's gorgeous.  
 Yves                   And how was the Longchamp racetrack?  
 Joe                     It was really great. And it was very sunny.  
 Catherine            Oh, the Longchamp racetrack! We have a lot of memories there.  
 Yves                   Yes, but it was a long time ago.  
 Catherine            By the way, we're going to Vincennes\* tomorrow.  
 Joe                     Oh, yes, I can't wait!

\*Vincennes, which is situated to the east of Paris, is now a suburb of the French capital where the chateau de Vincennes, a massive fourteenth and seventeenth century royal castle, is located.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
une table	a table	noun	feminine
un repas	a meal	noun	feminine
incroyable	incredible	adjective	feminine or masculine
exceptionnel(-le)	outstanding	adjective	exceptionnelle (feminine)
beaucoup de	a lot of	adjective	
la chance	luck	noun	feminine
le paradis	paradise	noun	masculine
beau, belle	beautiful	adjective	masculine, feminine
génial(e)	great	adjective	
les gens	people	noun	always plural
magnifique	gorgeous	adjective	feminine or masculine
un hippodrome	a racetrack	noun	masculine
un souvenir	a memory	noun	masculine
il y a longtemps	a long time ago	phrase	
à propos	by the way	adverb	
avoir hâte	can't wait	phrase/verbal group	
ah, oui	oh, yes	interjection	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

<i>Le livre est sur la table.</i>	"The book is on the table."
<i>Le repas est délicieux.</i>	"The meal is delicious."
<i>Cette montre est incroyable.</i>	"This watch is incredible."
<i>Incroyable, mais vrai.</i>	"Incredible, but true."
<i>Les bâtiments de Paris sont exceptionnels.</i>	"The buildings of Paris are exceptional."
<i>Il y a beaucoup de nuages.</i>	"There are a lot of clouds."
<i>En général, j'ai de la chance.</i>	"Generally, I'm lucky."
<i>Vivre à Hawaï, c'est le paradis.</i>	"Living in Hawaii is paradise."
<i>C'est un beau parc.</i>	"It's a beautiful park."
<i>La vie est belle.</i>	"Life is beautiful."
<i>JP a toujours des idées géniales.</i>	"JP always has great ideas."
<i>Tu vas en Italie? C'est génial!</i>	"Are you going to Italy? That's great!"
<i>Il y a des gens partout.</i>	"There are people everywhere."
<i>L'Italie est magnifique.</i>	"Italy is gorgeous."
<i>Il y a une course à l'hippodrome.</i>	"There is a race at the racetrack."
<i>J'ai un bon souvenir de ce restaurant.</i>	"I have a good memory from that restaurant."

*Il y a longtemps, je mangeais mal.*

*A propos, tu viens ce soir?*

*J'ai hâte de manger.*

*Tu m'entends? - Ah, oui.*

"A long time ago, I would eat badly."

"By the way, are you coming tonight?"

"I can't wait to eat."

"Do you hear me? - Oh, yes."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Making Strong Suggestions Using Indirect Object Pronouns, Using the Verb *être* ("to be") at the Past Tense, and Reviewing Adjective Placement.**

*Alors dis-moi, c'est comment la France ?*

**"So tell me, how is France?"**

France has a widespread reputation around the world, with preconceptions of the country and its inhabitants more or less identical from one nation to another. Depending on your attitude and your ability to demonstrate your French skills even in as little as a few phrases, you will experience a much warmer greeting than you might expect while in France. Conscious of the public belief that the French people are cold, distant, and unwelcoming, from 1994 to today, the French government has launched a campaign to sensitize public institutions, business owners, and staff of the importance of greeting tourists. So make sure to smile and say *bonjour* to the waiter in a busy restaurant or the cashier after waiting in line to enter the monument or museum of your choice.

In the dialogue, Joe is at Yves and Catherine's place for dinner. Catherine asks Joe about how his experience of France has been with the question *Alors dis-moi, c'est comment la France ?* ("So tell me, how is France?") When Catherine asks the question, she introduces it with the strong suggestion *Dis-moi*, meaning "tell me," using the verb *dire* at the imperative form followed by the pronoun *moi* ("me").

### **Giving a Strong Suggestion Using an Indirect Object Pronoun**



To give a strong suggestion or an order that directs the recipient to perform an action that is directed toward another person, use the imperative to conjugate the verb and an indirect object pronoun, as in *Dis-moi* ("Tell me") from the dialogue constructed as follows:

Verb at the imperative tense -\* indirect object pronoun

**\*Note:** Be sure to use a hyphen between the verb and pronoun.

We use indirect object pronouns to replace the indirect object of the verb. For example, in the dialogue, Catherine says *Dis-moi...* ("Tell me...") with the verb *dire* conjugated at the imperative tense at the second person singular. This is a strong suggestion ordering Joe to say something. The pronoun *moi*, meaning "me," refers to Catherine herself, indicating to Joe that he needs to say something to her.

The pronoun *moi* ("me") is the indirect object of the verb *dire* because the verb *dire* is followed by the preposition *à* (***dire quelque chose à quelqu'un***, "to say something to someone") By using a verb with a preposition, in this case *dire à* ("say/tell to"), Catherine uses the indirect pronoun *moi*.

So let's observe again the phrase *Alors dis-moi, c'est comment la France ?* ("So tell me, how is France?") and ask ourselves the question *À qui Joe dit comment est la France ?* ("To whom Joe says how France is?") The correct answer is *À Catherine* ("to Catherine"), which is represented in the phrase with the pronoun *moi* ("me") in *dis-moi* ("tell me").

To choose the correct indirect object pronoun when giving an order that directs someone to take an action directed to another person, follow the table below:

### Indirect Object Pronoun

Person and Number	French Pronoun
First person singular	<i>me/moi*</i>

Second person singular	<i>te/toi*</i>
Third person singular	<i>lui</i>
First person plural	<i>nous</i>
Second person plural	<i>vous</i>
Third person plural	<i>leur</i>

**\*Note:** When using an indirect object pronoun with a verb at the imperative tense, use *moi* or *toi* instead of *me* or *te*.

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Dis-lui, c'est charmant.</i>	"Tell her it's charming."
<i>Dis-toi, c'est amusant.</i>	"Tell yourself it's fun."
<i>Dis-leur, c'est intéressant.</i>	"Tell them it's interesting."
<i>Parle-lui de la France.</i>	"Tell him about France."
<i>Demande-toi, c'est juste ?</i>	"Ask yourself, is it correct?"
<i>Commande-nous un café.</i>	"Order us a coffee."

### Conjugating the Verb *être* ("to be") at *l'imparfait*

During the conversation about Joe's stay, it is Yves' turn to question Joe about it by asking about his recent outing to the racetrack with *Et comment c'était, l'hippodrome de Longchamp ?* ("And how was the Longchamp racetrack?") As this is a past experience, the verb *être* ("to be") Yves uses in the question is conjugated at the past tense *l'imparfait* ("imperfect"), as in Joe's comment *C'était vraiment génial* ("It was really great.") and Yves' remark *Mais c'était il y a longtemps...* ("Yes, but it was a long time ago...").

Note that in each of these sentences, the verb *être* ("to be") is conjugated at the third person singular with *c'était* ("it was").

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>j'étais</i>	"I was"
<i>tu étais</i>	"you were"
<i>il/elle/c'était</i>	"he/she/it was"
<i>nous étions</i>	"we were"
<i>vous étiez</i>	"you were"
<i>ils/elles étaient</i>	"they were"

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>J'étais à l'hippodrome hier.</i>	"I was at the race track yesterday."
<i>C'était bien hier.</i>	"It was nice yesterday."
<i>Joe était dans un café près de la tour Eiffel hier.</i>	"Joe was in a coffee shop near the Eiffel Tower yesterday."
<i>Nous étions contents.</i>	"We were happy."
<i>Vous étiez à l'heure pour la course de chevaux. "</i>	"You were on time for the horse race."

**Adjectives Placed After the Noun**

During the dinner conversation, Catherine, the hostess, comments on her husband by saying *Oui, j'ai un mari exceptionnel* ("Yes, I have an outstanding husband."). She qualifies him as "exceptional" with the French adjective *exceptionnel* that she places after the noun *mari* ("husband"). Other phrases in the dialogue contain adjectives, including the statement *Une belle maison, un repas délicieux, c'est le paradis!* ("A beautiful house, a delicious meal, it's paradise!") with the adjectives *belle* ("beautiful") and *délicieux* ("delicious").

The place of the adjectives is a difficult point of the French language, because we place some either

before or after the noun, with or without changing their definitions. The rules are subject to debate and are not always clear. However, there are some guidelines for us to follow. You should place most adjectives after the noun, even though the most common ones are placed before it, as in *une belle maison* ("a beautiful house").

You should generally place adjectives after the noun when they are descriptive and/or when they have two or more syllables, as in the dialogue phrases *une belle maison* ("a beautiful house"), *un mari exceptionnel* ("an outstanding husband"), and *un repas délicieux* ("a delicious meal").

### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>des gens sympathiques</i>	"nice people"
<i>un pays magnifique</i>	"a beautiful country"
<i>une sortie géniale</i>	"a great outing"
<i>une course de chevaux exaltante</i>	"a thrilling horse race"

### Adjectives Placed Before a Noun

---

Generally, adjectives placed before the nouns are:

1. Some short adjectives that can have different meanings, and therefore are very common, as in

<b>French Feminine</b>	<b>French Masculine</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>bonne</i>	<i>bon/bel*</i>	"good"
<i>belle</i>	<i>beau</i>	"beautiful"
<i>jeune</i>	<i>jeune</i>	"young"
<i>vieille</i>	<i>vieux/vieil*</i>	"old"
<i>petite</i>	<i>petit</i>	"small"
<i>grande</i>	<i>grand</i>	"tall"

<i>grosse</i>	<i>gros</i>	"big"/"fat"
---------------	-------------	-------------

\*The masculine adjectives *vieil* ("old") and *bel* ("beautiful") are used in front of a noun starting with a vowel.

2. Ordinal adjectives, such as *premier/première* ("first"), *deuxième* ("second"), etc.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>une bonne boisson</i>	"a good drink"
<i>un belle vie</i>	"a beautiful life"
<i>un jeune homme</i>	"a young man"
<i>un vieille maison</i>	"an old house"
<i>un petit pari</i>	"a small bet"
<i>un grand hippodrome</i>	"a big racetrack"
<i>un gros gain</i>	"a big win"
<i>une première place</i>	"a first place"
<i>le troisième rang</i>	"the third row"



## Cultural Insight

---

### Where You'll Find the Ponies in France

The Longchamp Hippodrome is a fifty-seven hectare horse-racing domain in the Bois de Boulogne in Paris. Built on the banks of the Seine River, it is famous for its variety of interlaced tracks and a famous hill that provides a real challenge to competing thoroughbreds. It has several racetracks varying from one thousand to four thousand meters in length, with forty-six different starting posts. The most important race of the year is the *Prix de l'Arc de Triomphe* held on the first weekend in October, which attracts the best horses from around the world.

[Learn French](#)





## Gengo French S1

Your French is Getting Too Good!

27

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	9

## French

---

Manon                    Alors, comment c'était Vincennes, hier ?  
 Joe                        C'était vraiment chouette. On est allés là-bas en métro. On a mangé des sandwiches, et on a bu...on a bu, quoi.  
 Manon                    Vous avez vu des concerts ?  
 Joe                        Oui, c'était génial.  
 Manon                    Tout comme un parisien.  
 Joe                        Et toi ? Qu'est-ce que tu as fait hier ?  
 Manon                    J'ai travaillé.  
 Joe                        Pauvre de toi.  
 Manon (rires)        Ton français est trop bon !  
 Joe (rires)  
 Waitress                Voilà les moules frites.  
 Manon                    Dis donc! C'est très bon ! Qui t'a parlé de cet endroit ?  
 Joe                        C'est secret.  
 Manon                    Trop bon !

## English

---

Manon                    So how was Vincennes yesterday?  
 Joe                        It was really amazing! We went there by metro. We ate sandwiches, we drank...well, we drank.  
 Manon                    Did you see any concerts?  
 Joe                        Yes, we did. It was great.  
 Manon                    Just like a Parisian.  
 Joe                        How about you? What did you do yesterday?  
 Manon                    I worked.  
 Joe                        Poor you.  
 Manon (laughs)      Your French is too good.  
 Joe (laughs)  
 Waitress                Here are the mussels with French fries.  
 Manon                    Oh my gosh, this is so good! Who told you about this place?  
 Joe                        It's a secret.  
 Manon                    Too good.



## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
hier	yesterday	adverb	
chouette	nice	adjective	
le métro	the subway	noun	masculine
un sandwich	a sandwich	noun	masculine
manger	to eat	verb	
quoi	well	interjection	
un concert	a concert	noun	masculine
tout comme	just like	adverb	
un(e) parisien(ne)	a Parisian	noun	
pauvre	poor	adjective	
trop	too	adverb	
bon	good	adjective or adverb	masculine
les moules frites	mussels with fries	nominal group	feminine plural
dis donc!	my!	interjection	
qui	who	pronoun	
un endroit	a place	noun	masculine
secret/secrète	secret	adjective	masculine/feminine

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*Hier, nous étions lundi.*

*Les vacances, c'est chouette!*

*Le métro est en retard.*

*Je mange un sandwich au jambon.*

*Les français mangent bien.*

*Il mange le quart du gâteau.*

*Je lis, je dors, je mange...j'ai la belle vie, quoi!*

*Il y a un concert au Stade de France.*

*Il est tout comme moi.*

*Je suis un vrai parisien.*

*Sa famille est pauvre.*

*Ma jupe est trop grande.*

*C'est un bon livre.*

*Le chocolat, c'est bon.*

*Je mange des moules frites dans un restaurant belge.*

*Dis donc, c'est beau ici!*

"Yesterday, it was Monday."

"Holidays are nice!"

"The subway is late."

"I am eating a ham sandwich."

"French people eat well."

"He eats a quarter of the cake."

"I read, I sleep, I eat...well, I have a nice life!"

"There is a concert at the France Stadium."

"He's just like me."

"I am a real Parisian."

"His family is poor."

"My skirt is too large."

"It is a good book."

"Chocolate is good."

"I am eating mussels with fries in a Belgian restaurant."

"My, it's beautiful here!"

*Qui veut un café?*

*Le parc Monceau est un endroit tranquille.*

*C'est un garçon secret.*

"Who wants a coffee?"

"Monceau Park is a quiet place."

"He is a secretive boy."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Using *Le passé composé* ("the past tense") versus *L'imparfait* ("the imperfect tense"), and Using Indirect Object Pronouns With *Parler* ("to talk").**

*On est allés là-bas en métro.*

"We went there by metro."

---

Speaking in French in the past tense is not an easy task. French has two common past tenses, *le passé composé* and *l'imparfait*, which French speakers use on an everyday basis in oral speech and writing. Each tense has its own uses, which are slightly different from their counterparts in English.

In the dialogue, Joe describes what he has done while in Vincennes the day prior with a sequence of past actions by saying *On est allés là-bas en métro. On a mangé des sandwiches, et on a bu...on a bu, quoi* ("We went there by metro. We ate sandwiches, we drank...well, we drank."). All the verbs Joe uses in these sentences are conjugated at the *passé composé* ("compound past") formed with the auxiliary verbs *avoir* ("to have") or *être* ("to be") and the main verb.

### Conjugating Verbs at *Le passé composé* ("the compound past")

---

#### Use:

*Le passé composé* is the most common French past tense. We use it to express an action or state of being completed in the past.

#### Form:

The *passé composé* has two elements: an auxiliary verb, either *avoir* ("to have") or *être* ("to be"), and a past participle of the verb. In most cases, you will use the auxiliary *avoir*, as in *on a mangé* ("we ate") or *on a bu* ("we drank"), as shown in the dialogue.

To conjugate a verb from the first verb group ending in *-er* at the infinitive at the *passé composé*, use either the auxiliary verb *avoir* ("to have") or *être* ("to be") formed at the indicative present followed by the past participle of the main verb by eliminating the ending *-er* and replacing it with the letter *-é*.

To choose the correct auxiliary verb, use *avoir* ("to have") with all the verbs except with one of the following:

1. **displacement verbs**, which use different verbs to indicate departure and arrival, such as *aller* ("to go"), *venir* ("to come"), *partir* ("to leave"), etc.
2. **the pronominal verbs**, such as *se lever* ("stand up"), *se laver* ("to wash," "to clean"), *se maquiller* ("to put make up on"), and so forth.
3. **the sixteen verbs listed in the mnemonic "Dr. Mrs. Vandertramp,"** including the verbs mentioned previously, which are arranged to help you memorize them easily.

For these verbs, use the auxiliary *être* ("to be").

### Sixteen Verbs Using the Auxiliary Verb *être* ("to be") at *Le passé composé*

\* *devenir*

\* *rester*

\* *monter*

\* *retourner*

\* *sortir*

\* *venir (et ses composés)*

\* *aller*

\* *naître*

\* *descendre*

\* *entrer*

\* *rentrer*

\* *tomber*

- \* *revenir*
- \* *arriver*
- \* *mourir*
- \* *passer*

### Language Sum Up: Forming *Le passé composé*

---

**Step 1:** Determine the person of the subject.

**Step 2:** Form the past participle, eliminate the *-er*, and add *-é* for the first verb group.

**Step 3:** Choose the correct auxiliary verb.

**Step 4:** Conjugate the auxiliary verb at the indicative present.

For example, if you want to say "I talked" with the verb *parler* ("to talk"), use for the subject the first person singular with the personal pronoun *je* ("I"). Take the past participle of *parler* ("to talk"), which is *parlé* ("talked"). Choose the auxiliary verb *avoir* and conjugate it with the verb form *ai* at the indicative present. You'll have *J'ai parlé* ("I talked").

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>J'ai parlé à Joe.</i>	"I talked to Joe."
<i>Yves a discuté avec lui.</i>	"Yves discussed with him."
<i>Nous avons chanté au karaoke.</i>	"We sang at the karaoke."
<i>Elles ont trouvé un restaurant sympa.</i>	"They found a nice restaurant."
<i>Tu as cherché Joe à l'aéroport.</i>	"You looked for Joe at the airport."

#### The Use of *L'imparfait*

***C'était vraiment chouette.*** ("It was really amazing!")

After Manon asks Joe about his day yesterday, Joe gives his impression of the day by stating *C'était vraiment chouette* ("It was really amazing!") using *l'imparfait* with the verb *être* ("to be"). Then he describes what he has done by using the *passé composé* with *On est allés là-bas en métro. On a mangé des sandwiches, et on a bu* ("We went there by metro. We ate sandwiches and we drank.").

The first phrase, *C'était vraiment chouette* ("It was really amazing!"), uses the *imparfait* ("imperfect") tense to describe the circumstances, background, and scenery (such as introducing a period of time or date, feeling, climate, etc.) of his actions during the previous day by sharing his feelings. We also use *L'imparfait* to describe habits and feelings in the past without a precise time frame or a notion of duration. This past tense never states a precise moment in time but rather describes a period of time or no time at all.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>J'étais heureux.</i>	"I was happy."
<i>Le pluie tombait.</i>	"The rain fell."
<i>C'était en 1995 que je m'entraînais tous les jours.</i>	"It was in 1995 that I trained every day."
<i>C'était un dimanche, il faisait beau. Le 14 juillet 2001, j'étais à Marseille. J'ai vu les feux d'artifice.</i>	"It was a Sunday, it was sunny. July 14 2001, I was in Marseilles. I saw the fireworks."

**The Use of *Le passé composé***

On the contrary, with *On est allés là-bas en métro. On a mangé des sandwiches, et on a bu* ("We went there by metro. We ate sandwiches and we drank."), Joe describes his past-completed activities of the previous day.

We always use the *passé composé* to describe actions completed in the past generally with a precise time.

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>J'ai regardé un film.</i>	"I saw a movie."
<i>Il s'est amusé à Vincennes.</i>	"He had fun at Vincennes."
<i>Tu as pris un cours de jardinage.</i>	"You took a gardening class."
<i>Vous êtes parti hier.</i>	"You left yesterday."
<i>Nous avons voyagé la nuit.</i>	"We traveled by night."

**Note:**


---

When we use the *imparfait* and the *passé composé* tenses in the same sentence, the *passé composé* illustrates an action interrupting another portrayed with the *imparfait*.

**For Example:**

1. *Je parlais (imparfait) au téléphone lorsque j'ai entendu (passé composé) quelqu'un frapper à la porte.*

"I was talking on the phone when I heard someone knock on the door."

**Indicating to Whom an Action Is Directed**

***Qui t'a parlé de cet endroit ? ("Who told you about this place?")***

---

Manon and Joe are in a restaurant and enjoy their meal. Manon is pleasantly surprised by the quality of the food and asks her friend from whom he heard about the restaurant with the question: *Qui t'a parlé de cet endroit ?* ("Who told you about this place?")

In this phrase, she uses the indirect pronoun *t'* (short for *te* from the phrase element *t'a parlé* - "spoke to you") to indicate to whom the unknown person spoke.

To indicate to whom you are directing an action, use an indirect object pronoun followed by the verb.

### Subject + Indirect Object Pronoun + Conjugated Verb

To choose the correct indirect object pronoun, observe the table:

Person	Number	French
First person	singular	<i>me/m'</i>
Second person	singular	<i>te/t'</i>
Third person	singular	<i>lui</i>
First person	plural	<i>nous</i>
Second person	plural	<i>vous</i>
Third person	plural	<i>leur</i>

### For Example:

French	"English"
<i>Je t'envoie un e-mail.</i>	"I send you an e-mail."
<i>Nous vous achetons deux billets.</i>	"We buy you two tickets."
<i>Il me dit d'aller là.</i>	"He tells me to go there."
<i>Tu lui donnes de la monnaie ?</i>	"Do you give him change?"
<i>Je leur parle de ma journée.</i>	"I tell them of my day."
<i>Vous nous aidez ?</i>	"Do you help us?"

## Cultural Insight

### A Fair is a Regal Affair in France!

---

Fairs or *fête foraine* are very popular in France. It is a gathering of independent fairground people in the open air, offering attractions and rides as well as stands of food, drinks, or games to play.

Each main city of France has one yearly. Paris has one called *la Foire du Trône*, or "**the Throne Fair**" from the end of March to the end of May. Initially, it started as early as the year 957.

At the famous fair located in the 12th Parisian district, you'll be able to ride in the huge wheel and roller coasters of all types, and more traditional attractions such as the bumper cars, merry-go-round, haunted house, maze of mirrors, or shooting stands as well as stands selling sweets. Among the most traditional sweets are sugar candy, waffles, crepes, or spiced bread shaped as a pig.

The originality of this traditional fair is that the Parisian site of the Throne fair will open a museum presenting a collection of antique fair art and objects.





## Gengo French S1

Make the Most of Your Time in France (A Must for Travelers)

28

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	7

## French

---

Agent de voyage	Bonjour.
Joe	Quelles excursions avez-vous ?
Agent de voyage	Nous avons une excursion pour la mi-journée dans Paris, et nous avons une excursion pour la journée à l'extérieur de Paris.
Joe	Quelle est la destination de l'excursion pour la journée ?
Agent de voyage	Le départ est à 9h et le retour est à 17h. Nous irons d'abord à Sancerre. Vous déjeunerez à 13h. Ensuite vous irez à Fontainebleau et enfin Versailles.
Joe	Le guide touristique parle français ?
Agent de voyage	Bien sûr. Elle parle anglais, français et espagnol.
Joe	Bon, très bien. Je vais prendre l'excursion pour la journée, s'il vous plaît.
Agent de voyage	Ca fait 150 euros s'il vous plaît.
Joe	Par carte, c'est possible ?
Agent de voyage	Bien sûr.
Joe	Tenez.
Agent de voyage	Une signature s'il vous plaît. (pause) Merci. Voici le reçu. Le départ est à 9h. Rendez-vous devant cet immeuble.
Joe	Merci.

## English

---

Ticket agent	Hello.
Joe	What tours do you have?
Ticket agent	We have a half-day tour of Paris, and we have a full-day tour outside of Paris.
Joe	Where will the full-day tour go?
Ticket agent	The full-day tour is from nine o'clock a.m. to five o'clock p.m. We will go to Sancerre first. You will eat lunch at one o'clock p.m. Then you will visit Fontainebleau and Versailles.
Joe	The tour guide speaks French?
Ticket agent	Of course. She can speak English, French, and Spanish.
Joe	Okay, great. The full-day tour please.
Ticket agent	That will be one hundred and fifty euros, please.
Joe	Is a credit card okay?
Ticket agent	Of course.
Joe	Here you are.

Ticket agent      Sign please. (pause) Here is your receipt. The tour starts at nine o'clock  
a.m. We meet in front of this building.

Joe                      Thank you.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
une excursion	a tour	noun	feminine
pour	for	preposition	
la mi-journée	half a day, half the day	noun	feminine
dans	in	preposition	
une journée	a day	noun	feminine
à l'extérieur de	outside	adverb	
une destination	a destination	noun	feminine
le départ	departure	noun	masculine
d'abord	first	adverb	
déjeuner	to have lunch	verb	
ensuite	then		
un(e) guide touristique	a tour guide	nominal group	
l'anglais	English language	noun	masculine
l'espagnol	Spanish language	noun	masculine
possible	possible, okay	adjective	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

*L'hôtel propose des excursions.*

*C'est pour toi.*

*Je suis pour l'équipe rouge.*

*Je pars pour la mi-journée.*

*Papa est dans la cuisine.*

*Nous sommes dans la ville de Mexico.*

*C'est une belle journée.*

*Je vais à l'extérieur de la maison.*

*La destination de ce train est Bordeaux.*

*Le départ est à 9h.*

*Je viens chez toi mais je vais d'abord chez une amie.*

*Tu déjeunes avec moi?*

"The hotel offers tours."

"This is for you."

"I'm for the red team."

"I'm leaving for half the day."

"Dad is in the kitchen."

"We are in Mexico City."

"It is a beautiful day."

"I'm going outside the house."

"This train's destination is Bordeaux."

"Departure is at nine o'clock."

"I'm coming to your place, but I'm going to a friend's first."

"Are you having lunch with me?"

*Il a mangé. Ensuite, il a parlé.*

*Je mange, ensuite je pars.*

*Le guide touristique connaît bien la région.*

*Tu parles anglais?*

*J'apprends l'anglais à l'école.*

*Tu parles espagnol?*

*J'apprends l'espagnol à l'école.*

*Prendre des vacances, c'est possible?*

*C'est un choix possible.*

"He ate. Then, he spoke."

"I eat, then I leave."

"The tour guide knows the region well."

"Do you speak English?"

"I'm learning English at school."

"Do you speak Spanish?"

"I'm learning Spanish at school."

"Is it okay to take a vacation?"

"It's a possible choice."

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is a Review of the Questions With *Quel(les)* ("what, which").**

*Quelles excursions avez-vous ?*

"What tours do you have?"

If you are a well-organized traveler, you will certainly plan ahead the places you want to visit while you're in France. To do so, check the web site and location of *Maison de la France*, literally "the Home of France," the official representative of the French government's Tourist Office. It will direct you and guide you about which places or events not to miss at the destinations you plan on going. Otherwise, if you are more of an improviser, go to the tourist office of the city you are in to learn what you can do in the area.

In the dialogue, Joe visits a local agency to learn what kinds of excursions are available for the day with the requests *Quelles excursions avez-vous ?* ("What excursions do you have?") and *Quelle est la destination de l'excursion pour la journée ?* ("What is the excursion destination for the day?") Each request uses the question word *quel(les)*, meaning "which" or "what."

### Formulating a Question With *Quel* ("which," "what")

The question word *quel* is an interrogative adjective as it refers to a noun. Therefore, it agrees in gender (feminine or masculine) and number (singular or plural) with its corresponding noun.

	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
Masculine	<i>Quel</i>	<i>Quels</i>
Feminine	<i>Quelle</i>	<i>Quelles</i>

Questions with *quel* are partial questions. They are named this way simply because the answer concerns only part of a phrase and not the whole. For example, when Joe asks *Quelles excursions*

*avez-vous* ? ("What excursion do you have?"), the ticket agent focuses his reply on the noun *excursions* ("excursions"), responding to Joe's question about the types of excursions available, and not any other information contained in the phrase (as, for example, the possession of the agency or agent expressed with the verb *avoir* - "to have").

The question structures with the interrogative adjective *quel* ("which," "what") may vary.

### 1 - Question With *Quel* ("which, what")

Let's see the different possible word orders for the first question from the dialogue:  
*Quelles excursions avez-vous* ? ("What excursion do you have?")

#### Simple Form

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Quell(les)</i>	<i>Noun</i>
<i>Vous</i>	<i>avez</i>	<i>quelles</i>	<i>excursions ?</i>

#### *Est-ce que* Form\*

<i>Quel(les)</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Est-ce que</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>
<i>Quelles</i>	<i>excursions</i>	<i>est-ce que</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>avez ?</i>

\***Note:** The *est-ce que* form is optional in the question. You could say *Quelle excursion vous avez?* ("What excursion do you have?") as illustrated in the conversation. French speakers use this structure widely in everyday French.

#### Subject/Verb Inversion

<i>Quel(les)</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Verb</i>	-*	<i>Subject</i>
<i>Quelles</i>	<i>excursions</i>	<i>avez</i>	-*	<i>vous?</i>

\*Note the hyphen between the verb and the subject.

#### For Example:

<i>French</i>	<i>"English"</i>
<i>Quel type de paiement acceptez-vous ?</i>	"What kind of payment do you accept?"
<i>Vous avez quelles autres activités ?</i>	"Which other activities do you have?"
<i>À quelle heure commencent les croisières de nuit ?</i>	"At what time start the night cruises?"



<i>Quels conseils est-ce que vous suggérez ?</i>	"What advices do you suggest?"
--	--------------------------------

## 2 - Question With *Quel* and the Verb *être*

---

With the verb *être*, the structure differs slightly than with other verbs, as we see in the dialogue with the question *Quelle est la destination de l'excursion pour la journée ?* ("What is the excursion destination for the day?")

<i>Quel(les)</i>	<i>Être</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Noun ?</i>
<i>Quelle</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>destination (de l'excursion pour la journée) ?</i>

### For Example:

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>Quel est le prix de l'excursion ?</i>	"What is the excursion price?"
<i>Quels sont les horaires ?</i>	"What are the schedules?"
<i>Quelle est la durée ?</i>	"What is the length?"
<i>Quel est le nombre maximum de personnes ?</i>	"What is the maximum number of persons?"

## Language Expansion: Determiners

---

In a question with *quel(les)* and the verb *être*, we can replace the article with a determiner. A determiner is a word (such as an article: *un/une* ("a, an") or *le/la* ("the")); a possessive adjective: *ma/mon* ("my"), *nos* ("our"), or *ta/ton/tes* ("your"); or a demonstrative adjective: *ce/cet/cette* ("this/that"), *ces* ("these/those"), etc.) that makes the denotation of a noun specific.

### For Example:

1. *votre excursion* ("your excursion")
2. *cette excursion* ("this excursion")
3. *une excursion* ("a excursion")

## Cultural Insight

---

### **The Top 5 Must-See Places in France!**

---

1. Monet's Gardens Bike Tour in Paris
2. Champagne Vineyard visit in Reims
3. Renaissance castles in the Loire Valley
4. Saint Malo the pirate city and Mont Saint Michel Abbey
5. Lourdes trip to visit the miraculous grotto of Massabielle, the healing baths, impressive processions where the Virgin Mary appeared to fourteen-year-old Bernadette

Another place to visit, mentioned in the dialogue, and destination for the Parisian on the weekend, is the Fontainebleau forest. This forest is a huge 61,800 acres of forest space. Each year thousands of people come to walk around. It is famous for its garden, which inspired numerous artists of the nineteenth century including writers, photographers, poets, and impressionist painters.



## Gengo French S1

Master Speaking on the Phone and Put All Your French Friends One Touch  
Away

29

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	7



## French

---

Messagerie	Le numéro que vous demandez n'est pas en service. Le numéro que vous demandez n'est pas en service.
(le combiné téléphonique est raccroché - sons de la composition d'un numéro de téléphone)	
Messagerie de Frank (bip)	Franck n'est pas disponible pour le moment. Veuillez laisser un message après le bip.
Joe	Salut Frank. C'est Joe. Encore merci pour tout ! Mon séjour a été super, et ça m'a fait plaisir de te rencontrer. Je t'envoie un e-mail des Etats-Unis. Ciao.

## English

---

Mailbox voice	The number you asked is not in service. The number you asked is not in service.
(phone hangs up - sound of phone dialing)	
Frank-Mailbox voice (beep)	Frank is not available at the moment. Leave a message after the beep.
Joe	Hi, Frank. This is Joe. Thank you again for everything! My trip was great, and I was pleased to meet you. I'm going to send you an e-mail from the United States. Bye.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
un numéro	a number	noun	masculine
que	that, which	conjunction	
demander	to ask	verb	
en service	in service	adverb	
disponible	available	adjective	
pour le moment	at the moment	adverb	
laisser	to leave	verb	
veuillez	please (+ verb)	conjugated verb	
après	after	adverb	

un bip	a beep	noun	masculine
--------	--------	------	-----------

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

<i>Je voudrais ton numéro de téléphone.</i>	"I'd like your phone number."
<i>C'est le livre que je lis.</i>	"This is the book that I am reading."
<i>Il demande une réponse.</i>	"He's asking for an answer."
<i>Il t'a demandé de venir.</i>	"He asked you to come."
<i>L'ascenseur n'est pas en service.</i>	"The elevator is not in service."
<i>Vous êtes disponible pour la réunion demain?</i>	"Are you available for the meeting tomorrow?"
<i>Pour le moment je ne travaille pas.</i>	"I'm not working at the moment."
<i>Tu laisses ton sac ici?</i>	"Are you leaving your bag here?"
<i>Nous avons laissé un pourboire.</i>	"We left a tip."
<i>Veillez patienter.</i>	"Please, be patient."
<i>Veillez vous asseoir.</i>	"Sit down, please."
<i>Après le restaurant, nous allons marcher.</i>	"After the restaurant, we're going to walk."
<i>Après une heure de gym, nous sommes crevés.</i>	"After an hour at the gym, we are tired."
<i>Laissez votre message après le bip.</i>	"Leave your message after the beep."

## Grammar Points

**The Focus of This Lesson Is Reviewing *Le futur proche* ("the near future tense") and *Le passé composé* ("the compound past tense").**

***Mon séjour a été super, et ça m'a fait plaisir de te rencontrer.***

**"My trip was great, and I was pleased to meet you."**

Leaving voicemail messages, texting, and instant messaging is as popular in France as anywhere else. If you want to stay connected while traveling in France, you can ask whether your cell phone service provider covers the French territory and at what rate. You can also rent phones when you arrive in the French airports or in a retail store advertising the French cell phone service providers. The most common French providers are Orange, Bouygues Telecom, and SFR.

In the dialogue, Joe, ready to leave France, leaves a message on the voicemail of his new French friend Frank. He thanks him and expresses his gratitude by describing his feelings about his stay and how pleased he is to have met him in the sentence *Mon séjour a été super, et ça m'a fait plaisir de te rencontrer* ("My trip was great, and I was pleased to meet you."). Joe uses the compound past tense (*le passé composé*) to describe completed actions in the past.

### Reviewing Conjugating Verbs at *Le passé composé* ("the compound past")

The *passé composé* has two elements: an auxiliary verb, either *avoir* ("to have") or *être* ("to be"), and the past participle of the main verb. In most cases, we use the auxiliary verb *avoir* ("to have").

In the dialogue sentence *Mon séjour a été super* ("My trip was great"), the verb *être* is the main verb, which Joe conjugates at *le passé composé*. The past participle of the verb *être* ("to be") is *été* ("done"), and Joe conjugates it along with the auxiliary verb *avoir* ("to have") in the sentence at the third person singular.

In *ça m'a fait plaisir de te rencontrer* ("I was pleased to meet you."), Joe uses the verb *faire plaisir* ("to be pleased") with the auxiliary verb *avoir* at *le passé composé*.

To conjugate a verb at *le passé composé*, remember the following rules:

**Step 1:** Determine the person of the subject.

**Step 2:** Choose the correct auxiliary verb form at the indicative present.

#### Reminder:

We use the auxiliary verb *être* ("to be") with:

1. The verbs of displacement that indicate departure and arrival, such as *aller* ("to go"), *venir* ("to come"), *partir* ("to leave"), and the like.
2. The pronominal verbs, such as *se lever* ("to stand up"), *se laver* ("to wash," "to clean"), *se maquiller* ("to put make up on"), and so forth.
3. The sixteen verbs listed in the mnemonic phrase "Dr. Mrs. Vandertramp." They are listed below

so you can have an easier way to memorize them.

### Sixteen Verbs Using the Auxiliary Verb *être* ("to be") at *le passé composé*

---

- \* *Devenir*
- \* *Rester*
  
- \* *Monter*
- \* *Retourner*
- \* *Sortir*
  
- \* *Venir (et ses composés)*
- \* *Aller*
- \* *Naître*
- \* *Descendre*
- \* *Entrer*
- \* *Rentrer*
- \* *Tomber*
- \* *Revenir*
- \* *Arriver*
- \* *Mourir*
- \* *Passer*

We use the auxiliary verb *avoir* ("to have") with all the other verbs.

**Step 3:** Form the past participle of the main verb.

**Step 4:** If you use the auxiliary verb *être* ("to be"), make sure that the past participle agrees with the subject and spell it accordingly.

**For Example:**

<i>French</i>	"English"
<i>J'ai escaladé le Mont-Blanc.</i>	"I rock climbed the Mont Blanc."

<i>Ils ont pris le train de nuit.</i>	"They took the night train."
<i>Vous êtes monté au deuxième étage de la tour Eiffel.</i>	"You went up the second floor of the Eiffel Tower."

### Reviewing *Le futur proche* ("the near future")

After Joe has thanked Frank and expressed his impression of his stay and his gratitude, he promises that he is going to keep in contact with him with *Je vais t'envoyer un e-mail des Etats-Unis* ("I'm going to send you an e-mail from the United States."). He indicates he is going to take this future action by conjugating the verb *envoyer* at the near future tense.

To describe an action in the near future, we use *le futur proche* with the auxiliary verb *aller* ("to go") formed at the indicative present followed by the main verb at the infinitive form, following these steps:

**Step 1:** Determine the subject person and conjugate the auxiliary verb *aller* ("to go") at *le présent de l'indicatif*.

**Step 2:** Add the main verb at the infinitive after the auxiliary *aller* ("to go").

#### For Example:

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Je vais prendre le bateau-mouche.</i>	"I'm going to take the river boat for sightseeing."
<i>Il va conduire demain.</i>	"He's going to drive tomorrow."
<i>Nous allons marcher dans le parc.</i>	"We're going to walk in the park."

## Cultural Insight

---

### Hello? Hello? Dealing with Voicemail in France!

---

#### I. A Common Message from an Individual's Voicemail or Answering Machine:

1. *Vous êtes sur la boîte vocale de XXXX. Je ne peux vous répondre actuellement, merci de me laisser un message après le signal sonore . A bientôt.*

"You are on XXX's voicemail. I can't answer right now, thank you to leave a message after the beep. Talk to you soon."

#### II. Calling a Business and What Automatic Messages You May Hear:

##### A. Request to wait patiently while transferring the call:

1. *Vous êtes en la relation avec xxxxx, nous nous efforçons d'écourter agréablement votre attente, merci de patienter.*

"You are in communication with XXX. We attempt to shorten your waiting time, thank you for your patience."

2. *Vous êtes en communication avec xxxxx, nous recherchons votre correspondant merci de votre patience.*

"You are in communication with XXX. We are looking for your correspondent, thank you for your patience."

3. *XXX à votre service, nous allons traiter votre appel, merci de bien vouloir patienter.*

"XXX at your service, we are taking care of your class, thank you to wait patiently."

4. *Vous êtes en communication avec XXXX. Tous nos conseillers sont occupés et nous vous demandons bien vouloir patienter quelques instants. Merci !*

"You are in communication with XXX. All our agents are busy and we ask you to wait patiently

for a moment. Thank you!"

**B. Being informed the phone lines are not available or they are busy:**

1. *Bienvenue chez XXX, Nos bureaux sont actuellement fermés, nous vous invitons à renouveler votre appel.*  
"Welcome to XXX, our offices are currently closed. We invite you to call later."
2. *Tous nos opérateurs sont en ligne, nous vous invitons à renouveler votre appel. Merci de votre compréhension.*  
"All our operators are on the line, we invite you to call back. Thank you for your understanding."
3. *Bienvenue chez XXXX. Nos bureaux sont ouverts du YYYY au YYYY de 9h à 19h. Merci de réitérer votre appel ultérieurement ou de nous laisser un message après le signal sonore.*  
"Welcome to XXXX. Our offices are open from YYYY to the YYYY of 9:00 to 19:00. Thank you to reiterate your call later on or to leave us a message after the beep."



## Gengo French S1

Where Does Your French Go From Here?

30

French	2
English	2
Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	3
Cultural Insight	6



## French

---

Réceptionniste	Bonjour Monsieur.
Joe	Je voudrais régler la note s'il vous plaît.
Réceptionniste	Oui Monsieur. Oh, et vous avez des messages.
Joe	Ah oui ?
Réceptionniste	Quelque chose ne va pas ?
Joe	Je n'ai pas envie de partir.
Réceptionniste	Alors pourquoi vous partez ?
Joe	Eh bien, parce que j'ai du travail. Et parce que j'habite aux Etats-Unis.
Réceptionniste	C'est une bonne raison...pouvez-vous travailler en France ? Vivre ici ?
Joe	Euh...peut-être.

## English

---

Front desk person	Good morning, sir.
Joe	I would like to check out, please.
Front desk person	Yes, sir. Also, you have some messages.
Joe	Oh yes?
Front desk person	Is there something wrong, sir?
Joe	I don't feel like leaving.
Front desk person	So why are you leaving?
Joe	Well, because I have to work. And because I live in the United States.
Front desk person	That's a good reason. Can you work in France? Live here?
Joe	Well...maybe.

## Vocabulary

French	English	Class	Gender
régler la note	to check out (hotel)	phrase	
avoir envie	to feel like	phrase	
pourquoi	why	adverb	
partir	to leave	verb	
parce que	because	conjunction	
une raison	a reason	noun	feminine
vivre	to live	verb	

## Vocabulary Sample Sentences

---

*Je règle la note de l'hôtel.*

"I am checking out of the hotel."

*J'ai envie d'un gâteau aux carottes.*

"I feel like carrot cake."

*Pourquoi tu pars?*

"Why are you leaving?"

*Pourquoi es-tu ici ?*

"Why are you here?"

*Je pars à Chicago demain.*

"I leave for Chicago tomorrow."

*Tu peux partir.*

"You can go."

*Il boit parce qu'il a soif.*

"He's drinking because he's thirsty."

*Il est triste parce qu'il a perdu son chat.*

"He's sad because he lost his cat."

*C'est une bonne raison pour partir.*

"It's a good reason to leave."

*Antoine vit à Genève.*

"Antoine lives in Geneva."

*Je veux vivre en France.*

"I want to live in France."

*On vit bien.*

"We live well."

## Grammar Points

---

**The Focus of This Lesson Is the Verb *Avoir envie de* ("to feel like") and Questions With *Pourquoi* ("why") and Replies With *Parce que* ("because").**

*Je n'ai pas envie de partir.*

**"I don't feel like leaving."**

Being motivated helps you to achieve your goals. However, before being motivated, you need to know what you desire to be able to determine your goals.

In the dialogue, Joe is soon leaving France and feels unhappy about it. He wishes he could stay, and he illustrates this idea with the dialogue sentence *Je n'ai pas envie de partir* ("I don't feel like leaving."). In this sentence, Joe uses the verb *avoir envie de*, meaning "to feel like," at the negative form to express his feeling of frustration as he wishes he could enjoy France for a longer time.

The verb *avoir envie de* ("to feel like") is composed of the verb *avoir*, meaning "to have," followed by the noun *envie*, meaning "desire," and the preposition *de*.

### Expressing Desire to Do Something With *Avoir envie de* ("to feel like")

To formulate a phrase expressing your desire to do something, use the following word order:

**Subject + avoir (conjugated) + envie de + Infinitive Verb**

**For Example:**

<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Il a envie de rester.</i>	"He feels like staying."
<i>Le réceptionniste a envie d'aider Joe.</i>	"The receptionist feels like helping Joe."
<i>J'ai envie de partir en vacances.</i>	"I feel like going on vacation."
<i>Nous avons envie de manger.</i>	"We feel like eating."
<i>Vous avez envie de travailler.</i>	"You feel like working."

### Language Expansion: Expressing Desires of Something With *avoir envie de* ("to feel like")

To express that you wish for a particular object, use an article and a noun instead of an infinitive verb, as in *J'ai envie d'une glace* ("I feel like an ice cream."). Make sure to use the letter *d* and an apostrophe when the article starts with a vowel instead of the preposition *de*.

### Formulating a Question With *Pourquoi* ("why")

The receptionist, when listening to Joe's wish to stay in France, asks him why he feels that way with the question *Alors pourquoi vous partez ?* ("So why are you leaving?") The receptionist's question contains the question word *pourquoi* ("why") to ask about the cause of Joe's desire to stay in France.

Questions with *pourquoi* ("why") are partial questions, as the inquired information is targeted to a specific detail that is the reason(s) for something. To formulate a question with *pourquoi*, observe the following three question forms:

1. Simple form: *Pourquoi* + subject + verb ?
2. Question with *est-ce que*: *Pourquoi* + *est-ce que/qu*\* + subject + verb ?
3. Subject-verb inversion form: *Pourquoi* + verb-subject ?

\* Use *est-ce qu'* when the following word starts with a vowel.

**For Example:**



<b>French</b>	<b>"English"</b>
<i>Pourquoi est-ce que tu es là ?</i>	"Why are you here?"
<i>Pourquoi Joe parle au réceptionniste ?</i>	"Why does Joe speak to the receptionist?"
<i>Pourquoi rentre-t-il* aux États-Unis ?</i>	"Why does he go back to the United States?"
<i>Pourquoi visitez-vous la France ?</i>	"Why do you visit France?"

\* In a subject-verb inversion sentence or question structure when a verb ends in a vowel and the subject starts with a vowel, we add a hyphen, the letter *t*, and another hyphen between the two for phonetic reasons and ease of pronunciation.

### Replying to a Question With *Pourquoi* ("why") With *Parce que* ("because")

After the receptionist asks why Joe doesn't feel like leaving, Joe tells him the reasons with *Eh bien, parce que j'ai du travail. Et parce que j'habite aux États-Unis* ("Well, because I have to work. And because I live in the United States.") and uses the words *parce que*, meaning "because."

In standard French, we can place *parce que* ("because") either at the beginning or in the middle of a phrase.

We can place *parce que* ("because") at the beginning of a phrase in the clause expressing the reason when it comes first and the main clause follows it. We always separate both clauses with a comma, as in:

***Parce que* + Subject + Verb (clause expressing the reason), + Subject + Verb (main clause).**

**For Example:**

1. *Parce que je vis aux États-Unis, je pars là -bas.*  
"Because I live in the United States, I leave to go over there."

We can also place the word *parce que* ("because") in the middle of the phrase when the main clause comes first and the clause expressing the cause follows it. In this structure, we don't need to use a comma.

**Subject + Verb (main clause) *parce que* + Subject + Verb (clause expressing the reason).**

**For Example:**

1. *Je pars aux États-Unis parce que je vis là -bas.*  
"I leave to go to the United States, because I live over there."

### Language Focus

---

In the dialogue, take a look at Joe's reply *Eh bien, parce que j'ai du travail. Et parce que j'habite aux États-Unis* ("Well, because I have to work. And because I live in the United States,"). The clauses with *parce que* stand alone as in oral speech; this informality is tolerated.

Moreover, the fact that Joe "does not feel like leaving" is implied in Joe's answer, as it was mentioned previously in the question *Alors pourquoi vous partez ?* ("So why are you leaving?")

## Cultural Insight

---

### Getting a Job in France Doesn't Always Begin with an Interview!

---

Working and living in France is possible though different visas and a medical visit. There are six different visa permits you can apply for depending on your skills and abilities.

#### I. The new "Skills and Talents" permit

If you have a project, the "Skills and Talents" permit, valid for an initial period of three years and renewable thereafter, allows you to carry out any professional activity of your choice in connection with your project.

#### II. The "Salaried" and "Temporary Worker" permits

If your profession is lacking in France, you'll have a better chance to be eligible for one of these working permits.

- The "Salaried" temporary residence permit

- The "Temporary Worker" residence permit
  - A permit granted under a bilateral agreement.
- Find the list of professions at [www.immigration.gouv.fr](http://www.immigration.gouv.fr).

### **III. The new "Employee on Assignment" permit**

If you have been employed for at least three months by a company based abroad that is established in France, you are eligible to apply for this permit under certain conditions. After a continuous residence of six months in France, your family members can apply for a permit allowing them to stay and work in France.

### **IV. The "Employee on Assignment" card for senior managers or high-level executives**

If you are employed by a French company that is part of an international group and you have a high responsible position or receive a gross monthly salary that is greater than or equal to 5,000 euros, you apply for this permit.

### **V. The "Seasonal Worker" permit**

If you are employed under a seasonal employment contract with a period of more than three months, a temporary residence permit can be issued. You can then work for a maximum of six months over a period of twelve consecutive months.

### **VI. The "Scientific" permit**

If you have a master's degree or equivalent, you can come to France to carry out research or teaching activities.

Note that these permits are granted only to people residing and working out of the European Union.

Go to [InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks](https://www.InnovativeLanguage.com/audiobooks) to get the lesson notes for this course and sign up for your FREE lifetime account.

